# LATIN GRAMMAR

## GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE

Howard Ale Sihles
Dec 7. 1903
Evening,

# GILDERSLEEVE'S

# LATIN GRAMMAR

## School Edition

BY

## BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE
PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

## GONZALEZ LODGE
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

# PREFACE.

In response to the demand for a Shorter Latin Grammar based on the GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE work of 1894 the following manual has been prepared. Historical detail and grammatical exposition intended for advanced students mainly have been discarded, and the phraseology has been simplified wherever it seemed possible without a sacrifice of scientific exactness. Still greater abridgment might have been more in accordance with methods that are in vogue just now ; but a grammar that shall serve the average student throughout his course in school or college cannot be reduced to a skeleton, and we have not been able to gain our own consent to save space by limiting the illustrative examples to lean and meaningless sentences, holding as we do that the pupil ought to have something more to remember than a mere group of words. Much attention has been paid to the typography, and by retaining the old section-numbers (as has been done except in the list of verbs, 137–165) the parallel use of the larger and the smaller grammars has been facilitated.

In conclusion, we desire to express our obligations to Dr. W. GORDON McCABE, Headmaster of the University School, Richmond, Va., who has read the book in proof-sheets and has given us the advantage of his scholarly criticisms ; and to Mr. CHARLES W. BAIN, Headmaster of the Sewanee Grammar School in the University of the South, who has also read all the proof-sheets and given material assistance in adapting the book to the wants of younger students.

By these criticisms and others that have reached us we have endeavored to profit, and it is hoped that a wider sphere of usefulness awaits this result of our joint labors.

<div align="right">

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.
GONZALEZ LODGE.

</div>

BALTIMORE AND BRYN MAWR, *June* 1, 1898.

# CONTENTS.

## ETYMOLOGY.

## PROSODY.

———

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### Alphabet.

**1.** The Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters :

A  B  C  D  E  F  G  H  I  K  L  M  N  O  P  Q  R  S  T  V  X  Y  Z

REMARKS.—1. C had originally the sound of G, but gradually came to have the sound of K, and finally supplanted K except in a few words, such as **Kalendae, Kaesō,** which were usually abbreviated, *Kal., K.* The original force of C is retained only in the abbreviations **C.** (for **Gāius**) and **Cn.** (for **Gnaeus**).

2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel **u** in the Latin alphabet ; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.

### Vowels.

**2.** The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, (y)** ; and are divided :

1. According to their *quality* (*i. e.,* the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

*guttural* (or *back*), **a, o, u;**          *palatal* (or *front*), **e, i, (y).**

2. According to their *quantity* or *prolongation* (*i. e.,* the time required for pronunciation), into

*long,* ( — );                    *short,* ( ⌣ ).

REMARK.—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called *common* (see 13), and are distinguished thus :

⌣, by preference *short;*          ⌣̄, by preference *long.*

**3.**          Sounds of the Vowels.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ā | = | **a** | in | f*a*ther. | ŏ | = | **o** | in b*o*ne. |
| ĕ | = | **e** | in pr*ey*. | ū | = | **oo** | in m*oo*n. |
| ī | = | **i** | in capr*i*ce. | ȳ | = | **u** | in sûr (French), German ü. |

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

## Diphthongs.

**4.** *Diphthongs*, or *double sounds*, are to be pronounced so that both sounds can be heard in a slur.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ae | = | **aye** | (ăh-eh). | ei | = | **ei** | in f*ei*nt (drawled). |
| oe | = | **oy** | in b*oy*. | eu | = | **eu** | in Spanish de*u*da (ĕh-oo). |
| au | = | **ou** | in *our*. | (ui | = | **we**, | almost). |

REMARK.—**Ae** was perhaps pronounced ē as early as the Augustan age.

**5.** The sign ·· (*Diæresis*, i. e., *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately : **āĕr**, *air* ; **Oenomaüs, aloë.**

## Consonants.

**6.** Consonants are divided :

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Labials* | (lip-sounds) : | **b, p,** | **(ph), f, v, m.** |
| *Dentals* | (tooth-sounds) : | **d, t,** | **(th), l, n, r, s.** |
| *Gutturals* | (throat-sounds) : | **g, c, k, qu,** | **(ch), h, n** (see 7). |

NOTE.—Instead of *dental* and *guttural*, the terms *lingual* and *palatal* are often used.

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels :* of which

> **l, m, n, r,** are *liquids* (**m** and **n** being *nasals*).
> **h**          is a *breathing.*
> **s**          is a *sibilant.*

B. *Mutes :* to which belong

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **P**-mutes, | **p,** | **b,** | **(ph), f,** | *labials.* |
| **T**-mutes, | **t,** | **d,** | **(th),** | *dentals.* |
| **K**-mutes, | **k, c, qu, g,** | | **(ch),** | *gutturals.* |

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ.*

*Mutes* are further divided into

| **Tenuēs** | (thin, smooth) : | p, | t, | k, c, qu, | *hard* (surd). |
| **Mediae** | (middle) : | | b, | d, g, | *soft* (sonant). |
| **[Aspīrātae** | (aspirate, rough) : | ph, th, ch,] | | | *aspirate.* |

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same order*.

3. *Double consonants* are : **z** = **dz** in a*dz*e ; **x** = **cs** (**ks**), **gs** ; **i** and **u** between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

## Sounds of the Consonants.

**7**. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions :

**C** is hard throughout = **k**.

**Ch** in Latin words is pronounced like **k** ; in Greek words it = **kh** and is commonly pronounced as **ch** in German.

**G** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**H** at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced ; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.

**I** *consonant* (**J**) has the sound of a broad **y** ; nearly like **y** in *y*ule.

**N** has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in a*n*chor, a*n*guish.

**Qu** = **kw** (nearly) ; before **o**, **qu** = **c**.

**R** is trilled.

**S** and **X** are always hard, as in hi*ss*, a*x*e.

**T** is hard throughout, as in *tone ;* never like **t** in na*t*ion.

**U** *consonant* (**V**) is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur.

## Syllables.

(8, 9) **10**. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation ; it consists of a vowel, or of a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second : **a-mō**, *I love ;* **li-xa**, *a sutler*.

Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including **mn**) belongs to the following vowel ; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel : **a-sper**, *rough ;* **fau-stus**, *lucky ;* **li-brī**, *books ;* **a-mnis**, *river*.

REMARKS.—1. The combinations that cannot begin a word are (*a*) doubled consonants : **sic-cus**, *dry;* (*b*) a liquid and a consonant : **al-mus**, *fostering ;* **am-bō**, *both ;* **an-guis**, *snake;* **ar-bor**, *tree.*

2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words : **ab-igō**, *I drive off ;* **rēs-pūblica**, *commonwealth.*

**11.** The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate* (**ūltima**, *last*); the next to the last the *penult* (**paene**, *almost,* and **ūltima**) ; the one before the penult, the *antepenult* (**ante**, *before,* and **paenūltima**).

REMARK.—A syllable is said to be *open* when it ends with a vowel ; *close,* when it ends with a consonant.

## Quantity.

**12.** Distinguish carefully between the length of a syllable and the length of a vowel :

1. A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong : **mōs**, *custom ;* **caelum**, *heaven.*

REMARKS.—1. A vowel before **nf, ns, gm, gn**, is long *by nature :* **īnfēlīx**, *unlucky :* **mēnsa**, *table ;* **āgmen**, *train ;* **āgnus**, *lamb.*

2. Before **i** *consonant* (**j**) a vowel is long *by nature :* **Pompēius**, *Pompey;* except in compounds of **iugum**, *yoke* (**bī-iugus**, *two-horse*), and in a few other words.

2. A syllable is said to be long *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : **ārs**, *art ;* **cŏllum**, *neck ;* **ăbrumpō**, *I break off ;* **pĕr mare**, *through the sea ;* **nĕx**, *murder.*

3. A syllable is said to be *short* when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants : **lŏcus**, *place ;* **tăbŭla**, *picture.*

REMARK.—A vowel is short *by nature* when followed by another vowel (h does not count), or by **nt, nd** : **dĕus**, *God :* **innocĕntia**, *innocence ;* **amăndus**, *to be loved.*

**13.** A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with **l** or **r**, is said to be *common* (**anceps**, *doubtful*) : **tenĕbrae**, *darkness.*

REMARK.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.

**14.** Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is *long :* **saevus,** *cruel ;* **conclūdō,** *I shut up* (from **claudō,** *I shut*) ; **cōgō** (from **co-agō**), *I drive together.*

## Accentuation.

**15.** 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult : **bónus,** *good.*

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long ; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common : **mandâre,** *to commit ;* **mándĕre,** *to chew ;* **íntĕgrum,** *entire ;* **circúmdare,** *to surround ;* **supérstitēs,** *survivors.*

Remarks.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), **que, ve, ne,** add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult : **lūmináque,** *and lights ;* **flūmináve,** *or rivers ;* **vōmeréne ?** *from a plowshare ?* Dissyllables and words accented on the penult follow the ordinary rule of accentuation : **égomet,** *I indeed ;* **amáreve,** *or to love.*

2. Compounds (not prepositional) of **facere** and **dare** retain the accent on the verbal form : **calefácit, vēnumdáre.**

3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in **ius** of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in **ium,** retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative : **Vergílī.**

## Parts of Speech.

**16.** The Parts of Speech are the Noun, the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles, defined as follows :

*Noun.* {
1. The *Substantive* (also loosely called *noun*) gives a name : **vir,** *a man ;* **Cocles,** *Cocles ;* **dōnum,** *a gift.*
2. The *Adjective* adds a quality to the Substantive : **bonus vir,** *a good man.*

3. The *Pronoun* points out without giving the name : **hīc,** *this ;* **ille,** *that ;* **ego,** *I.*

4. The *Verb* expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command : **amat,** *he loves ;* **amet,** *may he love ;* **amā,** *love thou !*

*Particles.* {
5. The *Adverb* shows *circumstances.*
6. The *Preposition* shows originally *local relation.*
7. The *Conjunction* shows *connection.*

REMARKS.—1. The *Interjection* is either a mere cry of feeling: **āh!** *ah !* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

2. The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

## Inflection.

**17.** *Inflection* (**īnflexiō,** *bending*) is that *change* in the form of a word which shows a change in the relations of that word. It occurs chiefly at the end of the word.

The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected ; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

## The Substantive.

**18.** A Substantive is either *concrete* or *abstract ; concrete* when it gives the name of a person, place, or thing ; *abstract* when it gives the name of a quality ; as **amīcitia,** *friendship*.

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common :*

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things : **Horātius,** *Horace;* **Neāpolis,** *Naples;* **Padus,** *Po.*

Common when they are common to a whole class : **dominus,** *a lord ;* **urbs,** *a city ;* **amnis,** *a river.*

## Gender of Substantives.

**19.** For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification ; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine ; names of females, feminine. Masculine : **Rōmulus ; Iūppiter ; vir,** *man ;* **equus,** *horse.* Feminine : **Cornēlia ; Iūnō ; fēmina,** *woman ;* **equa,** *mare.*

**20.** Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification :

I. Names of *months* and *winds*, most names of *rivers*, and many names of *mountains* are *masculine :* as **Aprīlis,** *April ;* **Aquilō,** *the north wind ;* **Albis,** *the River Elbe ;* **Athŏs,** *Mount Athos.*

REMARKS.—1. Of the rivers, **Allia, Lēthē, Matrona, Sagra, Styx** are feminine ; **Albula, Acherōn, Garumna** vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

2. Of the mountains, **Alpēs,** *the Alps,* is feminine ; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in **a** (G. **ae**), **ē** (G. **ēs**).

II. Many names of *countries, islands, cities, plants,* and *trees* are *feminine :* **Aegyptus,** *Egypt ;* **Rhodus,** *Rhodes ;* **pirus,** *a pear-tree ;* **abiēs,** *a fir-tree.*

REMARKS.—1. Many names of countries (especially Greek) and islands in **us** (G. **ī**) follow the termination, and are masculine, except **Aegyptus, Cyprus, Peloponnēsus, Rhodus,** and some others, mainly Greek.

2. Most names of trees with stems in **-tro** (N. **-ter**) are masculine: **oleaster,** *wild olive ;* **pīnaster,** *wild pine.* So also most shrubs : **dūmus,** *bramble-bush ;* **rhūs,** *sumach.* Neuter are **acer,** *maple ;* **papāver,** *poppy* (usually); **rōbur,** *oak ;* **sīler,** *willow ;* **sūber,** *cork-tree ;* **tūber,** *mushroom.*

III. All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are *neuter :* **fās,** *right ;* **ā longum,** *ā long ;* **scīre tuum,** *thy knowing ;* **trīste valē,** *a sad "farewell."*

**21.** 1. Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender : **cīvis,** *citizen* (male or female) ; **comes,** *companion ;* **iūdex,** *judge.*

2. **Substantīva mōbilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender : **magister,** *master, teacher ;* **magistra,** *mistress ;* **servus, serva,** *slave* (masc. and fem.) ; **victor, victrīx,** *conqueror* (masc. and fem.).

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, **mās,** *male,* and **fēmina,** *female,* are added, when it is necessary to be exact : **pāvŏ mās (masculus),** *peacock ;* **pāvŏ fēmina,** *peahen.* These substantives are called *epicene.*

## Number.

**22.** In Latin there are two numbers: the *Singular*, denoting *one ;* the *Plural,* denoting *more than one.*

## Cases.

**23.** In Latin there are six cases :

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).
   Answers the question: *who ? what ?*
2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).
   Answers the question: *whose ? whereof ?*
3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).
   Answers the question: *to whom ? for whom ?*
4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).
   Answers the question: *whom ? what ?*
5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).
6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).
   Answers the question: *where ? whence ? wherewith ?*

NOTE.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers the question : *where ?*) is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions ; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive ; it is *often* blended with the Ablative in *form, regularly* in *syntax.* The Instrumental (answers the question : *wherewith ?*), which is found in other members of the Indo-European family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

**24.** According to their *syntactical use,* the cases are divided into **Cāsūs Rēctī,** or Independent Cases, and **Cāsūs Oblīquī,** or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsūs Rēctī,** the rest **Cāsūs Oblīquī.**

**25.** The case-forms arise from the combination of the *case-endings* with the *stem.*

1. The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

NOTE.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm **mēnsa,** the stem is not **mēns,** but **mēnsā,** the final **ā** having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural **mēnsīs.** So **-d,** the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (**ē, ēī, ī, ĕ**). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length ; the root was probably a monosyllable. In **penna** the stem is **pennā-** ; in **pennula, pennulā-** ; in **pennātulus, pennātulo-** ; the root is PET (petna, pesna, penna), and is found in **pet-ere**, *to fall upon, to fly at ;* Greek, πέτ-ομαι, πτερόν ; English, *feather.*

2. The case-endings are as follows :

Sg.—N.V. Wanting or m. f. -**s** ; n. -**m.**   Pl.—N.V. -**ēs** ; -**ī** ; n. -**a.**
    G.   -**is** ; -**ī.**                               G.   -**um** ; rum.
    D    -**ī.**                                          D.   -**bus** ; -**īs.**
    Ac.  -**m, -em.**                                     Ac.  -**s** ; n. -**a.**
    Ab.  Wanting ; -**e.**                                Ab.  -**bus** ; -**īs.**

## Declensions.

**26.** There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem-characteristic*).

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

|       | STEM CHARACTERISTIC. | GENITIVE SINGULAR. |
|-------|----------------------|--------------------|
| I.    | ă (ā).               | ae.                |
| II.   | ŏ.                   | ī.                 |
| III.  | ĭ, ū, a consonant.   | ĭs.                |
| IV.   | ŭ.                   | ūs.                |
| V.    | ē.                   | ĕī.                |

REMARK.—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions ; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, **i** and **u** being semi-consonants.

**27.** The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations:

SINGULAR.

|      | I.   | II.                  | III.        |
|------|------|----------------------|-------------|
| N.   | a.   | us; wanting ; um.    | s ; wanting.|
| G.   | ae.  | ī.                   | is.         |
| D.   | ae.  | ō.                   | ī.          |
| Ac.  | am.  | um.                  | em, im.     |
| V.   | a.   | e ; wanting ; um.    | s.          |
| Ab.  | ā.   | ō.                   | e, ī.       |

|        | IV.          | V.           |
|--------|--------------|--------------|
| N. V.  | us ; ū.      | ĕs.          |
| G.     | ūs.          | ĕī, ĕ.       |
| D.     | uī, ū.       | ĕī, ĕ.       |
| Ac.    | um ; ū.      | em.          |
| Ab.    | ū.           | ĕ.           |

### PLURAL.

|         | I.      | II.          | III.            |
|---------|---------|--------------|-----------------|
| N. V.   | ae.     | ī ; ă.       | ĕs ; a, ia.     |
| G.      | ārum.   | um, ōrum.    | um, ium.        |
| D. Ab.  | īs.     | īs.          | ibus.           |
| Ac.     | ās.     | ōs ; ă.      | īs, ĕs ; a, ia. |

|         | IV.          | V.        |
|---------|--------------|-----------|
| N. V.   | ūs ; ua.     | ĕs.       |
| G.      | uum.         | ērum.     |
| D. Ab.  | ubus, ĭbus.  | ēbus.     |
| Ac.     | ūs ; ua.     | ĕs.       |

## 28. *General Rules of Declension.*

1. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in -us.

2. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative cases are alike in the Plural.

3. Neuter substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike ; in the Plural these cases always ends in ă.

4. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike in all declensions.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

**29.** The stem ends in ă, which is weakened from an original ā. The Nominative is the simple stem, with no ending.

| Sg.—N.  | mēnsa (f.), | *the table,*                  | *a table.*                   |
|---------|-------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| G.      | mēnsae,     | *of the table,*               | *of a table.*                |
| D.      | mēnsae,     | *to, for the table,*          | *to, for a table.*           |
| Ac.     | mēnsam,     | *the table,*                  | *a table.*                   |
| V.      | mēnsa,      | *O table !*                   | *table !*                    |
| Ab.     | mēnsā,      | *from, with, by the table.*   | *from, with, by a table.*    |

| PL.—N. | mēnsae, | the tables, | tables. |
|---|---|---|---|
| G. | mēnsārum, | of the tables, | of tables. |
| D. | mēnsīs, | to, for the tables, | to, for tables. |
| Ac. | mēnsās, | the tables, | tables. |
| V. | mēnsae, | O tables ! | tables ! |
| Ab. | mēnsīs, | from, with, by the tables, | from, with, by tables. |

REMARKS.—1. The early ending of the Gen., ās, is retained in the classical period only in the form **familiās**, *of a family*, in combination with **pater**, *father*, **māter**, *mother*, **filius**, *son*, **fīlia**, *daughter ;* viz., **pater-familiās, māterfamiliās, fīlius familiās, fīlia familiās.**

2. The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive : **Rōmae**, *at Rome ;* **mīlitiae,** *abroad.*

3. The Gen. Sing. sometimes ends in -āī in poetry ; the Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form **-um** instead of **-ārum** ; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words **amphora** (*amphora, measure of tonnage*), and **drachma,** *franc—*(*Greek coin*). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronymics in **-da, -dās,** and compounds of **-cola** (from **colō,** *I inhabit*) and **-gena** (from root **gen,** *beget*).

4. The ending **-ābus** is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of **dea,** *goddess,* and **fīlia,** *daughter.*

**30**. *Rule of Gender*.—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

EXCEPTION.—**Hadria**, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

**31**. The stem ends in ŏ, which in the classical period is usually weakened to ŭ. In combination with the case-endings it contracts into ō or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neuters) it is weakened to ĕ.

The Nominative ends in **s** (m. and f.) and **m** (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, ŏ, is preceded by **r**, drop the **us** and **e** of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert ĕ before the **r** if it was preceded by a consonant.

The final **-o** is often retained after **u** or **v** until the first century A.D.; as **servos**, *slave.*

(32) **33. Hortus** (m.), *garden;* **puer** (m.), *boy;* **ager** (m.), *field;* **bellum** (n.), *war,* are thus declined :

| Sg.—N. | hortus, | puer, | ager, | bellum, |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| G. | hortī, | puerī, | agrī, | bellī, |
| D. | hortō, | puerō, | agrō, | bellō, |
| Ac. | hortum, | puerum, | agrum, | bellum, |
| V. | horte, | puer, | ager, | bellum, |
| Ab. | hortō, | puerō, | agrō, | bellō, |
| Pl.—N. | hortī, | puerī, | agrī, | bella, |
| G. | hortōrum, | puerōrum, | agrōrum, | bellōrum, |
| D. | hortīs, | puerīs, | agrīs, | bellīs, |
| Ac. | hortōs, | puerōs, | agrōs, | bella, |
| V. | hortī, | puerī, | agrī, | bella, |
| Ab. | hortīs. | puerīs. | agrīs. | bellīs. |

REMARKS.—1. Stems in -io have Gen. Sing. for the most part in ī until the first century A.D., without change of accent : ingénī (N. **ingenium**), *of genius,* **Vergílī,** *of Vergil.* See 15, R. 3.

2. Proper names in -ius (stems in io) have Voc. in ī, without change of accent : **Antōnī, Tullī, Gāī, Vergílī. Fílius,** *son,* and genius, *genius,* form their Voc. in like manner : **filī, genī.** In solemn discourse -us of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. So regularly deus, *God !*

3. The Loc. Sing. ends in ī (apparent Genitive), as **Rhodī,** *at Rhodes,* **Tarentī,** *at Tarentum.*

4. In the Gen. Pl. -um instead of ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures ; as, **nummum,** *of moneys* = **sēstertium,** *of sesterces;* **dēnārium ; talentum,** *of talents;* **modium,** *of measures;* **iūgerum ; medimnum ; stadium.** Likewise in some names of persons : **deum** (also -ōrum) **; líberum ; virum** (poetical, except in technical expressions, as **triumvirum) ; socium.** Most of these have also the regular endings.

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Dative : **Delphīs,** *at Delphi.*

6. **Deus,** *God,* is irregular, and declined as follows : Sg. N. V. **deus ;** G. **deī ;** D. **deō ;** Ac. **deum ;** Ab. **deō.** Pl. N. V. **deī, diī, dī ;** G. **deum, deōrum ;** D. Ab. **deīs, diīs, dīs ;** Ac. **deōs.**

**34.** *Rule of Gender.*—Substantives in -us are masculine ; in -um neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are : 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus, Samus.** 2d. Most trees, as, **fāgus,** *beech;* **pirus,** *pear-tree.* 3d. **Alvus,** *belly;* **colus,** *distaff;* **humus,** *ground;* **vannus,** *wheat-fan.* 4th. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus,** *atom.*

Neuters are : **pelagus,** *sea;* **vīrus,** *venom;* **vulgus,** *the rabble.*

## THIRD DECLENSION.

**35.** 1. The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels **i** and **u**.

2. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

| | |
|---|---|
| I.—*Consonant Stems.* | II.— *Vowel Stems.* |
| A. Liquid stems, ending in **l, m, n, r.** | 1. Ending in **i.** |
| B. Sibilant stems, ending in **s.** | 2. Ending in **u.** |
| C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, **b, p.** | (Compare the Fourth |
| 2. Ending in a K-mute, **g, c.** | Declension.) |
| 3. Ending in a T-mute, **d, t.** | |

**36.** 1. The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s**, and combines with a K-mute to form **x.** The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

2. Neuters always form:

The nominative without the case-ending **s.**

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in **ă.**

### I.–CONSONANT STEMS.

#### A.–Liquid Stems.

##### 1. LIQUID STEMS IN l.

(37, 38) **39.** Form the Nominative without **s.** These comprise:

A. Those in which the stem-characteristic is preceded by a vowel:

B. Two neuter substantives with stems in -ll, one of which is lost in the Nominative : **mel, mellis,** *honey ;* **fel, fellis,** *gall.*

| Sg.—N. | cōnsul, *consul* (m.). | Pl.—N. | cōnsulēs, *the consuls.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| G. | cōnsulis, | G. | cōnsulum, |
| D. | cōnsulī, | D. | cōnsulibus, |
| Ac. | cōnsulem, | Ac. | cōnsulēs, |
| V. | cōnsul, | V. | cōnsulēs, |
| Ab. | cōnsule, | Ab. | cōnsulibus. |

*Rules of Gender.*—1. Stems in -l are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS : **Sīl**, *ochre*, is neuter, and occasionally **sāl**, *salt*.

2. Stems in -ll are neuter.

### 2. LIQUID STEMS IN m.

**40.** Nominative with **s**. One example only : **hiem(p)s**, *winter* (f.) ; Gen., **hiem-is**, Dat., **hiem-ī**, *etc.*

### 3. LIQUID STEMS IN n.

**41.** *Most masculine* and *feminine* stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**.

*Some masculine* and *most neuter* stems retain the stem-characteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

**42.**

| | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | leŏ, *lion* (m.), | imāgō, *likeness* (f.), | nōmen, *name* (n.), |
| G. | leōnis, | imāginis, | nōminis, |
| D. | leōnī, | imāginī, | nōminī, |
| Ac. | leōnem, | imāginem, | nōmen, |
| V. | leŏ, | imāgō, | nōmen, |
| Ab. | leōne, | imāgine, | nōmine, |
| Pl.—N. | leōnēs, | imāginēs, | nōmina, |
| G. | leōnum, | imāginum, | nōminum, |
| D. | leōnibus, | imāginibus, | nōminibus, |
| Ac. | leōnēs, | imāginēs, | nōmina, |
| V. | leōnēs, | imāginēs, | nōmina, |
| Ab. | leōnibus. | imāginibus. | nōminibus. |

Irregular formations : **carŏ**, G. **carnis**, *flesh* ; **Aniŏ**, G. **Aniēnis**, *the Anio* river ; **Nēriŏ**, G. **Nēriēnis**, a proper name. **Sanguĭs**, *blood*, and **pollis**, *flour*, drop the stem-characteristic and add **s** to form nominative ; G. **sanguinis, pollinis.**

**43.** *Rules of Gender.*—

1. Masculine are nouns in **-ō**,
Save those in **-dō**, **-gō**, and **-iō**,
With **carŏ**, *flesh* ; but **cardō**, **ōrdō**,
Are masculine with **ligō**, **margō** ;
So **harpagō**, and in **-iō**
All concrete nouns like **pūgiŏ**.*

---

* **cardō**, *hinge* ; **harpagō**, *grappling-hook* ; **ligō**, *mattock* ; **margō**, *border* ; **ōrdō**, *rank* ; **pūgiŏ**, *dagger*.

2. Substantives in **-en (-men)** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are liēn, splēn, *spleen;* rēnēs (pl.), *kidneys;* **pecten,** *comb,* and a few others, mostly names of males.

### 4. LIQUID STEMS IN r.

**44.** Form Nominative without **s**.

| **45.** SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. labor, *toil* (m.), | labōrēs, | pater, *father* (m.), | patrēs, |
| G. labōris, | labōrum, | patris, | patrum, |
| D. labōrī, | labōribus, | patrī, | patribus, |
| Ac. labōrem, | labōrēs, | patrem, | patrēs, |
| V. labor, | labōrēs, | pater, | patrēs, |
| Ab. labōre, | labōribus. | patre, | patribus. |

Irregular formations : Four neuters, **ebur,** *ivory;* **femur,** *thigh;* **iecur,** *liver;* **rōbur,** *oak,* show Gen. in **-oris;** two of these, **femur, iecur,** have also the irregular forms **feminis** and **iecineris, iecinoris, iocinoris.** **Iter,** *way,* has G. **itineris;** and **supellēx,** *furniture,* has G. **supellēctilis.**

REMARK.—**Imber,** *shower,* **linter,** *skiff,* **ūter,** *bag,* **venter,** *belly,* have Gen. Pl. in **-ium. Imber** has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in **ī**.

**46.** *Rules of Gender.*—1. Substantives in **-er** and **-or** are masculine. 2. Substantives in **-ar** and **-ur** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are **salar,** *trout;* **furfur,** *bran,* and names of animals in **-ur.**

Feminine are **linter, arbor.**
Neuters are : **fār, nectar, marmor,**
**Aequor, iter, acer, piper,**
**Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,**
**Ador, tūber,** and **papāver.***

### B.—Sibilant Stems.

**47.** The Nominative has no additional **s**, and changes in masculines **e** to **i**, and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u** before **s**.

In the oblique cases, the **s** of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into **r**.

| **48.** SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. A. V. genus, *kind* (n.), | genera, | corpus, *body* (n.), | corpora, |
| G. generis, | generum, | corporis, | corporum, |
| D. generī, | generibus, | corporī, | corporibus, |
| Ab. genere, | generibus. | corpore, | corporibus. |

* **arbor,** *tree;* **acer,** *maple;* **ador,** *spelt;* **aequor,** *sea;* **cadāver,** *dead body;* **fār,** *spelt;* **iter,** *way;* **marmor,** *marble;* **nectar,** *nectar;* **papāver,** *poppy;* **piper,** *pepper;* **tūber,** *tumor;* **ūber,** *teat;* **vēr,** *spring;* [**verber**], *thong;* **linter,** *skiff.*

REMARK.—**Ās**, *a copper*, and **os**, *bone*, form the Gen. Pl. in **-ium**, after the usage of vowel stems. So also **mūs**, *mouse*.

**49.** *Rules of Gender.*—1. Masculine are substantives in **-is** (**-eris**), and **-ōs** (**-ōris**).

2. Neuter are substantives in **-us** (**-eris**, **-oris**), and in **-ūs** (**-ūris**).

EXCEPTIONS.—**Ōs**, *mouth* (G. ōris), is neuter; **tellūs**, *earth* (G. -ūris), is feminine; and **lepus**, *hare* (G. -oris), **mūs**, *mouse* (G. **mūris**), are masculine.

### C.—Mute Stems.

**50.** All masculines and feminines of mute stems have **s** in the Nominative. Before **s** a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form **x**, a T-mute is dropped.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel **i** into **e** in the Nominative.

The stems show variations as follows:

**51.** Stems in a P-mute.

|      | Sg.              | Pl.            |
|------|------------------|----------------|
| N.   | prīnceps, *chief* (m.), | prīncipēs, |
| G.   | prīncipis,       | prīncipum,     |
| D.   | prīncipī,        | prīncipibus,   |
| Ac.  | prīncipem,       | prīncipēs,     |
| V.   | prīnceps,        | prīncipēs,     |
| Ab.  | prīncipe,        | prīncipibus.   |

**52.** Stems in a K-mute.

|      | Sg.          | Pl.        |
|------|--------------|------------|
| N.   | rēx, *king* (m.), | rēgēs, |
| G.   | rēgis,       | rēgum,     |
| D.   | rēgī,        | rēgibus,   |
| Ac.  | rēgem,       | rēgēs,     |
| V.   | rēx,         | rēgēs,     |
| Ab.  | rēge,        | rēgibus.   |

Irregular formations : **nix** (G. nivis), *snow ;* **bōs** (G. bovis; see 71), *ox.*

**53.** Stems in a T-mute.

|      | Sg.          | Pl.         | Sg.         | Pl.        |
|------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| N.   | aetās, *age* (f.), | aetātēs, | pēs, *foot* (m.), | pedēs, |
| G.   | aetātis,     | aetātum,    | pedis,      | pedum,     |
| D.   | aetātī,      | aetātibus,  | pedī,       | pedibus,   |
| Ac.  | aetātem,     | aetātēs,    | pedem,      | pedēs,     |
| V.   | aetās,       | aetātēs,    | pēs,        | pedēs,     |
| Ab.  | aetāte,      | aetātibus.  | pede,       | pedibus.   |

Irregular formations : **cor** (G. cordis), *heart ;* **nox** (G. noctis), *night ;* **caput** (G. capitis), *head ;* **lac** (G. lactis), *milk.*

**54.** Many substantives of this class have the termination **-ium** in the Gen. Pl. and **-ī** in the Abl. Singular.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in **-ium : urbium,** *of cities ;* **arcium,** *of citadels ;* **montium,** *of mountains ;* **noctium,** *of the nights.*

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary : **dōt-ium,** *of dowries ;* **līt-ium, fauc-ium, fraud-um (-ium), laud-um (-ium).** But **vōcum,** *of voices.*

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short vowel have **-um : opum,** *of resources ;* but **fac-ium, nuc-um (-ium), niv-ium (-um).**

The polysyllabic stems in **-nt** and **-rt** have more frequently **-ium,** as **clientium (-um),** *of clients ;* **cohortium (-um),** *of companies.*

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in **-āt** have frequently both **-um** and **-ium,** as **aetātum** and **aetātium, cīvitātum** and **cīvitātium,** *etc.;* the rest have usually **-um. Palūs,** *marsh,* has usually **palūdium.**

**55.** *Rule of Gender.*—Mute stems, with Nominative in **s,** are feminine.

*1. Exceptions in a* **k**-*mute.*

> Masculine **-unx, -ix,** and **-ex,**
> Saving **forfex, forpex, nex,**
> **Lēx, vībēx, faex,** and forms of [**prex**].*

**Calx,** *heel,* and **calx,** *chalk,* vary.

*2. Exceptions in a* **t**-*mute.*

Masculine are **lapis,** *stone,* and substantives in **-es, -itis,** except **merges** (f.), *sheaf ;* **pariēs,** *wall ;* also **pēs,** *foot.*

Masculines in **-ns** are: **dēns,** *tooth ;* **fōns,** *spring ;* **mōns,** *mountain ;* **pōns,** *bridge ;* **rudēns,** *rope ;* **torrēns,** *torrent.*

Neuters are only : **cor,** *heart,* **lac,** *milk,* and **caput,** *head.*

### II.—VOWEL STEMS.

#### 1. Vowel Stems in **i.**

**56.** Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in **s.**

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e.**

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel **i** into **e.** This **e** is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after **l** and **r.**

---

* **faex,** *dregs ;* **forfex,** *shears ;* **forpex,** *tongs ;* **lēx,** *law ;* **nex,** *slaughter ;* [**prex**], *prayer ;* **vībēx,** *weal.*

2

Stems in **i** have Genitive Plural in **-ium.**

Neuter stems in **i** have the Ablative Singular in **ī,** and Nominative Plural in **-ia.**

|  | M. | F. | F. | N. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | collis, *hill,* | turris, *tower,* | vulpēs, *fox,* | mare, *sea,* | animal, *living being,* |
| G. | collis, | turris, | vulpis, | maris, | animālis, |
| D. | collī, | turrī, | vulpī, | marī, | animālī, |
| Ac. | collem, | turrim(em), | vulpem, | mare, | animal, |
| V. | collis, | turris, | vulpēs, | mare, | animal, |
| Ab. | colle, | turrī(e), | vulpe, | marī, | animālī, |
| Pl.—N. | collēs, | turrēs, | vulpēs, | maria, | animālia, |
| G. | collium, | turri-um, | vulpium, | marum, | animālium, |
| D. | collibus, | turri-bus, | vulpibus, | maribus, | animālibus, |
| Ac. | collīs(ēs), | turrīs(ēs), | vulpīs(ēs), | maria, | animālia, |
| V. | collēs, | turrēs, | vulpēs, | maria, | animālia, |
| Ab. | collibus. | turri-bus. | vulpibus. | maribus. | animālibus. |

**57.** Remarks.—1. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. -im is retained *always* in sitis, tussis, vīs; and in names of towns and rivers in -is, as Neāpolis, Tiberis; *usually* in febris, puppis, restis, secūris, turris; *occasionally* in clāvis, crātis, cutis, messis, nāvis.

2. The Abl. in -ī is found in substantives that regularly have -im in Acc. (except perhaps restis): also not unfrequently in amnis, avis, canālis, cīvis, clāssis, fīnis, fūstis, īgnis, orbis, unguis; occasionally in anguis, bīlis, clāvis, collis, corbis, messis; regularly in neuters in e, al, and ar, except in rēte, and in the towns Caere, Praeneste.

3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending -ium, -um is found *always* in canis, *dog,* iuvenis, *young man,* pānis, *bread,* senex, *old,* struēs, *heap,* volucris, *bird; usually* in apis, *bee,* sēdēs, *seat,* vātēs, *bard; frequently* in mēnsis, *month.* On imber, *etc.,* see 45, R.

4. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., -īs, is found frequently in the classical period along with the later termination -ēs.

**58.** *Rule of Gender.*—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -ēs are feminine ; those with Nominative in -is are partly masculine, partly feminine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

3. *The rest* are feminine.

Remarks.—1. Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine : tigris, *tiger* (fem. in poetry) ; canis, *dog* (also fem.); piscis, *fish;* others feminine : apis, *bee;* avis, *bird;* ovis, *sheep;* fēlis, *cat* (usually fēlēs).

2. *Masculīnī generis*
Are these words that end in -is :
amnis, axis, būris, collis,
caulis, crīnis, fascis, follis,
fūnis, fūstis, īgnis, torris ;

orbis, pānis, postis, ēnsis,
vectis, vermis, unguis, mēnsis,
—antēs, cassēs, mānēs, (plural)—
Add to these *the mullet*, mūgil,
Which is sometimes mūgilis.*

## 2. Vowel Stems in u.

**59.** Of stems in u, the *monosyllabic* stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

| Sg.—N. | grūs, *crane* (f.), | Pl.—gruēs, |
|---|---|---|
| G. | gruis, | gruum, |
| D. | gruī, | gruibus, |
| Ac. | gruem, | gruēs, |
| V. | grūs, | gruēs, |
| Ab. | grue, | gruibus. |

Sūs, *swine* (commonly f.), usually subus, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

(60) **61.** The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

In the Dative and Ablative Plural u becomes i before the ending -bus.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending -m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -i-m of the stems in i), hence -u-m.

| | MASCULINE. | | NEUTER. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | frūctus, *fruit*, | Pl.—frūctūs, | Sg.—cornū, *horn*, | Pl.—cornua, |
| G. | frūctūs, | frūctuum, | cornūs, | cornuum, |
| D. | frūctuī (frūctū), | frūctibus, | cornū, | cornibus, |
| Ac. | frūctum, | frūctūs, | cornū, | cornua, |
| V. | frūctus, | frūctūs, | cornū, | cornua, |
| Ab. | frūctū, | frūctibus. | cornū, | cornibus. |

* **Amnis**, *river ;* **antēs** (pl.), *rows ;* **axis**, *axle ;* **būris**, *plow-tail ;* **cassēs** (pl.), *toils ;* **caulis**, *stalk ;* **collis**, *hill ;* **crīnis**, *hair ;* **ēnsis**, *glaive ;* **fascis**, *fagot ;* **follis**, *bellows ;* **fūnis**, *rope ;* **fūstis**, *cudgel ;* **īgnis**, *fire ;* **mānēs** (pl.), *Manes ;* **mēnsis**, *month ;* **mūgil(is)**, *mullet ;* **orbis**, *circle ;* **pānis**, *bread ;* **postis**, *door-post ;* **torris**, *fire-brand ;* **unguis**, *nail ;* **vectis**, *lever ;* **vermis**, *worm*.

REMARKS.—*Plural:* 1. *Dat., Abl.* The original form -**ubus** is retained always in **acus**, *needle;* **arcus**, *bow;* **quercus**, *oak;* **tribus**, *tribe;* sometimes in a few other words.

2. **Domus**, *house*, is declined: G. **domūs.** D. **domuī.** Ac. **domum.** V. **domus.** Ab. **domō.** Loc. **domī (domuī).** Pl. N. **domūs.** G. **domōrum.** D. Ab. **domibus.** Ac. **domōs, domūs.**

**62.** *Rule of Gender.*—Substantives in -**us** are masculine; those in -**ū** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminines* are **acus**, *needle*, **domus**, *house*, **īdūs** (pl.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, **penus**, *victuals*, **porticus**, *piazza*, **tribus**, *tribe*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

**63.** The stem ends in -**ē**; Nominative in **s**.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular -**ē** is shortened after a consonant; after a vowel it remains long.

In the Accusative Singular we find always **ĕ**.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, -**ī**; the other endings are those of the Third.

|  | MASCULINE. |  |  | FEMININE. |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | diēs, *day*, | Pl.—diēs, | Sg.—rēs, *thing*, | Pl.—rēs, |
| G. | diēī, | diērum, | reī, | rērum, |
| D. | diēī, | diēbus, | reī, | rēbus, |
| Ac. | diem, | diēs, | rem, | rēs, |
| V. | diēs, | diēs, | rēs, | rēs, |
| Ab. | diē, | diēbus. | rē, | rēbus. |

REMARKS.—1. *Plural: Gen., Dat., Abl.* Common in but two substantives, **diēs, rēs**.

2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as **mollitiēs**, *softness*, and **mollitia**. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Singular.

**64.** *Rule of Gender.*—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except **diēs** (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and **merīdiēs** (m.), *midday*.

## Declension of Greek Substantives.

**65.** Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either

retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

## Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

### First Declension.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Pēnelopē, | Leōnidās, | Anchīsēs, |
| G. | Pēnelopēs, | Leōnidae, | Anchīsae, |
| D. | Pēnelopae, | Leōnidae, | Anchīsae, |
| Ac. | Pēnelopēn, | Leōnidam, ān, | Anchīsēn, am, |
| V. | Pēnelopē, | Leōnidā, | Anchīsē, ā, ă, |
| Ab. | Pēnelopā. | Leōnidā. | Anchīsā. |

### Second Declension.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Dēlos, us, | Īlion, um, | Panthūs, | Androgeōs, us, |
| G. | Dēlī, | Īliī, | Panthī, | Androgeī, |
| D. | Dēlō, | Īliō, | Panthō, | Androgeō, |
| Ac. | Dēlon, um, | Īlion, um, | Panthūn, | Androgeōn, ō, ōna, |
| V. | Dēle, | Īlion, um, | Panthū, | Androgeōs, |
| Ab. | Dēlō. | Īliō. | Panthō. | Androgeō. |

### Third Declension.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Solōn, Solō, | āēr, *air.* | Xenophōn, | Atlās, |
| G. | Solōnis, | āeris, | Xenophōntis, | Atlantis, |
| D. | Solōnī, | āerī, | Xenophōntī, | Atlantī, |
| Ac. | Solōna, em, | āera, em, | Xenophōnta, em, | Atlanta, |
| V. | Solōn, | āēr, | Xenophōn, | Atlā, |
| Ab. | Solōne. | āere. | Xenophōnte. | Atlante. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Thalēs, | Paris, | hērōs, *hero,* |
| G. | Thal-ētis, -is, | Paridis, os, | hērōis, |
| D. | Thal-ētī, -ī, | Paridī, ĭ, | hērōī, |
| Ac. | Thal-ēta, -ēn, -em, | Par-ida, -im, -in, | hērōa, em, |
| V. | Thalē, | Pari, Paris, | hērōs, |
| Ab. | Thalē. | Paride. | hērōe. |

### Mixed Declensions.

| | II.   III. | II.   III. | II.   III. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Orpheūs, | Athōs, | Oedipŭs, |
| G. | Orpheī, eī, | Athō, ōnis, | Oedip-odis, -ī, |
| D. | Orpheō, | Athō, | Oedipodī, |
| Ac. | Orpheum, ea, | Athō, ōn, ōnem, | Oedip·um, -oda, |
| V. | Orpheū, | Athōs, | Oedipe, |
| Ab. | Orpheō. | Athōne. | Oedip-ode, -ō. |

| | II.   III. | II.   III. | III.   IV. |
|---|---|---|---|
| N. | Achillēs, eus, | Sōcratēs, | Dīdō, |
| G. | Achillis, eī, ī, eōs, | Sōcratis, ī, | Dīdūs, ōnīs, |
| D. | Achillī, | Sōcratī, | Dīdō, ōnī, |
| Ac. | Achillem, ea, ēn, | Sōcratēn, em, | Dīdō, ōnem, |
| V. | Achillēs, ē, eū, e, | Sōcratē, es, | Dīdō, |
| Ab. | Achille, ē, ī. | Sōcrate. | Dīdō, ōne. |

REMARKS.—1. In the Gen. Pl. -ōn and -eōn are found in the titles of books ; as, **Geōrgicōn, Metamorphōseōn.**

2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural; as, **Thūcȳdidās, Hyperīdae,** and many names in -cratēs ; as **Sōcratēs** ; Pl., **Sōcratae** (also **Sōcratēs**).

3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem :

So **κρατήρ,** Acc. **κρατῆρα,** (*punch*) *bowl.*
    **crātēr, crātēris** (masc.), and **crātēra (crēterra), crātērae** (fem.).
    **Σαλαμίς,** Acc. **Σαλαμῖνα,** *Salamis.*
    **Salamīs, Salamīnis,** and **Salamīna, ae.**

## IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

### I. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

(66) **67.** A. *Heterogeneous* Substantives, or those whose gender varies :

1. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| aevum, | -us, | *age,* | iugulum, | -us, | *collar-bone,* |
| baculum, | -us, | *staff,* | nāsus, | -um, | *nose,* |
| balteus, | -um, | *girdle,* | palātum, | -us, | *palate,* |
| cāseus, | -um, | *cheese,* | pīleus, | -um, | *cap,* |
| cavum, | -us, | *cavity,* | sagum, | -us, | *cloak,* |
| cingulum, | -us, | *belt,* | tergum, | -us, | *back,* |
| clipeus, | -um, | *shield,* | thēsaurus, | -um, | *treasure,* |
| collum, | -us, | *neck,* | vāllus, | -um, | *palisade,* |
| forum, | -us, | *market,* | and many others. | | |
| gladius, | -um, | *sword,* | | | |

2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural.

*a.* The Plural has -a sometimes, while the Singular ends in -us (or -er) : **clīvus,** *hill,* **iocus,** *jest,* **locus** (**loca,** *localities ;* **locī,** usually *passages in books, topics*), and many others, especially names of places.

*b.* The Plural has -ī, while the Singular ends in -um : **fīlum,** *thread,* **frēnum,** *bit,* **rāstrum,** *hoe,* and many others.

**68.** B. *Heteroclites,* or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative ; *Metaplasts,* or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem. Many of these belong also under 67.

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. 1st, 2d. | esseda, | | -um, | *chariot,* | margarīta, | | -um, | *pearl,* |
| | ostrea, | | -um, | *oyster,* | | | | |
| 2. 1st, 5th. | dūritia, | | -ēs, | *hardness,* | māteria, | | -ēs, | *matter,* |
| and many others. See 63, R. 2. | | | | | | | | |
| 3. 2d, 1st. | mendum, | | -a, | *fault,* | sertum, | | -a, | *wreath.* |

The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only : **balneum,** *bath,* **dēlicium,** *pleasure,* **epulum,** *banquet,* **fulmentum,** *prop.*

4. **2d, 4th. Colus,** *distaff,* **domus,** *house,* and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension have one or two cases of the Second ; so **arcus** has G. **arcī; cōnātus (-um), iūssus (-um),** have Nom. Plural in **a ; senātus,** *senate,* has Gen. Sing. **senātī.**

Some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth : **fāstī** (Ac. Pl. **fāstūs**), **fretum** (N. fretus, Ab. fretū), lectus (G. lectūs), and others.

5. **3d, 2d. Vās,** *vessel,* and **vāsum ; palumbēs,** *pigeon,* and **palumbus ;** [**iūger**], *acre,* and **iūgerum ;** all Greek nouns in **-a** (G. **-atis**), as **poēma,** *poem* (G. **poēmatis**), but Pl. Gen. **poēmatōrum,** Dat. Abl. **poēmatīs.**

6. **3d, 5th. Fames,** *hunger,* **tābes,** *corruption,* have Abl. **famē, tābē ; requiēs,** *quiet* (G. **-ētis**) has Acc. **requiem,** Abl. **requiē ; plēbs** (G. **plēbis**), *commons,* and **plēbēs** (G. **plēbeī**).

7. **2d, 3d, 1st. Vesper,** *evening,* has Acc. **vesperum ;** Dat. Abl. **vesperō ;** Pl. Nom. **vespera** of the Second Declension ; Acc. **vesperam ;** Abl. **vesperā** of the First ; Gen. **vesperis ;** Abl. **vespere ;** Loc. **vespere, vesperī** of the Third.

8. Variations in the same Declension : **femur** (G. **femoris, feminis,** *etc.*) ; **iecur** (G. **iecoris, iecinoris,** *etc.*) ; **pecus,** *early,* also **pecu** (G. **pecoris, pecudis,** *etc.*).

## II. Defective Substantives.

### I. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

**69.** A. Substantives used in Singular only : **Singulāria tantum.**

Most abstract substantives, and names of materials ; such as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **iūstitia,** | *justice.* | **aurum,** | *gold.* |

B. Substantives used in Plural only : **Plūrālia tantum.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **angustiae,** | *straits.* | **īnsidiae,** | *ambuscade.* |
| **arma, ōrum,** | *arms.* | **līberī,** | *children.* |
| **armāmenta, ōrum,** | *tackle.* | **mānēs,** | *shades of the dead.* |
| **bīgae, quadrīgae,** | *two-horse, four-horse chariot.* | **manubiae,** | *spoils.* |
| | | **minae,** | *threats.* |
| **cervīcēs,** | *neck.* | **moenia, ium,** | *town-wall.* |
| **cōdicillī,** | *a short note.* | **nūptiae,** | *wedding.* |
| **compedēs,** | *fetters.* | **penātēs,** | *the Penates.* |
| **dīvitiae,** | *riches.* | **phalerae,** | *trappings.* |
| **epulae (epulum),** | *banquet.* | **praecordia, ōrum,** | *diaphragm.* |
| **excubiae,** | *watching.* | **precēs, -um,** | *prayer.* |
| **exsequiae,** | *funeral procession.* | **reliquiae,** | *remains.* |
| **exta, ōrum,** | *the internal organs.* | **rēnēs,** | *kidneys.* |
| **exuviae,** | *equipments.* | **scālae,** | *stairway.* |
| **fāstī (fāstūs),** | *calendar.* | **spolia, ōrum,** | *spoils* (sing. late, and poet.). |
| **faucēs,** | *gullet.* | | |
| **fēriae,** | *holidays.* | **tenebrae,** | *darkness.* |
| **forēs,** | *door.* | **valvae,** | *folding-doors.* |
| **hīberna,** | *winter quarters.* | **verbera, um,** | *scourging* (sing. poet. and late). |
| **Īdūs, Kalendae, Nōnae,** | *Ides, Calends. Nones.* | | |
| **indūtiae,** | *truce.* | **vīscera,** | *entrails* (sing. poet. and late). |

C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense: **Heterologa.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aedēs, is, | *temple* (better **aedis**), | aedēs, | *house, palace.* |
| aqua, | *water,* | aquae, | *mineral springs.* |
| auxilium, | *help,* | auxilia, | *auxiliaries, reinforcements.* |
| carcer, | *prison,* | carcerēs, | *barriers.* |
| castrum, | *fort,* | castra, | *camp.* |
| comitium, | *place of assemblage,* | comitia, | *assemblage for voting.* |
| cōpia, | *abundance,* | cōpiae, | *forces, troops.* |
| facultās, | *capability,* | facultātēs, | *goods.* |
| fīnis, | *end, limit,* | fīnēs, | *territory, borders.* |
| fortūna, | *fortune,* | fortūnae, | *possessions.* |
| habēna, | *strap,* | habēnae, | *reins.* |
| impedīmentum, | *hindrance,* | impedīmenta, | *baggage.* |
| littera, | *letter* (of the alphabet), | litterae, | *epistle, literature.* |
| pars, | *part,* | partēs, | also *role.* |
| rōstrum, | *beak,* | rōstra, | *the tribunal at Rome.* |
| sors, | *lot,* | sortēs, | also *oracle.* |
| tabula, | *board, tablet,* | tabulae, | also *accounts.* |
| vigilia, | *a night-watch.* | vigiliae, | *pickets.* |

### 2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

**70.** A. Many verbals of the Fourth Declension occur only in the Ab. ū, as **admonitū, coāctū, invītātū, iussū, iniussū, mandātū, missū, permissū, rogātū.**

B. Some substantives have only two cases, as, **fās, nefās,** Sing. N. Ac.; **īnstar,** Sing. N. Ac. Some verbals in **-us** have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as **impetūs, monitūs.** Greek neuters in **-os** have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.

C. Substantives with three cases: **faex,** *dregs ;* Sing. N. D., Plur. Ab.; **vīrus,** *slime ;* Sing. N., G., Ab.

D. **Nēmō,** *nobody,* substitutes for Gen. and Abl. **nūllīus hominis,** and **nūllō homine.** In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal ; **nēminī, nēminem.**

## 71.                III. Peculiarities.

| | |
|---|---|
| **ās, assis** (m.), *a copper.* | **iter, itineris** (n.), *way, route.* |
| **auceps, aucupis,** *fowler.* | **iecur, iecoris** (n.), *liver.* |
| **bōs** (for **bovs**), **bovis** (c.), *ox, cow.* |     **iecinoris, iecineris, iocineris.** |
|   Pl. G., **boum.** | **Iūppiter, Iovis.** |
|     D. Ab., **būbus, bōbus.** | **mel, mellis** (n.), *honey.* |
| **caput, capitis** (n.), *head.* | **nix, nivis** (f.), *snow.* |
| **anceps, ancipitis,** *two-headed.* | **os, ossis** (n.), *bone* (48 R.). |
|   **praeceps, -cipitis,** *headlong.* | **ōs, ōris** (n.), *mouth.* |
| **carō, carnis** (f.), *flesh.* | **pollis, pollinis** (m.), *flour.* |
|   Pl. G. **carnium.** | **sānguīs, sanguinis** (m.), *blood.* |
| **Cerēs, Cereris,** *Ceres.* | **senex, senis,** *old man.* |
| **fār, farris** (n.), *spelt.* | **supellēx, supellēctilis** (f.), *furniture.* |
| **fel, fellis** (n.), *gall.* | **Venus, Veneris,** *Venus.* |
| **femur, femoris** (n.), *thigh.* | |
|     **feminis.** | |

## ADJECTIVES.

**72.** The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

### Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

**73.** Stems in **-o** for masculine and neuter, **-a** for feminine; nominative in **-us, -a, -um**; (er), **-a, -um**. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in **-ius** form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, R. 1 and 2.

#### Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

|        | M.      | F.      | N.      |       | M.        | F.        | N.         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| Sg.—N. | bonus,  | bona,   | bonum,  | Pl.—  | bonī,     | bonae,    | bona,      |
| G.     | bonī,   | bonae,  | bonī,   |       | bonōrum,  | bonārum,  | bonōrum,   |
| D.     | bonō,   | bonae,  | bonō,   |       | bonīs,    | bonīs,    | bonīs,     |
| Ac.    | bonum,  | bonam,  | bonum,  |       | bonōs,    | bonās,    | bona,      |
| V.     | bone,   | bona,   | bonum,  |       | bonī,     | bonae,    | bona,      |
| Ab.    | bonō,   | bonā,   | bonō,   |       | bonīs,    | bonīs,    | bonīs.     |

#### Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

|        | M.       | F.       | N.       |       | M.        | F.          | N.          |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|-------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| Sg.—N. | miser,   | misera,  | miserum, | Pl.—  | miserī,   | miserae,    | misera,     |
| G.     | miserī,  | miserae, | miserī,  |       | miserōrum,| miserārum,  | miserōrum,  |
| D.     | miserō,  | miserae, | miserō,  |       | miserīs,  | miserīs,    | miserīs,    |
| Ac.    | miserum, | miseram, | miserum, |       | miserōs,  | miserās,    | misera,     |
| V.     | miser,   | misera,  | miserum, |       | miserī,   | miserae,    | misera,     |
| Ab.    | miserō,  | miserā,  | miserō,  |       | miserīs,  | miserīs,    | miserīs.    |

#### Piger, pigra, pigrum, *slow.*

|        | M.      | F.      | N.      |       | M.        | F.        | N.         |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|-------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| Sg.—N. | piger,  | pigra,  | pigrum, | Pl.—  | pigrī,    | pigrae,   | pigra,     |
| G.     | pigrī,  | pigrae, | pigrī,  |       | pigrōrum, | pigrārum, | pigrōrum,  |
| D.     | pigrō,  | pigrae, | pigrō,  |       | pigrīs,   | pigrīs,   | pigrīs,    |
| Ac.    | pigrum, | pigram, | pigrum, |       | pigrōs,   | pigrās,   | pigra,     |
| V.     | piger,  | pigra,  | pigrum, |       | pigrī,    | pigrae,   | pigra,     |
| Ab.    | pigrō,  | pigrā,  | pigrō,  |       | pigrīs,   | pigrīs,   | pigrīs.    |

**74.** Stems in **-ro** follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that **-us** is retained:

1. In **ferus**, *wild*, **properus**, *quick*, **praeproperus**, **praeposterus**, *absurd*, **īnferus**, *lower*, **superus**, *upper*.

2. Also when **-ro** is preceded by a long vowel ; as, **austērus,** *harsh,* **mātūrus,** *early,* **prōcērus,** *tall,* **pūrus,** *pure,* **sevērus,** *serious,* **sincērus,** *sincere,* **sērus,** *late,* **vērus,** *true.*

REMARKS.—1. **Dextera, dexterum,** *etc., right,* are found side by side with **dextra, dextrum,** *etc.,* throughout the language. CAESAR uses only the shorter form.

2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing. wholly or in part ; so there is no **cēterus** or **posterus** in the best period.

**75.** 1. In poetry, but at all periods, we find -um alongside of -ōrum and -ārum in the Gen. Plural.

2. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. **-iīs** from adjectives in **-ius** is often contracted to **īs**; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

**76.** The so-called pronominal adjectives show certain peculiarities in the declension of the singular, in the Genitive and Dative. They are : **alter,** *one of the two ;* **alteruter** (a combination of **alter** and **uter**), *either of the two ;* **alius,** *other ;* **neuter,** *neither ;* **nūllus,** *none ;* **sōlus,** *sole ;* **tōtus,** *whole ;* **ūllus,** *any ;* **ūnus,** *one ;* **uter,** *which of the two.*

|     | M.       | F.        | N.        | M.     | F.       | N.      |
|-----|----------|-----------|-----------|--------|----------|---------|
| N.  | alter,   | altera,   | alterum,  | alius, | alia,    | aliud,  |
| G.  | alterīus,| alterīus, | alterīus, | alīus, | alīus,   | alīus,  |
| D.  | alterī,  | alterī,   | alterī,   | aliī,  | aliī,    | aliī,   |
| Ac. | alterum, | alteram,  | alterum,  | alium, | aliam,   | aliud,  |
| Ab. | alterō,  | alterā,   | alterō.   | aliō,  | aliā,    | aliō.   |
| N.  | ūllus,   | ūlla,     | ūllum,    | uter,  | utra,    | utrum,  |
| G.  | ūllīus,  | ūllīus,   | ūllīus,   | utrīus,| utrīus,  | utrīus, |
| D.  | ūllī,    | ūllī,     | ūllī,     | utrī,  | utrī,    | utrī,   |
| Ac. | ūllum,   | ūllam,    | ūllum,    | utrum, | utram,   | utrum,  |
| Ab. | ūllō,    | ūllā,     | ūllō.     | utrō,  | utrā,    | utrō.   |

Like **uter** is declined **neuter**; like **ūllus** are declined **nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus.** The Plural is regular.

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. **alīus** is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by **aliēnus.**

2. The **i** of the ending **-īus** (except in **alīus**) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the case with **alter,** and regularly in the compounds of **uter**; as, **utrīusque,**

3. In the compound **alteruter** we find usually both parts declined ; sometimes the second only.

4. **Alius** makes Nom. and Acc. Sing. neuter irregularly : **aliud.**

### Adjectives of the Third Declension.

**77.** The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in **-i**, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.

The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

#### ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

**78.** 1. These have (except stems in **-ri**) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.

Most stems in **-i** form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in **s**; but the Nominative neuter weakens the characteristic **i** into **e**. (Compare **mare**, *sea*.)

2. Several stems in -**i**, preceded by **r** (**cr, tr, br**), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing **s**, but by dropping the **i** and inserting short **e** before the **r**, as, stem, **ācri**, *sharp*, Nom., **ācer** (m.), **ācris** (f.), **ācre** (n.).

These adjectives are **ācer, alacer, campester, celeber, celer, equester, palūster, pedester, puter, salūber, silvester, terrester, volucer,** and the last four months ; and are sometimes called adjectives of *three endings*.

The **e** belongs to the stem in **celer, celeris, celere,** *swift*, and therefore appears in all cases.

|  | M. and F. | N. | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | facilis, *easy.* | facile, | ācer, *sharp*, | ācris, | ācre, |
| G. | facilis, | facilis, | ācris, | ācris, | ācris, |
| D. | facilī, | facilī, | ācrī, | ācrī, | ācrī, |
| Ac. | facilem, | facile, | ācrem, | ācrem, | ācre, |
| V. | facilis, | facile, | ācer, | ācris, | ācre, |
| Ab. | facilī, | facilī, | ācrī, | ācrī, | ācrī, |
| Pl.—N. | facilēs, | facilia, | ācrēs, | ācrēs, | ācria, |
| G. | facilium, | facilium, | ācrium, | ācrium, | ācrium, |
| D. | facilibus, | facilibus, | ācribus, | ācribus, | ācribus, |
| Ac. | facilēs(īs), | facilia, | ācrēs(īs), | ācrēs(īs), | ācria, |
| V. | facilēs, | facilia, | ācrēs, | ācrēs, | ācria, |
| Ab. | facilibus, | facilibus. | ācribus, | ācribus, | ācribus. |

REMARK.—Stems in -āli and -āri differ from the substantival declension in not dropping final -e in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally **capital.** See 56.

**79.** REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in -ri) have also -e in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, -e is the rule.

2. The Gen. Pl. in -um is found frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only **Titiēnsum** and **familiārum.**

### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

**80.** Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with **l, r, s,** a **p**-mute, a **k**-mute, or a **t**-mute. Examples are :

**vigil,** *alert,* **memor,** *mindful,* **pauper,** *poor,* **cicur,** *tame,* **pūbēs,** *adult,* **vetus,** *old,*
**vigilis.**         **memoris.**        **pauperis.**        **cicuris.**        **pūberis.**        **veteris.**

**particeps,** *sharing,*                 **caelebs,** *unmarried,*                **inops,** *poor,*
**participis.**                           **caelibis.**                           **inopis.**

**audāx,** *bold,*    **fēlīx,** *lucky,*    **duplex,** *double,*    **ferōx,** *fierce,*    **trux,** *savage,*
**audācis.**         **fēlīcis.**          **duplicis.**           **ferōcis.**           **trucis.**

**dīves,** *rich,* **dēses,** *slothful,* **compos,** *possessed of,* **prūdēns,** *wise,* **concors,** *harmonious,*
**dīvitis.**      **dēsidis.**          **compotis.**              **prūdentis.**      **concordis.**

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

(81) **82.** The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems ; thus,

1. In the Ablative Singular they have ī and e—when used as adjectives commonly ī ; when used as substantives commonly **e.**

The participles, as such, have **e** ; but used as substantives or adjectives, either **e** or **ī,** with tendency to **ī.**

2. In the neuter Plural they have **ia** ; except **vetus,** *old,* which has **vetera.** Many have no neuter.

3. In the Genitive Plural they have : **ium,** when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant ;

**um**, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have **ium**.

|  | M. and F. | N. | M. and F. | N. | M. and F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | fēlīx,*lucky,* | fēlīx, | prūdēns,*wise,* | prūdēns, | vetus,*old,* | vetus, |
| G. | fēlīcis, | fēlīcis, | prūdentis, | prūdentis, | veteris, | veteris, |
| D. | fēlīcī, | fēlīcī, | prūdentī, | prūdentī, | veterī, | veterī, |
| Ac. | fēlīcem, | fēlīx, | prūdentem, | prūdēns, | veterem, | vetus, |
| V. | fēlīx, | fēlīx, | prūdēns, | prūdēns, | vetus, | vetus, |
| Ab. | fēlīcī (e), | fēlīcī (e), | prūdentī (e), | prūdentī (e), | vetere (ī), | vetere (ī), |
| Pl. N. | fēlīcēs, | fēlīcia, | prūdentēs, | prūdentia, | veterēs, | vetera, |
| G. | fēlīcium, | fēlīcium, | prūdentium, | prūdentium, | veterum, | veterum, |
| D. | fēlīcibus, | fēlīcibus, | prūdentibus, | prūdentibus, | veteribus, | veteribus, |
| Ac. | fēlīcēs, | fēlīcia, | prūdentēs, | prūdentia, | veterēs, | vetera, |
| V. | fēlīcēs, | fēlīcia, | prūdentēs, | prūdentia, | veterēs, | vetera, |
| Ab. | fēlīcibus. | fēlīcibus. | prūdentibus. | prūdentibus. | veteribus, | veteribus. |

|  | M. and F. | N. | | M. and F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | amāns,*loving,* | amāns, | Pl.—amantēs, | | amantia, |
| G. | amantis, | amantis, | amantium, | | amantium, |
| D. | amantī, | amantī, | amantibus, | | amantibus, |
| Ac. | amantem, | amāns, | amantēs (īs), | | amantia, |
| V. | amāns, | amāns, | amantēs, | | amantia, |
| Ab. | amante (ī), | amante (ī), | amantibus, | | amantibus. |

**83.** REMARKS.—1. In the poets, -e is often found for -i in the Abl. Singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere, vetere**, and frequently **dīvite, sapiente**.

With participles, -i is usual when they are used as adjectives.

2. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. -**īs** for -**ēs** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in CICERO. In the case of participles -**is** is very common, and is the rule in VERGIL and HORACE. In the neuter, -**a** for -**ia** is found only in **ūbera, vetera**.

3. In the Gen. Pl., **cicur**, *tame*, **vetus**, *old*, **dīves**, *rich*, have -**um** instead of -**ium**; so also many compound adjectives.

4. In the poets and in later writers, -**um** is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses -**ium**.

### Irregular Adjectives.

**84.** A. ABUNDANTIA.

Some adjectives which end in -**us**, -**a**, -**um**, in the classical times, show occasionally, especially in the poets, forms in -**is**, -**e**, *e. g.*, **imbēcillus** and **imbēcillis** ; **īnfrēnus** and **īnfrēnis** ; **biiugus** and **biiugis** ; **violentus** and **violēns** ; **indecōrus** and **indecoris** ; so also **perpetuus** and **perpes**.

**85.** B. DEFECTIVE.

Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part : as, **cētera** (f.), **cēterum**, **nūperum** (n.), **prīmōris** (G.), and a few others.

C. INDECLINABLES.

Nēquam, *worthless ;* frūgī, *frugal ;* necesse, *necessary,* and a few others.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**86.** The Degrees of Comparison are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **-is-simus, -a, -um** (earlier **-is-sumus**).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

| POSITIVE. | | COMPARATIVE. | | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | M. and F. | N. | |
| altus, a, um, | *high,* | altior, *higher,* | altius, | altissimus, a, um, *highest.* |
| fortis, e, | *brave,* | fortior, | fortius, | fortissimus. |
| ūtilis, e, | *useful,* | ūtilior, | ūtilius, | ūtilissimus. |
| audāx, | *bold,* | audācior, | audācius, | audācissimus. |
| prūdēns, | *wise,* | prūdentior, | prūdentius, | prūdentissimus. |

### Peculiarities.

**87.** 1. Adjectives in **-er** add the Superlative ending **-rimus** (earlier **-rumus**) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

| POSITIVE. | | COMPARATIVE. | | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| miser, a, um, | *wretched,* | miserior, | miserius, | miserrimus. |
| celer, is, e, | *swift,* | celerior, | celerius, | celerrimus. |
| ācer, ācris, ācre, | *sharp,* | ācrior, | ācrius, | ācerrimus. |

REMARKS.—1. **Dexter**, *right,* and **sinister**, *left,* have always **dexterior** and **sinisterior** in the Comparative. **Dēterior**, *worse,* **dēterrimus**, lacks a Positive.

2. **Vetus**, *old,* has Comp. **veterior** (archaic) or **vetustior ;** Sup., **veterrimus**.

2. Some Comparatives in **-er-ior**, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in **-rēmus ;** or in **-imus** or **-umus ;** or in both.

citerior, *on this side,* citimus ;   interior, *inner,* intimus ;

dexterior, *on the right,* dextimus ; posterior, *hinder,* postrēmus, postumus ;

exterior, *outer,* extrēmus, extimus ; superior, *upper,* suprēmus, summus.

inferior, *lower,* infimus, īmus ;

3. Six adjectives in **-ilis** add **-limus** to the stem, after dropping **-i**, to form the Superlative : **facilis,** *easy ;* **difficilis,** *hard ;* **similis,** *like ;* **dissimilis,** *unlike ;* **gracilis,** *slender,* and **humilis,** *low.*

> **facilis,**   Comp. **facilior,**   Sup. **facillimus.**

4. Adjectives in **-dicus, -ficus, -volus,** borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in **-dīcēns, -ficēns,** and **-volēns.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **benevolus,** *benevolent,* | Comp. **benevolentior,** | Sup. **benevolentissimus.** |
| **maledicus,** *scurrilous,* | **maledīcentior,** | **maledīcentissimus.** |
| **māgnificus,** *distinguished,* | **māgnificentior,** | **māgnificentissimus.** |

5. In like manner, **egēnus** and **prōvidus** form their Comparative and Superlative.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **egēnus,** *needy,* | **egentior,** | **egentissimus.** |
| **prōvidus,** *far-sighted.* | **prōvidentior,** | **prōvidentissimus.** |

6. Adjectives in **-us,** preceded by a vowel (except those in **-quus**), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of **magis** and **māximē,** *more* and *most.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **idōneus,** *fit,* | Comp. **magis idōneus,** | Sup. **māximē idōneus.** |
| But **antīquus,** *old,* | Comp. **antīquior,** | Sup. **antīquissimus.** |

REMARK.—But **pius,** *pious,* which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, **piissimus.**

7. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So those mentioned in 87, 1, R. 1, and 87, 2 : **dēterior,** *worse ;* **citerior,** *on this side* (from **citer** and prep. **citrā,** *on this side*) ; **exterior,** *outer* (from **exterus,** *on the outside,* and prep. **extrā,** *without*) ; **īnferior,** *lower* (from **īnferus,** *below,* and prep. **īnfrā,** *below*) ; **posterior,** *hinder* (from **posterus,** *coming after,* and prep. **post,** *after*) ; **superior,** *upper* (from **superus,** *on the top,* and prep. **suprā,** *above*).

Also **ōcior,** *swift,* **ōcissimus** ; **potior,** *better,* **potissimus.**

8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb ; as, **ante,** *before ;* **anterior,** *that is before ;* **prope,** *near ;* **propior, proximus** ; **ulterior,** *further,* **ūltimus,** from **ūltrā,** *beyond ;* **interior,** *inner,* **intimus,** from **intrā,** *within ;* **prior,** *former,* **prīmus,** *first,* from **prō,** *before.*

9. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison ; especially those denoting *material, relationship, time, etc.*

**Novus,** *new,* **falsus,** *untrue,* **meritus,** *deserved,* have no Comparative.

**Longinquus,** *afar,* **propinquus,** *near,* **salūtāris,** *healthful,* **iuvenis,** *young* (Comparative **iūnior**), and **senex,** *old* (Comparative **senior**), have no Superlative.

"*Youngest*" and "*oldest*" are expressed by **minimus, māximus (nātū).**

10. **Dīves,** *rich,* shows in Cic. only **dīvitior** and **dīvitissimus** ; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being **dītior, dītissimus.**

**88.** Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison : as, **amāns,** *loving,* **amantior, amantissimus ; apertus,** *open,* **apertior, apertissimus.**

**89.** The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus :

|        | M. and F.          | N.                 |        | M. and F.     | N.          |
|--------|--------------------|--------------------|--------|---------------|-------------|
| Sg.—N. | altior,            | altius,            | Pl.—   | altiōrēs,     | altiōra,    |
| G.     | altiōris,          | altiōris,          |        | altiōrum,     | altiōrum,   |
| D.     | altiōrī,           | altiōrī,           |        | altiōribus,   | altiōribus, |
| Ac.    | altiōrem,          | altius,            |        | altiōrēs,     | altiōra,    |
| V.     | altior,            | altius,            |        | altiōrēs,     | altiōra,    |
| Ab.    | altiōre and ī,     | altiōre and ī,     |        | altiōribus,   | altiōribus. |

REMARKS.—1. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in **-e.** In the poets and in early and late prose, often in **-ī.**

2. In the Acc. Pl. the ending **-īs** for **-ēs** is confined mainly to **plūrīs, minōrīs, māiōrīs, meliōrīs.**

3. The Gen. Pl. in **-ium** is found in **plūrium** and **complūrium** only.

**90.**                    Irregular Comparison.

| **bonus,**                     | *good,*     |     | **melior,**    | **melius,**           | **optimus.**       |
|--------------------------------|-------------|-----|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| **malus,**                     | *bad,*      |     | **pēior,**     | **pēius,**            | **pessimus.**      |
| **māgnus,**                    | *great,*    |     | **māior,**     | **māius,**            | **māximus.**       |
| **parvus,**                    | *small,*    |     | **minor,**     | **minus,**            | **minimus.**       |
| **multus,**                    | *much,*     | S. ——— |             | **plūs** (no Dat. nor Abl.), | **plūrimus.** |
|                                |             | Pl. **plūrēs,** | | **plūra.**         |                    |
|                                |             |     | **complūrēs,** | **complūra** and **-ia,** |                |
| **nēquam,**                    | *worthless,*|     | **nēquior,**   | **nēquius,**          | **nēquissimus.**   |
| **frūgī** (indecl.), *frugal,* |             |     | **frūgālior,** |                       | **frūgālissimus.** |

## ADVERBS.

**91.** Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

### Substantives.

1. Many substantives form adverbs with the Accusative ending **-tim** : as **acervus,** *heap,* **acervātim,** *in heaps ;* **pars,** *part,* **partim,** *partly.*

2. The Ablative of many substantives is used as an adverb ; as **domō** *at home ;* **initiō,** *at the outset ;* **modo,** *only ;* **vulgō,** *commonly.*

## Adjectives and Pronouns.

1. Many adjectives in **-us, -a, -um** use the Abl. case as an adverb; as,

**tūtus,** *safe,* **tūtō** ; **prīmus,** *first,* **prīmō,** *at first.*

So also some pronouns : **hōc,** *here ;* **istō,** *there,* etc.

2. Adjectives in **-us** and **-er** may form adverbs in **ē** : altus, *lofty,* **altē** ; **pulcher,** *beautiful,* **pulchrē.**
Also **ferē** and **fermē,** *almost.*

3. In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine :

**aliā,** *otherwise ;* **aliquā,** *somehow ;* **dexterā** and **dextrā,** *to the right ;* **sinistrā** and **laevā,** *to the left hand ;* **quā,** *on which side ;* **rēctā,** *straight-way,* and some others.

4. A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning :

**cōnsultē** and **cōnsultō,** *purposely ;* **certē,** *at least,* and **certō,** *certainly ;* **rārē,** *thinly,* and **rārō,** *seldom ;* **vērē,** *in truth,* and **vērō,** *true but ;* **rēctē,** *correctly,* and **rēctā,** *straightway ;* **dexterā** or **dextrā,** *to the right,* and **dexterē,** *skillfully.*

5. Many adjectival and pronominal stems use the Accusative Singular neuter as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

**Multum,** *much ;* **paulum,** *a little ;* **nimium,** *too much ;* **cēterum,** *for the rest ;* **prīmum,** *first ;* **postrēmum,** *finally ;* **potissimum,** *chiefly ;* **facile,** *easily ;* **dulce,** *sweetly ;* **trīste,** *sadly ;* **impūne,** *scot-free ;* **aliquantum,** *somewhat,* and others.

To the Comparatives belong **magis,** *more ;* **nimis,** *too ;* **satis,** *enough.*

**92.** 1. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding **-ter** (**-iter**) to the stem ; stems in **nt** dropping the t, and stems in a **k**-mute inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending ; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension :

**fortis,** *brave,* **fortiter** ; **ferōx,** *wild,* **ferōciter** ; **prūdēns,** *foreseeing,* **prūdenter.**

Exceptions : **audāx,** *bold,* **audāc-ter** ; **difficilis,** *hard to do,* **difficulter, difficiliter** (but generally, **nōn facile, vix, aegrē**), and others.

2. Some adjectives of the Second Declension in **-us** and **-er** form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding **-iter** or **-er.** In a few cases the normal form in **-ē** is also found: **hūmāniter** and **hūmānē,** *humanely ;* **largiter** and **largē,** *lavishly ;* **turbulenter** and **turbulentē,** *riotously.*

3

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

**93**. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative
neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superla-
tive ends in **-is-simē, -er-rimē**, *etc.*, according to the Super-
lative of the adjective.

| POSITIVE. | | COMPARATIVE. | | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| altē, | *loftily,* . | altius, | | altissimē. |
| pulchrē, | *beautifully,* | pulchrius, | | pulcherrimē. |
| miserē, | *poorly,* | miserius, | | miserrimē. |
| fortiter, | *bravely,* | fortius, | | fortissimē. |
| audācter, | *boldly,* | audācius, | | audācissimē. |
| tūtō, | *safely,* | tūtius, | | tūtissimē. |
| facile, | *easily,* | facilius, | | facillimē. |
| bene, | *well,* | melius, | | optimē. |
| male, | *ill,* | pēius, | | pessimē. |
| [parvus], | *small,* | minus, | *less,* | minimē, *least.* |
| [māgnus], | *great,* | magis, | *more,* | māximē, *most.* |
| multum, | *much,* | plūs, | *more,* | plūrimum. |
| cito, | *quickly,* | citius, | | citissimē. |
| diū, | *long,* | diūtius, | | diūtissimē. |
| saepe, | *often,* | saepius, | | saepissimē. |
| nūper, | *recently,* | ——, | | nūperrimē. |
| satis, | *enough,* | satius, | *better.* | |

# NUMERALS.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**94**. The Cardinal numerals answer the question **quot,**
*how many?* and are the numbers used in counting. The
Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the
question **quotus,** *which one in the series?* They are as fol-
lows :

| | 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS. | | 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | I | ūnus, ūna, ūnum | prīmus, -a, -um (prior) |
| 2 | II | duo, duae, duo | secundus (alter) |
| 3 | III | trēs, tria | tertius |
| 4 | IV (IIII) | quattuor | quārtus |
| 5 | V | quīnque | quīntus |
| 6 | VI | sex | sextus |
| 7 | VII | septem | septimus |
| 8 | VIII | octō | octāvus |
| 9 | IX | novem | nōnus |
| 10 | X | decem | decimus |
| 11 | XI | ūndecim | ūndecimus |

|  |  | 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS. | 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | XII | duodecim | duodecimus |
| 13 | XIII | tredecim | tertius decimus |
| 14 | XIV | quattuordecim | quārtus decimus |
| 15 | XV | quīndecim | quīntus decimus |
| 16 | XVI | sēdecim | sextus decimus |
| 17 | XVII | septendecim | septimus decimus |
| 18 | XVIII | duodēvīgintī | duodēvīcēsimus |
| 19 | XIX | ūndēvīgintī | ūndēvīcēsimus |
| 20 | XX | vīgintī | vīcēsimus |
| 21 | XXI | vīgintī ūnus | vīcēsimus prīmus |
| 22 | XXII | vīgintī duo | vīcēsimus secundus |
| 23 | XXIII | vīgintī trēs | vīcēsimus tertius |
| 24 | XXIV | vīgintī quattuor | vīcēsimus quārtus |
| 25 | XXV | vīgintī quīnque | vīcēsimus quīntus |
| 26 | XXVI | vīgintī sex | vīcēsimus sextus |
| 27 | XXVII | vīgintī septem | vīcēsimus septimus |
| 28 | XXVIII | duodētrīgintā | duodētrīcēsimus |
| 29 | XXIX | ūndētrīgintā | ūndētrīcēsimus |
| 30 | XXX | trīgintā | trīcēsimus |
| 40 | XL | quadr*ā*gintā | quadrāgēsimus |
| 50 | L | quīnqu*ā*gintā | quīnquāgēsimus |
| 60 | LX | sex*ā*gintā | sexāgēsimus |
| 70 | LXX | sept*uā*gintā | septuāgēsimus |
| 80 | LXXX | oct*ō*gintā | octōgēsimus |
| 90 | XC | nōn*ā*gintā | nōnāgēsimus |
| 100 | C | centum | centēsimus |
| 101 | CI | centum et ūnus | centēsimus prīmus   [mus |
| 115 | CXV | centum et quīndecim | centēsimus (et) quīntus deci- |
| 120 | CXX | centum et vīgintī | centēsimus vīcēsimus |
| 121 | CXXI | centum vīgintī ūnus | centēsimus vīcēsimus prīmus |
| 200 | CC | ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsimus |
| 300 | CCC | trecentī | trecentēsimus |
| 400 | CCCC | quadr*in*gentī | quadringentēsimus |
| 500 | D (IↃ) | *quīn*gentī | quīngentēsimus |
| 600 | DC | *sē*scentī | sēscentēsimus |
| 700 | DCC | sept*in*gentī | septingentēsimus |
| 800 | DCCC | oct*in*gentī | octingentēsimus |
| 900 | DCCCC | *nōn*gentī | nōngentēsimus |
| 1000 | M (CIↃ) | mīlle | mīllēsimus |
| 1001 | MI | mīlle et ūnus | mīllēsimus prīmus |
| 1101 | MCI | mīlle centum ūnus | mīllēsimus centēsimus prīmus |
| 1120 | MCXX | mīlle centum vīgintī   [ūnus | mīllēsimus   centēsimus   vīcē-   simus         [simus prīmus |
| 1121 | MCXXI | mīlle centum vīgintī | mīllēsimus   centēsimus   vīcē- |

|  | 1. Cardinal Numbers. | | 2. Ordinal Numbers. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1200 | MCC | mīlle ducentī | mīllēsimus ducentēsimus |
| 2000 | MM | duo mīlia (mīllia) bīna mīlia | bis mīllēsimus |
| 2222 | | duo mīlia ducentī vī- gintī duo | bis mīllēsimus ducentēsimus vīcēsimus secundus |
| 5000 | IↃↃ | quīnque mīlia quīna mīlia | quīnquiēs mīllēsimus |
| 10,000 | CCIↃↃ | decem mīlia dēna mīlia | deciēs mīllēsimus |
| 21,000 | | ūnum et vīgintī mīlia | semel et vīciēs mīllēsimus |
| 100,000 | | centum mīlia centēna mīlia [mīlia | centiēs mīllēsimus |
| 1,000,000 | | deciēs centēna (centum) | deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus |

**95.** The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except : **ūnus,** *one,* **duo,** *two,* **trēs,** *three,* the hundreds beginning with **ducentī,** *two hundred,* and the plural **mīlia,** *thousands,* which forms **mīlium** and **mīlibus.**

|  |  |  |  | M. and F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | duo, *two,* | duae, | duo, | trēs, *three,* | tria, |
| G. | duōrum, | duārum, | duōrum, | trium, | trium, |
| D. | duōbus, | duābus, | duōbus, | tribus, | tribus, |
| A. | duōs, duo, | duās, | duo, | trēs, trīs, | tria, |
| Ab. | duōbus, | duābus, | duōbus. | tribus, | tribus. |

Like duŏ is declined **ambō, -ae, -ō.**

Remarks.—1. For the declension of **ūnus,** see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with **plūrālia tantum,** as **ūnae litterae,** *one epistle*), or with another numeral in the sense *only ;* in the latter sense also with substantives.

2. The Gen. of the hundreds, **ducentī,** *etc.,* ends in **-um** and not **-ōrum.**

3. The Pl. **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus,** are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

**96.**           **1. Compound Numerals.**

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately : **decem et trēs.**

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., are commonly expressed by subtraction ; occasionally as in English, but never in Cicero.

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one,* **vīgintī ūnus** ; or, *one and twenty,* **ūnus et (atque) vīgintī** ; as, *twenty-one years old* : **annōs ūnum et vīgintī (vīgintī**

ūnum), **ūnum et vīgintī annōs nātus.** But compounds like **septuāgintā et trēs** are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.

4. From 100 on, **et** may be inserted after the first numeral, if there be but two numbers ; as, **centum quattuor,** or **centum et quattuor.** If the smaller number precedes, the **et** should be inserted ; likewise in all cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as **ducentī annī et vīgintī.** If there be three numerals, the **et** is regularly omitted ; exceptions are very rare.

5. In compound ordinals **alter** is preferred to **secundus.**

6. **Centēna mīlia** is often omitted after the numeral adverb **deciēs** = 1,000,000 ; especially in stating sums of money.

7. Fractions are expressed by **pars** (omitted or expressed) in combination with **dīmidia** ($\frac{1}{2}$), **tertia** ($\frac{1}{3}$), **quārta** ($\frac{1}{4}$), *etc.* A Plural numerator is expressed by a Cardinal ; as, **duae quīntae** ($\frac{2}{5}$). The fraction is often broken up ; as, **pars dīmidia et tertia** ($\frac{5}{6} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}$). The even denominators could be divided ; as, **dīmidia tertia** ($\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$). Instead of **dīmidia** without **pars, dīmidium** is used.

## 97. 2. Distributive Numerals.

These answer the question **quotēnī,** *how many each ?*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **singulī, -ae, -a,** *one each,* | 30 | **trīcēnī** |
| 2 | **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *two each.* | 40 | **quadrāgēnī** |
| 3 | **ternī (trīnī)** | 50 | **quīnquāgēnī** |
| 4 | **quaternī** | 60 | **sexāgēnī** |
| 5 | **quīnī** | 70 | **septuāgēnī** |
| 6 | **sēnī** | 80 | **octōgēnī** |
| 7 | **septēnī** | 90 | **nōnāgēnī** |
| 8 | **octōnī** | 100 | **centēnī** |
| 9 | **novēnī** | 102 | **centēnī bīnī** |
| 10 | **dēnī** | 125 | **centēnī vīcēnī quīnī** |
| 11 | **ūndēnī** | 200 | **ducēnī** |
| 12 | **duodēnī** | 300 | **trecēnī** |
| 13 | **ternī dēnī** | 400 | **quadringēnī** |
| 14 | **quaternī dēnī** | 500 | **quīngēnī** |
| 15 | **quīnī dēnī** | 600 | **sexcēnī (sēscēnī)** |
| 16 | **sēnī dēnī** | 700 | **septingēnī** |
| 17 | **septēnī dēnī** | 800 | **octingēnī** |
| 18 | **octōnī dēnī, duodēvīcēnī** | 900 | **nōngēnī** |
| 19 | **novēnī dēnī, ūndēvīcēnī** | 1000 | **singula mīlia** |
| 20 | **vīcēnī** | 2000 | **bīna mīlia** |
| 21 | **vīcēnī singulī** | 3000 | **trīna mīlia** |
| 22 | **vīcēnī bīnī, bīnī et vīcēnī** | 10,000 | **dēna mīlia** |
| 28 | **duodētrīcēnī** | 100,000 | **centēna mīlia** |
| 29 | **ūndētrīcēnī** | | |

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. Pl. masc. and neuter end usually in **-um**, but **singulus** has always **singulōrum**.

2. The Distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when **singulī** is expressed, the Cardinal may be used.

3. The Distributives are used with **plūrālia tantum** : **bīnae litterae**, *two epistles.* But with these **ūnī** is used for *one*, **trīnī** for *three :* **ūnae litterae, trīnae litterae.**

4. The same rules as to the insertion or omission of **et** apply to the Distributives as to the Ordinals (96, 3, 4).

### 3. Multiplicative Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many fold ?*
Only the following forms occur :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **simplex,** | *single,* | 5 | **quincuplex** |
| 2 | **duplex,** | *double,* | 7 | **septemplex** |
| 3 | **triplex,** | *triple,* | 10 | **decemplex** |
| 4 | **quadruplex,** | *quadruple.* | 100 | **centuplex** |

### 4. Proportional Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many times as great ?*
Only the following forms occur :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **simplus, -a, -um,** | *single,* | 4 | **quadruplus** |
| 2 | **duplus,** | *double.* | 7 | **septuplus** |
| 3 | **triplus** | | 8 | **octuplus** |

**98.**                    **NUMERAL ADVERBS.**

These answer the question **quotiēns** : *how often ?*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **semel,** *once,* | 13 | **ter deciēs, tredeciēs** |
| 2 | **bis,** *twice.* | 14 | **quater deciēs, quattuordeciēs** |
| 3 | **ter** | 15 | **quīnquiēs deciēs, quīndeciēs** |
| 4 | **quater** | 16 | **sexiēs deciēs, sēdeciēs** |
| 5 | **quīnquiēs** | 17 | **septiēs deciēs** |
| 6 | **sexiēs** | 18 | **duodēvīciēs, octiēs deciēs** |
| 7 | **septiēs** | 19 | **ūndēvīciēs, noviēs deciēs** |
| 8 | **octiēs** | 20 | **vīciēs** |
| 9 | **noviēs** | 21 | **semel et vīciēs, vīciēs et semel, vīciēs semel** \* |
| 10 | **deciēs** | | |
| 11 | **ūndeciēs** | 22 | **bis et vīciēs, vīciēs et bis, vīciēs bis** \* |
| 12 | **duodeciēs** | | |

\* Not **semel vīciēs, bis vīciēs,** *etc.,* because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times ; twice twenty times = 40 times ; this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.

| 30 | trĭcĭēs | | 500 | quīngentĭēs |
| 40 | quadrāgĭēs | | 600 | sexcentĭēs (sēscentĭēs) |
| 50 | quīnquāgĭēs | | 700 | septingentĭēs |
| 60 | sexāgĭēs | | 800 | octingentĭēs |
| 70 | septuāgĭēs | | 900 | nōngentĭēs |
| 80 | octōgĭēs | | 1000 | mīllĭēs |
| 90 | nōnāgĭēs | | 2000 | bis mīllĭēs |
| 100 | centĭēs | | 100,000 | centĭēs mīllĭēs |
| 200 | ducentĭēs | | 1,000,000 | mīllĭēs mīllĭēs, decĭēs cen- |
| 400 | quadringentĭēs | | | tĭēs mīllĭēs |

## PRONOUNS.

**99.** Pronouns point out a person, place, or thing, but do not give its name.

### A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**100.** I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

|  | | SUBSTANTIVE. | POSSESSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | **ego,** | *I,* | |
| G. | **meī,** | *of me,* | **meus, -a, -um,** *mine or my.* |
| D. | **mihĭ,** | *to, for me,* | |
| Ac. | **mē,** | *me,* | (Voc. masc. **mī**). |
| Ab. | **mē,** | *from, with, by me,* | |
| Pl.—N. | **nōs,** | *we,* | |
| G. | **nostrī,** | *of us,* | |
| | **nostrum** | (Part. Gen. 304, 3), | **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our or ours.* |
| D. | **nōbīs,** | *to, for us,* | |
| Ac. | **nōs,** | *us,* | |
| Ab. | **nōbīs,** | *from, with, by us.* | |

**101.** II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

|  | | SUBSTANTIVE. | POSSESSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. V. | **tū,** | *thou,* | |
| G. | **tuī,** | *of thee,* | |
| D. | **tibĭ,** | *to, for thee,* | **tuus, -a, -um,** *thy or thine.* |
| Ac. | **tē,** | *thee,* | |
| Ab. | **tē,** | *from, with, by thee,* | |
| Pl.—N. | **vōs,** | *ye or you,* | |
| G. | **vestrī,** | *of you,* | |
| | **vestrum** | (Part. Gen. 304, 3), | **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your or* |
| D. | **vōbīs,** | *to, for you,* | *yours.* |
| Ac. | **vōs,** | *you,* | |
| Ab. | **vōbīs,** | *from, with, by you.* | |

## III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

**102.** The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative **is** (103).

DETERMINATIVE.

|  | SUBSTANTIVE. |  | POSSESSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | [is, ea, id], | *he, she, it,* | supplied by the Genitive. |
| G. | ēius, | *of him,* | ēius, *his, hers, its.* |
|  | *etc.* |  |  |

| Pl.—N. | [eī, iī, ī; eae, ea], *they,* |  |  |
|---|---|---|---|
| G. | eōrum, eārum, eōrum, *of them,* eōrum, eārum, eōrum, *their* or *theirs.* |
|  | *etc.* |

REFLEXIVE.

|  | SUBSTANTIVE. |  | POSSESSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—N. | —— |  |  |
| G. | suī, | *of him, her, it(self),* | suus, -a, -um, *his, her(s), its* |
| D. | sibĭ, | *to, for, him(self), her(self),* | (*own*). |
| Ac. | sē, sēsē, | *him(self), her(self),* |  |
| Ab. | sē, sēsē, | *from, with, by him(self),* |  |

|  |  |  |  |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pl.—N. | —— |  |  |
| G. | suī, | *of them(selves),* | suus, -a, -um, *their* (*own*), |
| D. | sibĭ, | *to, for them(selves),* | *theirs.* |
| Ac. | sē, sēsē, | *them(selves),* |  |
| Ab. | sē, sēsē, | *from, with, by them(selves).* |  |

REMARKS.—1. The enclitic -met is sometimes added to certain forms of the Personal Pronouns; as, **egomet,** *I myself.*

2. The enclitic -pte is sometimes added to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives; as, **suōpte ingeniō,** *by his own genius.*

## 103.    B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. **is**, *he, that.*

|  | SINGULAR. |  |  | PLURAL. |  |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| N. | is, | ea, | id, | iī, eī, ī, | eae, | ea, |
| G. | ēius, | ēius, | ēius, | eōrum, | eārum, | eōrum, |
| D. | eī, | eī, | eī, | iīs, eīs, īs, |  |  |
| Ac. | eum, | eam, | id, | eōs, | eās | ea, |
| Ab. | eō, | eā, | eō, | iīs, eīs, īs. |  |  |

### 2. Īdem (is + dem), *the same.*

|      | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| N.   | īdem,     | eadem,    | idem,     | īdem, eīdem, iīdem, | eaedem,   | eadem,    |
| G.   | ēiusdem,  | ēiusdem,  | ēiusdem,  | eōrundem, | eārundem, | eōrundem, |
| D.   | eīdem,    | eīdem,    | eīdem,    | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem, | | |
| Ac.  | eundem,   | eandem,   | idem,     | eōsdem,   | eāsdem,   | eadem,    |
| Ab.  | eōdem,    | eādem,    | eōdem,    | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem. | | |

### 3. ipse (perhaps is + pse), *he, self.*

|      | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| N.   | ipse,     | ipsa,     | ipsum,    | ipsī,   | ipsae,    | ipsa,     |
| G.   | ipsīus,   | ipsīus,   | ipsīus,   | ipsōrum, | ipsārum, | ipsōrum,  |
| D.   | ipsī,     | ipsī,     | ipsī,     | ipsīs,  | ipsīs,    | ipsīs,    |
| Ac.  | ipsum,    | ipsam,    | ipsum,    | ipsōs,  | ipsās,    | ipsa,     |
| Ab.  | ipsō,     | ipsā,     | ipsō,     | ipsīs,  | ipsīs,    | ipsīs.    |

## 104.   C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

### I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

#### hīc, *this.*

|         | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|----------------|
| Sg.—N.  | hīc,   | haec,  | hōc,   | Pl.—hī, | hae,    | haec, *these.* |
| G.      | hūius, | hūius, | hūius, | .       | hōrum,  | hārum, hōrum,  |
| D.      | huĭc,  | huĭc,  | huĭc,  |         | hīs,    | hīs,    his,   |
| Ac.     | hunc,  | hanc,  | hōc,   |         | hōs,    | hās,    haec,  |
| Ab.     | hōc,   | hāc,   | hōc,   |         | hīs,    | hīs,    hīs.   |

REMARK.—The full forms -ce are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase **hūiusce modī**, *of this kind.*

### II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

#### iste, *that.*

|         | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|
| Sg.—N.  | iste,  | ista,  | istud, | Pl.—istī, | istae,  | ista,   |
| G.      | istīus,| istīus,| istīus,|           | istōrum,| istārum, istōrum, |
| D.      | istī,  | istī,  | istī,  |           | istīs,  | istīs,  istīs,  |
| Ac.     | istum, | istam, | istud, |           | istōs,  | istās,  ista,   |
| Ab.     | istō,  | istā,  | istō,  |           | istīs,  | istīs,  īstis.  |

REMARK.—Iste combines with -ce, but in classical Latin the only common forms are istuc (for istud) and istaec (for ista).

### III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

|         | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|---------|---------|
| Sg.—N.  | ille,  | illa,  | illud, | Pl.—illī, | illae,  | illa,   |
| G.      | illīus,| illīus,| illīus,|           | illōrum,| illārum, illōrum, |
| D.      | illī,  | illī,  | illī,  |           | illīs,  | illīs,  illīs,  |
| Ac.     | illum, | illam, | illud, |           | illōs,  | illās,  illa,   |
| Ab.     | illō,  | illā,  | illō,  |           | illīs,  | illīs,  illīs.  |

## 105.            D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

quī (Substantive and Adjective), *who.*

| Sg.—N. | quī, | quae, | quod, | Pl.—quī, | quae, | quae, |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| G. | cūius, | cūius, | cūius, | quōrum, | quārum, | quōrum, |
| D. | cuī, | cuī, | cuī, | quibus, | quibus, | quibus, |
| Ac. | quem, | quam, | quod, | quōs, | quās, | quae, |
| Ab. | quō, | quā, | quō, | quibus, | quibus, | quibus. |

General Relatives are :

| *Substantive.* | quisquis, *whoever,* | quidquid, | quicquid, | *whatever.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Adjective.* | (quīquī, | quaequae, | quodquod), | *whosoever.* |
| | quīcunque, | quaecunque, | quodcunque, | *whichever.* |

REMARKS.—1. D. Ab. Pl. quīs is common in the poets at all periods ; and occurs sometimes also in prose writers.

2. The Abl. Sing. quī for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in combination with cum is preferred to quō, quā, by CICERO.

## 106.         E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

| *Substantive.* | quis ? *who ?* | | quid ? *what ?* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Adjective.* | quī ? | quae ? | quod ? *which ?* |
| *Subst. and Adj.* | uter ? | utra ? | utrum ? *who, which of two ?* |

| Sg.—N. | quis ? | quid ? | *who ? what ?* | POSSESSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| G. | cūius ? | cūius ? | *whose ?* | cūius, cūia, cūium, *whose ?* |
| D. | cuī ? | cuī ? | *to, for whom ?* | |
| Ac. | quem ? | quid ? | *whom ? what ?* | |
| Ab. | quō ? | quō ? | *from, with, by whom or what ?* | |

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*

### Strengthened Interrogatives.

| *Substantive.* | quisnam ? *who, pray ?* | | quidnam ? *what, pray ?* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ecquis ? | *is there any one who ?* | ecquid ? |
| *Adjective.* | quīnam ? | quaenam ? | quodnam ? *which, pray ?* |
| | ecquī ? | ecqua ? (ecquae ?) | ecquod ? |

REMARK.—In the poets quī is sometimes found as a substantive for quis in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates.

## 107.          F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

| 1. *Substantive.* | aliquis, | aliqua (rare), | aliquid, | } *somebody, some one* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | quis, | qua, | quid, | } *or other.* |
| *Adjective.* | aliquī, | aliqua, | aliquod, | } *some, any.* |
| | quī, | quae, qua, | quod, | } |

REMARKS.—1. The common rule is that **quis** and **quī** occur properly only after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** or after a relative : otherwise **aliquis, aliquī.**

2. **Aliquis** and **quis** are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of **aliquī, quī.**

3. The Pl. N. Ac. Neut. of **quis** is both **quae** and **qua** ; of **aliquis** only **aliqua.**

2. **quīdam, quaedam,** $\begin{cases} \textbf{quiddam} \text{ (subst.),} \\ \textbf{quoddam} \text{ (adj.),} \end{cases}$ *a certain, certain one.*

3. **quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam** (and **quodpiam**), *some one, some.*

   **quisquam,** ————, **quicquam,** *any one (at all).*

REMARK.—**Quisquam** has no plural ; but forms of **ūllus** are used instead.

4. **quīvīs,    quaevīs,** $\begin{cases} \textbf{quidvīs} \text{ (subst.),} \\ \textbf{quodvīs} \text{ (adj.),} \end{cases}$ } *any one you please,*

   **quīlibet,   quaelibet,** $\begin{cases} \textbf{quidlibet} \text{ (subst.),} \\ \textbf{quodlibet} \text{ (adj.),} \end{cases}$ *you like.*

5. **quisque,    quaeque** $\begin{cases} \textbf{quidque} \text{ (subst.),} \\ \textbf{quodque} \text{ (adj.),} \end{cases}$ } *each one.*

   **ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque** $\begin{cases} \textbf{ūnumquidque} \text{ (subst.),} \\ \textbf{ūnumquodque} \text{ (adj.),} \end{cases}$ *each one sever-ally.*

**108**. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are :

**ūllus, -a, -um,** *any ;* **nūllus, -a, -um,** *no one, not one.* The corresponding substantives are **nēmō** (70) and **nihil,** the latter of which forms only **nihilī** (Gen.) and **nihilō** (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um,** *some, many a,* declined like **nūllus.**

**alius, -a, -ud,** *another ;* the Possessive of **alius** is **aliēnus.**

**alter, -era, -erum,** *the other, one (of two).*

**neuter, neutra, neutrum,** *neither of two.*

**alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum,** *the one or the other of the two.*

**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *each of two, either.*   **ambō, -ae, -ō,** *both.*

**utervīs,  utravīs,  utrumvīs,** } *whichever you please of the two.*
**uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,**

## CORRELATIVES.

**109.** I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

| INTERROGATIVES. | | | DEMONSTRATIVES. | | RELATIVES. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| quis ? | *who ?* | is, | *that,* | quī, | *who.* |
| quālis ? | *of what kind ?* | tālis, | *such (of that kind),* | quālis, | *as (of which kind).* |
| quantus ? | *how much ?* | tantus, | *so much,* | quantus, | *as much.* |
| quot ? | *how many ?* | tot, | *so many,* | quot, | *as many.* |

## 110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

### 1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ubĭ ? | *where ?* | ibĭ, | *there,* | ubĭ, | *where.* |
| quā ? | *where, which way ?* | hīc, hāc, | *here, this way,* | quā, | *where, which way.* |
| | | istīc, istāc, | *there, that way.* | | |
| | | illīc, illāc, | *there, yonder way.* | | |
| unde ? | *whence ?* | inde, | *thence,* | unde, | *whence.* |
| | | hinc, | *hence.* | | |
| | | istinc, | *thence.* | | |
| | | illinc, | *thence, from yonder.* | | |
| quō ? | *whither ?* | eō, | *thither,* | quō, | *whither.* |
| | | hūc, (hōc), | *hither.* | | |
| | | istūc, (istōc), | *thither.* | | |
| | | illūc, (illōc), | *thither, yonder.* | | |

### 2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| quandō ? | *when ?* | tum, | *then,* | quandō, *when.* |
| | | tunc, | *at that time,* | quom, cum. |
| | | nunc, | *now.* | |
| quotiēns ? | *how often ?* | totiēns, | *so often,* | quotiēns, *as often as.* |

### 3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| quōmodo ? quī ? | *how ?* | ita, sīc, | *so, thus,* | ut, utī, | *as.* |
| quam ? | *how much ?* | tam, | *so much,* | quam, | *as.* |

## 111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing **ali-** :

**aliquantus,** *somewhat great ;* **aliquot,** *several, some ;* **alicubĭ,** *somewhere ;* **alicunde,** *from somewhere ;* **aliquandō,** *at some time.*

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing **-cunque (-cumque),** sometimes **-que** :

**quantuscunque,** *however great ;* **quāliscunque,** *of whatever kind ;* **quotquot,** *however many ;* **ubĭcunque,** *wheresoever ;* **quandōcunque, quandŏque,** *whenever ;* **quotiēscunque,** *however often ;* **utut,** *in whatever way ;* **utcunque,** *howsoever ;* **quamquam,** *however, although.*

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with **-vīs** or **-libet** :

**quantuslibet, quantusvīs,** *as great as you please ;* **ubivīs,** *where you will ;* **quamvīs,** *as you please, though.*

## THE VERB.

**112.** The inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses :

1. Person : First.
   Second.
   Third.

2. Voice : Active.
   Passive.

The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject : **amō,** *I love.*

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb : **amor,** *I am loved.*

3. Tense : Present, Imperfect, Future.
   Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Tenses are divided into—

a. Principal * : Present, **amō,** *I love.*
   Future, **amābō,** *I shall love.*
   Pure Perfect, **amāvī,** *I have loved.*
   Future Perf., **amāverō,** *I shall have loved.*

b. Historical * : Imperfect, **amābam,** *I was loving.*
   Historical Perfect, **amāvī,** *I loved.*
   Pluperfect, **amāveram,** *I had loved.*

REMARK.—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

4. Mood : Indicative.
   Subjunctive.
   Imperative.

The Indicative Mood is the mood of the *fact* : **amō,** *I love.*

The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the *wish, command,* or *qualified statement* : **amem,** *may I love, I may love ;* **amet,** *may he love, let him love ; he may love ;* **sī amet,** *if he should love.*

The Imperative Mood is the mood of *command* : **amā,** *love thou !*

For further distinctions see Syntax.

---

* For *Principal* some Grammars use *Primary ;* for *Historical, Secondary.*

5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called

Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

**113.** A large number of Verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning : **hortor,** *I exhort.* These are called *deponent* (from **dēpōnere,** *to lay aside*).

**114.** The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.

1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are :

|  | ACTIVE. | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. | **-m** (or a vowel, coalescing with the characteristic ending); Pf. **ī,** | **-r.** |
| 2. | **-s** ; Pf. **-s-tī;** Impv. **-tō** or wanting, | **-ris** or **-re** ; Impv. **-re** or **-tor.** |
| 3. | **-t** ; Impv. **-tō,** | **-tur** ; Impv. **-tor.** |
| Pl.—1. | **-mus,** | **-mur.** |
| 2. | **-tis;** Pf. **-s-tis-** ; Impv. **-te** or **-tōte,** | **-minī.** |
| 3. | **-nt;** Pf. **ērunt** or **ēre;** Impv. **-ntō,** | **-ntur** ; Impv. **-ntor.** |

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed.

3. The stem itself is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms :

(*a*) The *Present* stem ; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the *Present System.*

(*b*) The *Perfect* stem ; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the *Perfect System.*

(*c*) The *Supine* stem, which is used for convenience' sake to form the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and the Supine. These forms are called the *Supine System.*

**115.** 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb **sum,** *I am.*

2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed <span>the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive</span>

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by following endings to the stems :

|  | | ACTIVE. | PA |
|---|---|---|---|
| INFINITIVE. | Pr. | -re, | -rī, -ī. |
| | Pf. | -isse, | -tum (-tam, -tum), |
| | Fut. | -tūrum (-am, -um) [esse], | -tum īrī. |
| PARTICIPLES. | Pr. | -ns (G. -ntis), | |
| | Pf. | ——— | -tus (-ta, -tum). |
| | Fut. | -tūrus (-a, -um). | |

| GERUND. | GERUNDIVE. | SUPINE. |
|---|---|---|
| -ndī (-dō, -dum, -dō). | -ndus (-a, -um). | -tum ; -tū. |

## 116.     THE VERB sum, *I am.*

(Pres. stem es-, Perf. stem fu-)

| INDICATIVE. | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|

### PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. | su-m, | *I am,* | si-m, | *I be,* | |
| 2. | es, | *thou art,* | sī-s, | *thou be,* | |
| 3. | es-t, | *he, she, it is.* | si-t, | *he, she, it be.* | |
| Pl.—1. | su-mus, | *we are,* | sī-mus, | *we be,* | |
| 2. | es-tis, | *you are,* | sī-tis, | *you be,* | |
| 3. | su-nt, | *they are.* | si-nt, | *they be.* | |

### IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. | era-m, | *I was,* | esse-m, | *I were* | (forem), |
| 2. | erā-s, | *thou wast,* | essē-s, | *thou wert* | (forēs), |
| 3. | era-t, | *he was.* | esse-t, | *he were* | (foret). |
| Pl.—1. | erā-mus, | *we were,* | essē-mus, | *we were,* | |
| 2. | erā-tis, | *you were,* | essē-tis, | *you were,* | |
| 3. | era-nt, | *they were.* | esse-nt, | *they were* | (forent). |

### FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. | er-ō, | *I shall be,* |
| 2. | eri-s, | *thou wilt be,* |
| 3. | eri-t, | *he will be.* |
| Pl.—1. | eri-mus, | *we shall be,* |
| 2. | eri-tis, | *you will be,* |
| 3. | eru-nt, | *they will be.* |

### PERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *...e been, I* | **fu-eri-m,** | *I have, may have, been,* |
| *...us,* | | |
| *...ou hast been,* | **fu-erĭ-s,** | *thou have, mayest have, been,* |
| *thou wast,* | | |
| *he has been, he* | **fu-eri-t,** | *he have, may have, been.* |
| *was.* | | |
| —1. fu-i-mus, | *we have been, we* | **fu-erĭ-mus,** | *we have, may have, been,* |
| | *were,* | | |
| 2. fu-i-stis, | *you have been,* | **fu-erĭ-tis,** | *you have, may have, been,* |
| | *you were,* | | |
| 3. fu-ēru-nt, | *fu-ēre, they have* | **fu-eri-nt,** | *they have, may have, been.* |
| | *been, they were.* | | |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.— 1. | **fu-era-m,** | *I had been,* | **fu-isse-m,** | *I had, might have, been,* |
| 2. | **fu-erā-s,** | *thou hadst been,* | **fu-issē-s,** | *thou hadst, mightst have, been,* |
| 3. | **fu-era-t,** | *he had been.* | **fu-isse-t,** | *he had, might have, been.* |
| Pl.—1. | **fu-erā-mus,** | *we had been,* | **fu-issē-mus,** | *we had, might have, been,* |
| 2. | **fu-erā-tis,** | *you had been,* | **fu-issē-tis,** | *you had, might have, been.* |
| 3. | **fu-era-nt,** | *they had been,* | **fu-isse-nt,** | *they had, might have, been.* |

### FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.— 1. **fu-er-ō,**    *I shall have been,*
    2. **fu-erĭ-s,**    *thou wilt have been,*
    3. **fu-eri-t,**    *he will have been.*

Pl.—1. **fu-erĭ-mus,**    *we shall have been,*
    2. **fu-erĭ-tis,**    *you will have been,*
    3. **fu-eri-nt,**    *they will have been.*

### IMPERATIVE.

| PRESENT. | | FUTURE. |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. ——, | ——, |
| 2. es, *be thou,* | estō, *thou shalt be,* |
| 3. ——, | estō, *he shall be.* |
| Pl.—1. ——, | |
| 2. es-te, *be ye,* | estōte, *you shall be,* |
| 3. ——, | suntō, *they shall be.* |

### INFINITIVE.

PRES. **es-se,**    *to be,*
PERF. **fu-isse,**    *to have been,*
FUT. **fu-tūr-um (-am, -um) esse (fore),** *to be about to be.*

### PARTICIPLE.

PRES. only in the compounds **ab-sēns, prae-sēns.**
FUT. **fu-tūr-us, -a, -um,** *about to be.*

**117.** COMPOUNDS OF **sum,** *I am.*

**ab-sum,** *I am away, absent.* Pf. (ab-fuī)**āfuī,** Pr. Part. **ab-sēns,** *absent.*
**ad-sum,** *I am present.* Pf. **affuī.**
**dē-sum,** *I am wanting.*
**īn-sum,** *I am in.*
**inter-sum,** *I am between.*
**ob-sum,** *I am against, I hurt.* Pf. **obfuī** or **offuī.**

**pos-sum,** *I am able.*
**prae-sum,** *I am over, I superintend.* Pr. Part. **prae-sēns,** *present.*
**prō-sum,** *I am for, I profit.*
**sub-sum,** *I am under.* No Pf.
**super-sum,** *I am, or remain, over.*

These are all inflected like **sum,** but **prōsum** and **possum** require special treatment by reason of their composition.

## Prōsum, *I profit.*

**118.** In the forms of **prōsum, prōd-** is used before vowels.

|  | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|---|
| PRESENT. | prō-sum, prōd-es, prōd-est, prō-sumus, prōd-estis, prō-sunt, | prō-sim, |
| IMPERFECT. | prōd-eram, | prōd-essem, |
| FUTURE. | prōd-erō, |  |
| PERFECT. | prō-fuī, | prō-fuerim, |
| PLUPERFECT. | prō-fueram, | prō-fuissem. |
| FUT. PERF. | prō-fuerō. |  |

INFINITIVE. PRES. **prōd-esse;** FUT. **prō-futūrum esse (-fore);** PERF. **prō-fuisse.**

## Possum, *I am able, I can.*

**119. Possum** is compounded of **pot (potis, pote)** and **sum;** **t** becomes **s** before **s;** in the perfect forms, **f (pot-fuī)** is lost.

|  | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|---|
|  | PRESENT. |  |
| SG. —1. | **pos-sum,** *I am able, can,* | **pos-sim,** *I be able.* |
| 2. | **pot-es,** | **pos-sīs,** |
| 3. | **pot-est.** | **pos-sit.** |
| PL. —1. | **pos-sumus,** | **pos-sīmus,** |
| 2. | **pot-estis,** | **pos-sītis.** |
| 3. | **pos-sunt.** | **pos-sint.** |
|  | IMPERFECT. |  |
| SG. —1. | **pot-eram,** *I was able, could,* | **pos-sem,** *I were, might be, able.* |
| 2. | **pot-erās,** | **pos-sēs,** |
| 3. | **pot-erat.** | **pos-set.** |
| PL.—1. | **pot-erāmus,** | **pos-sēmus,** |
| 2. | **pot-erātis,** | **pos-sētis,** |
| 3. | **pot-erant.** | **pos-sent.** |

<div align="center">FUTURE.</div>

Sg.—1. **pot-erō**, *I shall be able.*
　　2. **pot-eris**,
　　3. **pot-erit**.

Pl.—1. **pot-erimus**,
　　2. **pot-eritis**,
　　3. **pot-erunt**.

<div align="center">PERFECT.</div>

Sg.—1. **pot-u-ī**, *I have been able,*　　**pot-u-erim**, *I have, may have, been*
　　2. **pot-u-istī**,　　　　　　　　　**pot-u-erĭs**,　　　　　*[able.*
　　3. **pot-u-ĭt**.　　　　　　　　　　**pot-u-erit**.

Pl.—1. **pot-u-imus**,　　　　　　　　**pot-u-erĭmus**,
　　2. **pot-u-istis**,　　　　　　　　**pot-u-erĭtis**,
　　3. **pot-u-ērunt**.　　　　　　　　**pot-u-erint**.

<div align="center">PLUPERFECT.</div>

Sg.—1. **pot-u-eram**, *I had been able,*　**pot-u-issem**, *I had, might have,*
　　2. **pot-u-erās**,　　　　　　　　　**pot-u-issēs**,　　　*[been able.*
　　3. **pot-u-erat**.　　　　　　　　　**pot-u-isset**.

Pl.—1. **pot-u-erāmus**,　　　　　　　**pot-u-issēmus**,
　　2. **pot-u-erātis**,　　　　　　　　**pot-u-issētis**,
　　3. **pot-u-erant**.　　　　　　　　　**pot-u-issent**.

<div align="center">FUTURE PERFECT.</div>

Sg.—1. **pot-u-erō**, *I shall have been*　Pl.—1. **pot-u-erĭmus**,
　　2. **pot-u-erĭs**,　　　　*[able,*　　　　2. **pot-u-erĭtis**,
　　3. **pot-u-erit**.　　　　　　　　　　　3. **pot-u-erint**.

INFINITIVE. Pres., **pos-se**, *to be able.* Perf., **pot-u-isse**, *to have been able.*

# REGULAR VERBS.

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

**120.** 1. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, **ā**, **ē**, **ĕ**, **ī**, which may be found by dropping -re from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.

2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive Active ; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative Active ; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts ;* and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows :

| PRES. IND. | PRES. INF. | PERF. IND. | SUPINE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I. am-ō, | amā-re, | amā-vī, | amā-tum, | *to love.* |
| II. dĕle-ō, | dēlē-re, | dēlē-vī, | dēlē-tum, | *to blot out.* |
| mone-ō, | monē-re, | mon-uī, | mon-i-tum, | *to remind.* |
| III. em-ō, | eme-re, | ēm-ī, | ēm(p)-tum, | *to buy.* |
| statu-ō, | statue-re, | statu-ī, | statū-tum, | *to settle.* |
| scrīb-ō, | scrībe-re, | scrīp-sī, | scrīp-tum, | *to write.* |
| capi-ō, | cape-re, | cēp-ī, | cap-tum, | *to take.* |
| IV. audi-ō, | audī-re, | audī-vī, | audī-tum, | *to hear.* |

### Formation of the Tenses.

**121.** The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly, or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that

1. The *Second Person Impv. Active* is the same as the stem of the Pres. Infinitive.

2. The *Impf. Subjr.* may be formed from the Pres. Inf. Active by adding -m for Active and -r for Passive.

3. The *Second Person Impv. Passive* and *Second Person Sing. Pres. Passive* in -re are the same as the Pres. Inf. Active. Hence -ris is preferred in the Pres. Indic. Pass. in order to avoid confusion.

4. The *Pres. Subjv. Active* and *Fut. Indic. Active* in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the First Person Singular.

5. The *Fut. Perf. Indic. Active* and the *Perf. Subjv. Active* differ only in the First Person Singular.

REMARK.—*Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic in the Perfect and Supine.* Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p** ; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c** ; **c, g, qu,** with **s,** become **x** ; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped.

scrīb-ō, scrīp-sī, scrīptum ; legō, lēc-tum ; coqu-ō, coc-tum ; dīc-ō, dīxī (dīc-sī) ; iung-ō, iūnx-ī (iūng-sī) ; coqu-ō, coxī (coqu-sī) ; ed-ō, ē-sum (ed-sum) ; cēd-ō, cēs-sī (cēd-sī) ; mitt-ō, mī-sī (mit-sī), mis-sum (mit-sum).

**122.**    First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF **amāre,** *to love.*

PRIN. PARTS : **am-ō, amā-re, amā-vī, amā-tum.**

### ACTIVE

INDICATIVE.      SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| *Am loving, do love, love.* | *Be loving, may love.* |
|---|---|
| SG.—1. am-**ō,** | ame-**m,** |
| 2. amā-**s,** | amē-**s,** |
| 3. ama-**t,** | ame-**t.** |
| PL.—1. amā-**mus,** | amē-**mus,** |
| 2. amā-**tis,** | amē-**tis,** |
| 3. ama-**nt,** | ame-**nt.** |

IMPERFECT.

| *Was loving, loved.* | *Were loving, might love.* |
|---|---|
| SG.—1. amā-**ba-m,** | amā-**re-m,** |
| 2. amā-**bā-s,** | amā-**rē-s,** |
| 3. amā-**ba-t,** | amā-**re-t.** |
| PL.—1. amā-**bā-mus,** | amā-**rē-mus,** |
| 2. amā-**bā-tis,** | amā-**rē-tis,** |
| 3. amā-**ba-nt,** | amā-**re-nt.** |

FUTURE.

| *Shall be loving, shall love.* | |
|---|---|
| SG.—1. amā-**b-ō,** | |
| 2. amā-**bi-s,** | |
| 3. amā-**bi-t,** | |
| PL.—1. amā-**bi-mus,** | |
| 2. amā-**bi-tis,** | |
| 3. amā-**bu-nt.** | |

PERFECT.

| *Have loved, did love.* | *Have, may have, loved.* |
|---|---|
| SG.—1. amā-**v-ī,** | amā-**v-eri-m,** |
| 2. amā-**v-istī,** | amā-**v-erĭ-s,** |
| 3. amā-**v-it,** | amā-**v-eri-t.** |
| PL.—1. amā-**v-imus,** | amā-**v-erĭ-mus,** |
| 2. amā-**v-istis,** | amā-**v-erĭ-tis,** |
| 3. amā-**v-ērunt (-ĕre),** | amā-**v-eri-nt.** |

## First Conjugation.

### ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.          SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.*          *Had, might have, loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-**v**-era-m,          amā-**v**-isse-m,

    2. amā-**v**-erā-s,          amā-**v**-issē-s,

    3. amā-**v**-era-t,          amā-**v**-isse-t.

Pl.—1. amā-**v**-erā-mus,          amā-**v**-issē-mus,

    2. amā-**v**-erā-tis,          amā-**v**-issē-tis,

    3. amā-**v**-era-nt,          amā-**v**-isse-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-**v**-er-ō,

    2. amā-**v**-erĭ-s,

    3. amā-**v**-eri-t,

Pl.—1. amā-**v**-erĭ-mus,

    2. amā-**v**-erĭ-tis,

    3. amā-**v**-eri-nt.

### IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.          FUTURE.

Sg.—1. ——,          ——,

    2. amā,   *love thou,*    amā-**tō**,   *thou shalt love.*

    3. ——,          amā-**tō**,   *he shall love.*

Pl.—1. ——,          ——,

    2. amā-**te**, *love ye,*    amā-**tōte**, *ye shall love.*

    3. ——.          ama-**ntō**, *they shall love.*

### INFINITIVE.

PRES.   amā-**re**, *to love.*

PERF.   amā-**v**-isse, *to have loved.*

FUT.   amā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to love.*

GERUND.          SUPINE.

N. [amā-**re**], *loving.*

G. ama-**nd**-ī, *of loving.*

D. ama-**nd**-ō, *to loving.*

Ac. [amā-**re**],          Ac. amā-**tum**, *to love.*

  (ad) ama-**nd**-um, *loving, to love.*

Ab. ama-**nd**-ō, *by loving.*      Ab. amā-**tū**, *to love, in the loving.*

### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-**n**-s (G. ama-**nt**-is), *loving.*

FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being about to love.*

## First Conjugation.

### PASSIVE.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|

PRESENT.

*Am loved.* — *Be, may be, loved.*

Sg.—1. amo-r,                    ame-r,
    2. amā-**ris** (-**re**),        amē-**ris** (-**re**),
    3. amā-**tur**,                 amē-**tur**.

Pl.—1. amā-**mur**,              amē-**mur**,
    2. amā-**minī**,              amē-**minī**,
    3. ama-**ntur**,             ame-**ntur**.

IMPERFECT.

*Was loved.* — *Were, might be, loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-**ba-r**,                  amā-**re-r**,
    2. amā-**bā-ris** (-**re**),       amā-**rē-ris** (-**re**),
    3. amā-**bā-tur**,                amā-**rē-tur**.

Pl.—1. amā-**bā-mur**,             amā-**rē-mur**,
    2. amā-**bā-minī**,            amā-**rē-minī**,
    3. amā-**ba-ntur**,          amā-**re-ntur**.

FUTURE.

*Shall be loved.*

Sg.—1. amā-**bo-r**,
    2. amā-**be-ris** (-**re**),
    3. amā-**bi-tur**.

Pl.—1. amā-**bi-mur**,
    2. amā-**bi-minī**,
    3. amā-**bu-ntur**.

PERFECT.

*Have been loved, was loved.* — *Have, may have, been loved.*

| Sg.—1. amā-**t-us**, -**a**, -**um** sum, | amā-**t-us**, -**a**, -**um** sim, |
|---|---|
|     2.                                es, |     sīs, |
|     3.                                est, |     sit, |
| Pl.—1. amā-**t-ī**, -**ae**, -**a**  sumus, | amā-**t-ī**, -**ae**, -**a**  sīmus, |
|     2.                              estis, |     sītis, |
|     3.                              sunt. |     sint. |

## First Conjugation.

### PASSIVE.

| INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|

#### PLUPERFECT.

| *Had been loved.* | | *Had, might have, been loved.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um | eram, | amā-t-us, -a, -um | essem, |
| 2. | erās, | | essēs, |
| 3. | erat, | | esset, |
| Pl.—1. amā-t-ī, -ae, -a | erāmus, | amā-t-ī, -ae, -a | essēmus, |
| 2. | erātis, | | essētis, |
| 3. | erant. | | essent. |

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

| *Shall have been loved.* | |
|---|---|
| Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um | erō, |
| 2. | eris, |
| 3. | erit, |
| Pl.—1. amā-t-ī, -ae, -a | erimus, |
| 2. | eritis, |
| 3. | erunt. |

### IMPERATIVE.

| PRESENT. | | FUTURE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—1. ——, | | ——, | |
| 2. amā-re, | *be thou loved.* | amā-tor, | *thou shalt be loved.* |
| 3. ——, | | amā-tor, | *he shall be loved.* |
| Pl.—1. ——, | | ——, | |
| 2. amā-minī, | *be ye loved.* | ——, | |
| 3. ——. | | ama-ntor, | *they shall be loved.* |

### INFINITIVE.

| PRES. | amā-rī, | *to be loved.* |
|---|---|---|
| PERF. | amā-t-um, -am, -um esse, | *to have been loved.* |
| FUT. | amā-tum īrī, | *to be about to be loved.* |
| FUT. PERF. | amā-t-um, -am, -um fore. | |

| PARTICIPLE. | GERUNDIVE. |
|---|---|
| PERF. amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved.* | ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.* |

## 123.       Second Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF **dēlēre,** *to destroy* (*blot out*).

PRIN. PARTS : **dēlĕ-ō, dēlĕ-re, dēlĕ-vī, dēlĕ-tum.**

|  | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

PRESENT.

| | ACTIVE INDIC. | ACTIVE SUBJV. | PASSIVE INDIC. | PASSIVE SUBJV. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SG.— | dēle-**ō**, | dēle-**a-m**, | dēle-**o-r**, | dēle-**a-r**, |
| | dēlĕ-**s**, | dēle-**ā-s**, | dēlĕ-**ris** (-**re**), | dēle-**ā-ris** (-**re**), |
| | dēle-**t**, | dēle-**a-t**, | dēlĕ-**tur**, | dēle-**ā-tur**, |
| PL.— | dēlĕ-**mus**, | dēle-**ā-mus**, | dēlĕ-**mur**, | dēle-**ā-mur**, |
| | dēlĕ-**tis**, | dēle-**ā-tis**, | dēlĕ-**minī**, | dēle-**ā-minī**, |
| | dēle-**nt**. | dēle-**a-nt**. | dēle-**ntur**. | dēle-**a-ntur**. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SG.— | dēlē-**ba-m**, | dēlē-**re-m**, | dēlē-**ba-r**, | dēlē-**re-r**, |
| | dēlē-**bā-s**, | dēlē-**rē-s**, | dēlē-**bā-ris** (-**re**), | dēlē-**rē-ris** (-**re**), |
| | dēlē-**ba-t**, | dēlē-**re-t**, | dēlē-**bā-tur**, | dēlē-**rē-tur**, |
| PL.— | dēlē-**bā-mus**, | dēlē-**rē-mus**, | dēlē-**bā-mur**, | dēlē-**rē-mur**, |
| | dēlē-**bā-tis**, | dēlē-**rē-tis**, | dēlē-**bā-minī**, | dēlē-**rē-minī**, |
| | dēlē-**ba-nt**. | dēlē-**re-nt**. | dēlē-**ba-ntur**. | dēlē-**re-ntur**. |

FUTURE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SG.— | dēlē-**b-ō**, | | dēlē-**bo-r**, | |
| | dēlĕ-**bi-s**, | | dēlē-**be-ris** (-**re**), | |
| | dēlĕ-**bi-t**, | | dēlē-**bi-tur**, | |
| PL.— | dēlē-**bi-mus**, | | dēlē-**bi-mur**, | |
| | dēlĕ-**bi-tis**, | | dēlē-**bi-minī**, | |
| | dēlĕ-**bu-nt**. | | dēlē-**bu-ntur**. | |

PERFECT.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SG.— | dēlē-**v-ī**, | dēlē-**v-eri-m**, | dēlē-**t-us** | **sum,** | dēlē-**t-us** | **sim,** |
| | dēlē-**v-istī**, | dēlē-**v-erī-s**, | | **es,** | | **sīs,** |
| | dēlē-**v-it**, | dēlē-**v-eri-t**, | | **est,** | | **sit,** |
| PL.— | dēlē-**v-imus**, | dēlē-**v-erī-mus**, | dēlē-**t-ī** | **sumus,** | dēlē-**t-ī** | **sīmus,** |
| | dēlē-**v-istis**, | dēlē-**v-erī-tis**, | | **estis,** | | **sītis,** |
| | dēlē-**v-ērunt** (-**ēre**), | dēlē-**v-eri-nt**. | | **sunt.** | | **sint.** |

## Second Conjugation.

| ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

PLUPERFECT.

| | INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | —dēlē-v-era-m, | dēlē-v-isse-m, | dēlē-t-us eram, | dēlē-t-us essem, |
| | dēlē-v-erā-s, | dēlē-v-issē-s, | erās, | essēs, |
| | dēlē-v-era-t, | dēlē-v-isse-t, | erat, | esset, |
| Pl. | —dēlē-v-erā-mus, | dēlē-v-issē-mus, | dēlē-t-ī erāmus, | dēlē-t-ī essēmus, |
| | dēlē-v-erā-tis, | dēlē-v-issē-tis, | erātis, | essētis, |
| | dēlē-v-era-nt. | dēlē-v-isse-nt. | erant. | essent. |

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | —dēlē-v-er-ō, | | dēlē-t-us erō, |
| | dēlē-v-erĭ-s, | | eris, |
| | dēlē-v-eri-t, | | erit, |
| Pl. | —dēlē-v-erĭ-mus, | | dēlē-t-ī erimus, |
| | dēlē-v-erĭ-tis, | | eritis, |
| | dēlē-v-eri-nt, | | erunt. |

IMPERATIVE.

| | PRESENT. | FUTURE. | PRESENT. | FUTURE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | ——, | ——, | ——, | ——, |
| | dēlē, | dēlē-tō, | dēlē-re, | dēlē-tor, |
| | ——, | dēlē-tō, | ——, | dēlē-tor. |
| Pl. | ——, | ——, | ——, | ——, |
| | dēlē-te, | dēlē-tōte, | dēlē-min., | ——, |
| | ——, | dēle-ntō. | ——, | dēle-ntor. |

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | dēlē-re. | PRES. | dēlē-rī. |
| PERF. | dēlē-v-isse. | PERF. | dēlē-t-um, -am, -um esse. |
| FUT. | dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]. | FUT. | dēlē-tum īrī. |
| | | FUT. PF. | dēlē-t-um, -am, -um fore. |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. | PARTICIPLES. |
|---|---|---|
| N. [dēlē-re]. | | PRES. N. dēlē-n-s; G. dēle-nt-is. |
| G. dēle-nd-ī. | | FUT. dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um. |
| D. dēle-nd-ō. | | PERF. dēlē-t-us, -a, -um. |
| Ac. [dēlē-re] | Ac. dēlē-tum. | |
| (ad) dēle-nd-um. | | GERUNDIVE. |
| Ab. dēle-nd-ō. | Ab. dēlē-tū. | dēle-nd-us, -a, -um. |

**124.** Like **dēlēre**, *to destroy*, are conjugated only, **nēre**, *to spin*, **flēre**, *to weep*, and the compounds of **-plēre**, *fill*, and **-olēre**, *grow* (the latter with Supine in **-itum**); also **ciēre**, *to stir up*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic **e** in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing **vī** to **uī**, and weaken it to **i** in the Supine System.

### Second Conjugation.

### Conjugation of **monēre**, *to remind*.

Prin. Parts: **mone-ō, monē-re, mon-uī, moni-tum.**

| ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—mone-**ō**, | mone-a-**m**, | mone-**o-r**, | mone-a-**r**, |
| monē-**s**, | mone-ā-**s**, | monē-**ris (-re)**, | mone-ā-**ris (-re)**, |
| mone-**t**, | mone-a-**t**, | monē-**tur**, | mone-ā-**tur**, |
| Pl.—monē-**mus**, | mone-ā-**mus**, | monē-**mur**, | mone-ā-**mur**, |
| monē-**tis**, | mone-ā-**tis**, | monē-**minī**, | mone-ā-**minī**, |
| mone-**nt**. | mone-a-**nt**. | mone-**ntur**. | mone-a-**ntur**. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—monē-**ba-m**, | monē-**re-m**, | monē-**ba-r**, | monē-**re-r**, |
| monē-**bā-s**, | monē-**rē-s**, | monē-**bā-ris (-re)**, | monē-**rē-ris (-re** . |
| monē-**ba-t**, | monē-**re-t**, | monē-**bā-tur**, | monē-**rē-tur**, |
| Pl.—monē-**bā-mus**, | monē-**rē-mus**, | monē-**bā-mur**, | monē-**rē-mur**, |
| monē-**bā-tis**, | monē-**rē-tis**, | monē-**bā-minī**, | monē-**rē-minī**, |
| monē-**ba-nt**. | monē-**re-nt**. | monē-**ba-ntur**. | monē-**re-ntur**. |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—monē-**b-ō**, | | monē-**bo-r**, |
| monē-**bi-s**, | | monē-**be-ris (-re)**, |
| monē-**bi-t**, | | monē-**bi-tur**, |
| Pl.—monē-**bi-mus**, | | monē-**bi-mur**, |
| monē-**bi-tis**, | | monē-**bi-minī**, |
| monē-**bu-nt**. | | monē-**bu-ntur**. |

PERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—mon-u-**ī**, | mon-u-**eri-m**, | moni-tu-s **sum**, | moni-t-us **sim**, |
| mon-u-**istī**, | mon-u-**erĭ-s**, | **es**, | **sīs**, |
| mon-u-**it**, | mon-u-**eri-t**, | **est**, | **sit**, |
| Pl.—mon-u-**imus**, | mon-u-**erĭ-mus**, | moni-t-ī **sumus**, | moni-t-ī **sīmus**, |
| mon-u-**istis**, | mon-u-**erĭ-tis**, | **estis**, | **sītis**, |
| mon-u-**ērunt (-ēre)**, | mon-u-**eri-nt**. | **sunt**. | **sint**. |

## Second Conjugation.

| ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—mon-u-era-m, | mon-u-isse-m, | moni-t-us eram, | moni-t-us essem, |
| mon-u-erā-s, | mon-u-issē-s, | erās, | essēs, |
| mon-u-era-t, | mon-u-isse-t, | erat, | esset, |
| Pl.—mon-u-erā-mus, | mon-u-issē-mus, | moni-t-ī erāmus, | moni-t-ī essēmus, |
| mon-u-erā-tis, | mon-u-issē-tis, | erātis, | essētis, |
| mon-u-era-nt. | mon-u-isse-nt. | erant. | essent. |

### FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—mon-u-er-ō, | | moni-t-us erō, |
| mon-u-erĭ-s, | | eris, |
| mon-u-eri-t, | | erit, |
| Pl.—mon-u-erĭ-mus, | | moni-t-ī erimus, |
| mon-u-erĭ-tis, | | eritis, |
| mon-u-eri-nt. | | erunt. |

### IMPERATIVE.

| | PRESENT. | FUTURE. | PRESENT. | FUTURE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | —— | —— | —— | —— |
| | monē, | monē-tō, | monē-re, | monē-tor, |
| | —— | monē-tō, | —— | monē-tor, |
| Pl. | —— | —— | —— | —— |
| | monē-te, | monē-tōte, | monē-minī, | —— |
| | —— | mone-ntō. | —— | mone-ntor. |

### INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | monē-re. | Pres. | monē-rī. |
| Perf. | mon-u-isse. | Perf. | moni-t-um, -am, -um esse. |
| Fut. | moni-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]. | Fut. | moni-t-um īrī. |
| | | Fut. Pf. | moni-t-um, -am, -um fore. |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. | PARTICIPLES. |
|---|---|---|
| N. [monē-re]. | | Pres. N. monē-n-s; G. mone-nt-is. |
| G. mone-nd-ī. | | Fut. moni-tūr-us, -a, -um. |
| D. mone-nd-ō. | | Perf. moni-t-us, -a, -um. |
| Ac. [monē-re] | Ac. moni-tum. | |
| (ad) mone-nd-um. | | GERUNDIVE. |
| Ab. mone-nd-ō. | Ab. moni-tū. | mone-nd-us, -a, -um. |

**125.**                    Third Conjugation.

## Conjugation of **emere**, *to buy.*

Prin. Parts : **em-ō, eme-re, ēm-ī, ēm(p)-tum.**

|  | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

### Present.

| | INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—em-**ō,** | ema-**m,** | em-**o-r,** | ema-**r,** | |
| emi-**s,** | emā-**s,** | eme-**ris (-re),** | emā-**ris (-re),** | |
| emi-**t,** | ema-**t,** | emi-**tur,** | emā-**tur,** | |
| Pl.—emi-**mus,** | emā-**mus,** | emi-**mur,** | emā-**mur,** | |
| emi-**tis,** | emā-**tis,** | emi-**minī,** | emā-**minī,** | |
| emu-**nt.** | ema-**nt.** | emu-**ntur.** | ema-**ntur.** | |

### Imperfect.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—emē-**ba-m,** | eme-**re-m,** | emē-**ba-r,** | eme-**re-r,** | |
| emē-**bā-s,** | eme-**rē-s,** | emē-**bā-ris (-re),** | eme-**rē-ris (-re),** | |
| emē-**ba-t,** | eme-**re-t,** | emē-**bā-tur,** | eme-**rē-tur,** | |
| Pl.—emē-**bā-mus,** | eme-**rē-mus,** | emē-**bā-mur,** | eme-**rē-mur,** | |
| emē-**bā-tis,** | eme-**rē-tis,** | emē-**bā-minī,** | eme-**rē-minī,** | |
| emē-**ba-nt.** | eme-**re-nt.** | emē-**ba-ntur.** | eme-**re-ntur.** | |

### Future.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.—ema-**m,** | ema-**r,** | |
| emē-**s,** | emē-**ris (-re),** | |
| eme-**t,** | emē-**tur,** | |
| Pl.—emē-**mus,** | emē-**mur,** | |
| emē-**tis,** | emē-**minī,** | |
| eme-**nt.** | eme-**ntur.** | |

### Perfect.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—ēm-**ī,** | ēm-**eri-m,** | ēmp-t-us | sum, | ēmp-t-us | sim, | |
| ēm-**istī,** | ēm-**erĭ-s,** | | es, | | sīs, | |
| ēm-**it,** | ēm-**eri-t,** | | est, | | sit, | |
| Pl.—ēm-**imus,** | ēm-**erĭ-mus,** | ēmp-t-ī | sumus, | ēmp-t-ī | sīmus, | |
| ēm-**istis,** | ēm-**erĭ-tis,** | | estis, | | sītis, | |
| ēm-**ērunt (-ēre).** | ēm-**eri-nt.** | | sunt. | | sint. | |

## Third Conjugation.

| ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | | SUBJV. |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—ēm-era-m, | ēm-isse-m, | ēmp-t-us eram, | | ēmp-t-us essem, |
| ēm-erā-s, | ēm-issē-s, | | erās, | essēs, |
| ēm-era-t, | ēm-isse-t, | | erat, | esset, |
| Pl.—ēm-erā-mus, | ēm-issē-mus, | ēmp-t-ī erāmus, | | ēmp-t-ī essēmus, |
| ēm-erā-tis, | ēm-issē-tis, | | erātis, | essētis, |
| ēm-era-nt. | ēm-isse-nt. | | erant. | essent. |

### FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.—ēm-er-ō, | | ēmp-t-us erō, | |
| ēm-erĭs, | | | eris, |
| ēm-eri-t, | | | erit, |
| Pl.—ēm-erĭ-mus, | | ēmp-t-ī erimus, | |
| ēm-erĭ-tis, | | | eritis, |
| ēm-eri-nt. | | | erunt. |

### IMPERATIVE.

| PRESENT. | FUTURE. | PRESENT. | FUTURE. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. —— | —— | —— | —— |
| eme, | emi-tō, | eme-re, | emi-tor, |
| —— | emi-tō, | —— | emi-tor, |
| Pl. —— | —— | —— | —— |
| emi-te, | emi-tōte, | emi-minī, | —— |
| —— | emu-ntō. | —— | emu-ntor. |

### INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. eme-re. | | Pres. | em-ī. |
| Perf. ēm-isse. | | Perf. | ēmp-t-um, -am, -um esse. |
| Fut. ēmp-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]. | | Fut. | ēmp-tum īrī. |
| | | Fut. Pf. | ēmp-t-um, -am, -um fore. |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. | PARTICIPLES. |
|---|---|---|
| N. [eme-re]. | | Pres. N. emē-n-s ; G. eme-nt-is. |
| G. em-e-nd-ī. | | Fut. ēmp-tūr-us, -a, -um. |
| D. em-e-nd-ō. | | Perf. ēmp-t-us, -a, -um. |
| Ac. [em-e-re] | Ac. ēmp-tum. | |
| (ad) em-e-ndum. | | GERUNDIVE. |
| Ab. em-e-nd-ō. | Ab. ēmp-tū. | em-e-nd-us, -a, -um. |

**126.** Many verbs of the third conjugation with Pres. Indic. in **iō**, change **i** to **e** before **r** and drop it when it would come before **ĕ** or **i** in all tenses of the Present System except the Future, Participle, and Gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of **eme-re**.

These verbs are **capiō, cupiō, faciō, fodiō, fugiō, iaciō, pariō, quatiō, rapiō, sapiō,** and their compounds ; also compounds of **-liciō, -spiciō,** and the deponents **gradior** and its compounds, **morior** and its compounds, **patior** and its compounds.

<div align="center">

SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF **cape-re,** *to take.*

PRIN. PARTS : **capi-ō, cape-re, cēp-i, cap-tum.**

</div>

|  | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

<div align="center">PRESENT.</div>

| | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Sg.—capi-ō, | capi-a-m, | capi-o-r, | capi-a-r, |
| capi-s, | capi-ā-s, | cape-ris (-re), | capi-ā-ris (-re), |
| capi-t, | capi-a-t, | capi-tur, | capi-ā-tur, |
| Pl.—capi-mus, | capi-ā-mus, | capi-mur, | capi-ā-mur, |
| capi-tis, | capi-ā-tis, | capi-minī, | capi-ā-minī, |
| capi-u-nt, | capi-a-nt. | capi-u-ntur. | capi-a-ntur. |

<div align="center">IMPERFECT.</div>

| | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Sg.—capi-ē-ba-m, | cape-re-m, | capi-ē-ba-r, | cape-re-r, |
| *etc.* | *etc.* | *etc.* | *etc.* |

<div align="center">FUTURE.</div>

| | |
| --- | --- |
| Sg.—capi-a-m, | capi-a-r, |
| capi-ē-s, | capi-ē-ris (-re), |
| *etc.* | *etc.* |

<div align="center">IMPERATIVE.</div>

| PRES. | FUT. | PRES. | FUT. |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Sg.—cape, | cap-i-tō, | cape-re, | capi-tor, |
| | cap-i-tō, | | capi-tor, |
| capi-te. | capi-tōte, | capi-minī. | |
| | capi-u-ntō. | | capi-u-ntor, |

<div align="center">INFINITIVE.</div>

| PRES. cape-re, | cap-ī. |
| --- | --- |

| PARTICIPLE. | GERUND. | GERUNDIVE. |
| --- | --- | --- |
| PRES. capi-ē-n-s. | G. capi-e-nd-ī. | capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um. |

**127.** ## Fourth Conjugation.

## CONJUGATION OF **audīre,** *to hear.*

PRIN. PARTS : **audi-ō, audī-re, audī-vī, audī-tum.**

| ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SG.—audi-ō, | audi-a-m, | audi-o-r, | audi-a-r, |
| audī-s, | audi-ā-s, | audī-ris (-re), | audi-ā-ris (-re), |
| audi-t, | audi-a-t, | audī-tur, | audi-ā-tur, |
| PL.—audī-mus, | audi-ā-mus, | audī-mur, | audi-ā-mur, |
| audī-tis, | audi-ā-tis, | audī-minī, | audi-ā-minī, |
| audi-u-nt. | audi-a-nt. | audi-u-ntur. | audi-a-ntur. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SG.—audi-ē-ba-m, | audī-re-m, | audi-ē-ba-r, | audī-re-r, |
| audi-ē-bā-s, | audī-rē-s, | audi-ē-bā-ris(-re), | audī-rē-ris (-re), |
| audi-ē-ba-t, | audī-re-t, | audi-ē-bā-tur, | audī-rē-tur, |
| PL.—audi-ē-bā-mus, | audī-rē-mus, | audi-ē-bā-mur, | audī-rē-mur, |
| audi-ē-bā-tis, | audī-rē-tis, | audi-ē-bā-minī, | audī-rē-minī, |
| audi-ē-ba-nt. | audī-re-nt. | audi-ē-ba-ntur. | audī-re-ntur. |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SG.—audi-a-m, | | audi-a-r, |
| audi-ē-s, | | audi-ē-ris (-re), |
| audi-e-t, | | audi-ē-tur, |
| PL.—audi-ē-mus, | | audi-ē-mur, |
| audi-ē-tis, | | audi-ē-minī, |
| audi-e-nt. | | audi-e-ntur. |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SG.—audī-v-ī, | audī-v-eri-m, | audī-t-us sum, | audī-t-us sim, |
| audī-v-istī, | audī-v-erĭ-s, | es, | sīs, |
| audī-v-it, | audī-v-eri-t, | est, | sit, |
| PL.—audī-v-imus, | audī-v-erĭ-mus, | audī-t-ī sumus, | audī-t-ī sīmus, |
| audī-v-istis, | audī-v-erĭ-tis, | estis, | sitis, |
| audī-v-ērunt (-ēre). | audī-v-eri-nt. | sunt. | sint. |

## Fourth Conjugation.

|                | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |
|                | INDIC. | SUBJV. | INDIC. | SUBJV. |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | ACTIVE INDIC. | ACTIVE SUBJV. | PASSIVE INDIC. | PASSIVE SUBJV. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg.— | audī-v-era-m, | audī-v-isse-m, | audī-t-us eram, | audī-t-us essem, |
| | audī-v-erā-s, | audī-v-issē-s, | erās, | essēs, |
| | audī-v-era-t, | audī-v-isse-t, | erat, | esset, |
| Pl.— | audī-v-erā-mus, | audī-v-issē-mus, | audī-t-ī erāmus, | audī-t-ī essēmus |
| | audī-v-erā-tis, | audī-v-issē-tis, | erātis, | essētis, |
| | audī-v-era-nt. | audī-v-isse-nt. | erant. | essent. |

### FUTURE PERFECT.

| | ACTIVE INDIC. | PASSIVE INDIC. |
|---|---|---|
| Sg.— | audī-v-er-ō, | audī-t-us erō, |
| | audī-v-erĭ-s, | eris, |
| | audī-v-eri-t, | erit, |
| Pl.— | audī-v-erĭ-mus, | audī-t-ī erimus, |
| | audī-v-erĭ-tis, | eritis, |
| | audī-v-eri-nt. | erunt. |

### IMPERATIVE.

| | PRESENT. | FUTURE. | PRESENT. | FUTURE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | —— | —— | —— | —— |
| | audī, | audī-tō, | audī-re, | audī-tor, |
| | —— | audī-tō, | —— | audī-tor, |
| Pl. | —— | —— | —— | —— |
| | audī-te, | audī-tōte, | audī-minī. | —— |
| | —— | audi-u-ntō. | —— | audi-u-ntor. |

### INFINITIVE.

| | ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | audī-re. | | Pres. | audī-rī. |
| Perf. | audī-v-isse. | | Perf. | audī-t-um, -am, -um esse. |
| Fut. | audī-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]. | | Fut. | audī-tum īrī. |
| | | | Fut. Pf. | audī-t-um, -am, -um fore. |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. | PARTICIPLES. |
|---|---|---|
| N. [audī-re]. | | Pres. N. audi-ē-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is. |
| G. audi-e-nd-ī. | | Fut. audī-tūr-us, -a, -um. |
| D. audi-e-nd-ō. | | Perf. audī-t-us, -a, -um. |
| Ac. [audī-re] | Ac. audī-tum. | |
| (ad) audi-e-nd-um. | | GERUNDIVE. |
| Ab. audi-e-ndō. | Ab. audī-tū. | audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um. |

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**128.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

### I. First Conjugation.

#### CONJUGATION OF **hortārī**, *to exhort.*

PRIN. PARTS : **hort-or, hortā-rī, hortā-tus sum.**

INDICATIVE.              SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

| *Exhort.* | *Be exhorting, may exhort.* |
|---|---|
| SG.—hort-**o-r**, | horte-**r**, |
| hortā-**ris** (**-re**), | hortē-**ris** (**-re**), |
| hortā-**tur**, | hortē-**tur**, |
| PL.—hortā-**mur**, | hortē-**mur**, |
| hortā-**minī**, | hortē-**minī**, |
| horta-**ntur**. | horte-**ntur**. |

IMPERFECT.

| *Was exhorting.* | *Were exhorting, might exhort.* |
|---|---|
| SG.—hortā-**ba-r**, | hortā-**re-r**, |
| hortā-**bā-ris** (**-re**), | hortā-**rē-ris** (**-re**), |
| hortā-**bā-tur**, | hortā-**rē-tur**, |
| PL.—hortā-**bā-mur**, | hortā-**rē-mur**, |
| hortā-**bā-minī**, | hortā-**rē-minī**, |
| hortā-**ba-ntur**. | hortā-**re-ntur**. |

FUTURE.

*Shall exhort.*
SG.—hortā-**bo-r**,
hortā-**be-ris** (**-re**),
hortā-**bi-tur**,

PL.—hortā-**bi-mur**,
hortā-**bi-minī**,
hortā-**bu-ntur**.

5

PERFECT.

*Have exhorted, exhorted.*     *Have, may have, exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum,     hortā-t-us, -a, -um sim,
                   es,                                   sīs,
                   est,                                   sit,

Pl.—hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a     sumus,     hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a     sīmus,
                      estis,                              sītis,
                      sunt.                              sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*Had exhorted.*     *Had, might have, exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram,     hortā-t-us, -a, -um essem,
                   erās,                                   essēs,
                   erat,                                   esset,

Pl.—hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a     erāmus,     hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a     essēmus,
                      erātis,                              essētis,
                      erant.                              essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have exhorted.*

Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um erō,
                   eris,
                   erit,

Pl.—hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a     erimus,
                      eritis,
                      erunt.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.                                   FUTURE.

Sg.    ———                                 ———

    hortā-**re**, *exhort thou.*          hortā-**tor**, *thou shalt exhort.*
    ———                                hortā-**tor**, *he shall exhort.*

Pl.    ———                                   ———

    hortā-**minī**, *exhort ye.*
    ———                                   horta-**ntor**, *they shall exhort.*

INFINITIVE.                            PARTICIPLES.

PRES. hortā-**rī**, *to exhort.*          PRES. hortā-**n-s**, *exhorting.*

FUT. hortā-**tūr-um**, -am, -um [**esse**],     FUT. hortā-**tūr-us**, -a, -um, *about*
      *to be about to exhort.*                            *to exhort.*

PERF. hortā-**t-um**, -am, -um esse, *to*     PERF. hortā-**t-us**, -a, -um, *having*
      *have exhorted.*                                 *exhorted.*

F. P. hortā-**t-um**, -am, -um **fore**.             GERUNDIVE.

SUPINE.                  horta-**nd-us**, -a, -um, [*one*] *to be*

Ac. hortā-**tum**, *to exhort, for ex-*        *exhorted.*
      *horting.*                                  GERUND.

Ab. hortā-**tū**, *to exhort, in the ex-*    G. horta-**nd-ī**, *of exhorting.*
      *horting.*

## 2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

SYNOPSIS OF **vererī**, *to fear ;* **loquī**, *to speak ;* **mentīrī**, *to lie.*

PRIN. PARTS: **vere-or, verē-rī, veri-tus sum ; loqu-or, loqu-ī, locū-tus sum ; mentī-or, mentī-rī, mentī-tus sum.**

### INDICATIVE.

|          | II.                        | III.                           | IV.                        |
|----------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| PRES.    | vere-**o-r,**              | loqu-**o-r,**                  | menti-**o-r,**             |
|          | verē-**ris** (-**re**), *etc.,* | loque-**ris** (-**re**), *etc.,* | mentī-**ris** (-**re**), *etc.,* |
| IMPERF.  | verē-**ba-r,**             | loquē-**ba-r,**                | mentī-ē-**ba-r,**          |
| FUT.     | verē-**bo-r,**             | loqua-**r,**                   | mentī-a-**r,**             |
| PERF.    | veri-**t-us sum,**         | locū-**t-us sum,**             | mentī-**t-us sum,**        |
| PLUPF.   | veri-**t-us eram,**        | locū-**t-us eram,**            | mentī-**t-us eram,**       |
| FUT. PF. | veri-**t-us erō.**         | locū-**t-us erō.**             | mentī-**t-us erō.**        |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

|         | II.                             | III.                               | IV.                              |
|---------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| PRES.   | vere-**a-r,**                   | loqua-**r,**                       | menti-**a-r,**                   |
|         | vere-ā-**ris**(-**re**), *etc.,* | loquā-**ris** (-**re**), *etc.,*    | mentī-ā-**ris**(-**re**),*etc.,* |
| IMPERF. | verē-**re-r,**                  | loque-**re-r,**                    | mentī-**re-r,**                  |
| PERF.   | veri-**t-us sim,**              | locū-**t-us sim,**                 | mentī-**t-us sim,**              |
| PLUPF.  | veri-**t-us essem.**            | locū-**t-us essem.**               | mentī-**t-us essem.**            |

### IMPERATIVE.

|       | II.          | III.          | IV.           |
|-------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| PRES. | verē-**re,** | loque-**re,** | mentī-**re,** |
| FUT.  | verē-**tor.**| loquī-**tor.**| mentī-**tor.**|

### INFINITIVE.

|          | II.                       | III.                          | IV.                          |
|----------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| PRES.    | verē-**rī,**              | loqu-**ī,**                   | mentī-**rī,**                |
| FUT.     | veri-**tūr-um** [**esse**],| locū-**tūr-um** [**esse**],    | mentī-**tūr-um**[**esse**],  |
| PERF.    | veri-**t-um esse,**       | locū-**t-um esse,**           | mentī-**t-um esse,**         |
| FUT. PF. | veri-**t-um fore.**       | locū-**t-um fore.**           | mentī-**t-um fore.**         |

### PARTICIPLES.

|       | II.                | III.              | IV.                 |
|-------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. | verē-**n-s,**      | loquē-**n-s,**    | menti-ē-**n-s,**    |
| FUT.  | veri-**tūr-us,**   | locū-**tūr-us,**  | mentī-**tūr-us,**   |
| PERF. | veri-**t-us.**     | locū-**t-us.**    | mentī-**t-us.**     |

|            | II.                       | III.              | IV.                 |
|------------|---------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| GERUND.    | vere-**nd-ī,** *etc.,*    | loque-**nd-ī,**   | menti-e-**nd-ī,**   |
| GERUNDIVE. | vere-**nd-us,**           | loque-**nd-us,**  | menti-e-**nd-us,**  |
| SUPINE.    | veri-**tum,**             | locū-**tum,**     | mentī-**tum,**      |
|            | veri-**tū.**              | locū-**tū.**      | mentī-**tū.**       |

## Periphrastic Conjugation.

**129.** The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle Active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb **sum**.

### ACTIVE.

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | amā-tūr-us (-a, -um) **sum**, *Am about to love.* | amā-tūr-us (-a, -um) **sim**, *Be about to love.* |
| IMPF. | amā-tūr-us **eram**, *Was about to love.* | amā-tūr-us **essem**, *Were about to love.* |
| FUT. | amā-tūr-us **erō**, *Shall be about to love.* | |
| PERF. | amā-tūr-us **fuī**, *Have been, was, about to love.* | amā-tūr-us **fuerim**, *Have, may have, been about to love.* |
| PLUPF. | amā-tūr-us **fueram**, *Had been about to love.* | amā-tūr-us **fuissem**, *Had, might have, been about to love.* |
| FUT. PERF. | amā-tūr-us **fuerō**, *Shall have been about to love.* | |

INFINITIVE.   PRES.   amā-**tūr-um** (-am, -um) [**esse**], *To be about to love.*
              PERF.   amā-**tūr-um fuisse**, *To have been about to love.*

### PASSIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | ama-**nd-us** (-a, -um) **sum**, *Have to be loved.* | ama-**nd-us** (-a, -um) **sim**, *Have to be loved.* |
| IMPF. | ama-**nd-us eram**, *Had to be loved.* | ama-**nd-us essem, forem**, *Had to be loved.* |
| FUT. | ama-**nd-us erō**, *Shall have to be loved.* | |
| PERF. | ama-**nd-us fuī**, *Have had to be loved.* | ama-**nd-us fuerim**, *Have had to be loved.* |
| PLUPF. | ama-**nd-us fueram**, *Had had to be loved.* | ama-**nd-us fuissem**, *Should have had to be loved.* |

INFINITIVE.   PRES.   ama-**nd-um** (-am, -um) **esse**, *To have to be loved.*
              PERF.   ama-**nd-um fuisse**,              *To have had to be loved.*

**130.** 1. IMPERATIVE.—Four verbs, **dīcere, dūcere, facere, ferre** (171), form the Pr. Impv. active **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.**  But in early Latin **dīce, dūce, face** are not uncommon.  The compounds also have **dīce, dūce, face,** except the non-prepositional (173, R.) compounds of **faciō.  Scīre,** *to know,* lacks the Pr. Impv. **scī.**

2. The older ending of the GERUND and GERUNDIVE in the third and fourth conjugations was -**undus**; and -**endus** was found only after **u.** In classical times -**undus** is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations.  Later, -**endus** is the regular form.

**131.** 1. SYNCOPATED FORMS.—The Perfects in -**āvī,** -**ēvī,** -**īvī,** often drop the **v** before **s** or **r,** and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -**īvī,** which admit the contraction only before **s.**

These forms are called syncopated.  They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

<div align="center">PERFECT.</div>

|            |                        |                          |                        |
|------------|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| SING. 1.   | ——                     | ——                       | ——                     |
|        2.  | amāvistī, amāstī.       | dēlēvistī, dēlēstī.       | audīvistī, audīstī.    |
|        3.  | ——                     | ——                       | ——                     |
| PLUR. 1.   | ——                     | ——                       | ——                     |
|        2.  | amāvistis, amāstis.     | dēlēvistis, dēlēstis.     | audīvistis, audīstis.  |
|        3.  | amāvērunt, amārunt.     | dēlēvērunt, dēlērunt.     | audīvērunt, audiērunt. |
| SUBJV.     | amāverim, amārim,       | dēlēverim, dēlērim,       | audīverim, audierim,   |
|            | *etc.*                 | *etc.*                   | *etc.*                 |

<div align="center">PLUPERFECT.</div>

|        |                             |                             |                             |
|--------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| INDIC. | amāveram, amāram,            | dēlēveram, dēlēram,          | audīveram, audieram,        |
|        | *etc.*                      | *etc.*                      | *etc.*                      |
| SUBJV. | amāvissem, amāssem,          | dēlēvissem, dēlēssem,        | audīvissem, audīssem,       |
|        | *etc.*                      | *etc.*                      | *etc.*                      |

<div align="center">FUTURE PERFECT.</div>

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| amāverō, amārō, | dēlēverō, dēlērō, | audīverō, audierō, |
| *etc.* | *etc.* | *etc.* |

<div align="center">INFINITIVE PERFECT.</div>

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| amāvisse, amāsse. | dēlēvisse, dēlēsse. | audīvisse, audīsse. |

2. In the first and third persons Sing. and in the first person Pl. of the Perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in Perfects in -**īvī,** and there is no contraction.  It is most common in the Perfects of **īre** (169) and **petere.**  The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of **īre** (169), which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. **nōvī,** *I know,* and **mōvī,** *I have moved,* are also contracted, in their compounds especially.

SING.—2. **nōstī.**  PLUR.—2. **nōstis.**  3. **nōrunt.**  SUBJV. **nōrim,** *etc.*
PLUPF. **nōram,** *etc.*  SUBJV. **nōssem,** *etc.*  INF. **nōsse.**
But the Fut. Perf. **nōrō** is found only in compounds.
Similar contractions are seen in **mōvī,** but not so often.

## THE STEM.

**132.** Most of the forms of the verbs **sum,** *I am,* **edō,** *I eat,* **eō,** *I go,* **ferō,** *I bear,* **volō,** *I wish* (perhaps **dō,** *I give*), and their compounds come directly from the root.

The other verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the *thematic* vowel, and these verbs are called Thematic verbs (120, 1).

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

### I. THE PRESENT STEM.

**133.** I. *The Stem* or *Thematic class:* This comprises

(*a*) Verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations : stems in **ā, ē,** and **ī.**

(*b*) Most verbs of the third conjugation : stems in **e,** either unlengthened or lengthened ; **leg-ō** (root LEG-). **lege-re,** *to read ;* **dūc-ō** (DUC-), **dūce-re,** *to lead.*

II. *The Reduplicated class :* The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with **i** in the reduplicated syllable :

**gen-, gī-gnō** (for GI-GEN-ō), **gī-gne-re,** *to beget ;* **sta-, si-stō, si-ste-re,** *to set, stand.* Compare **stāre,** *to stand.*

III. *The* **T** *class :* The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by **t : flectō** (FLEC-), **flecte-re,** *to bend.*

IV. *The Nasal class :* In this class the root is strengthened by **n,** the nasal being inserted

A. In vowel-stems : **sinō** (SI-), **sine-re,** *to let ;* **linō** (LI-), **line-re,** *to besmear.*

B. After the characteristic liquid : **cernō** (CER-), **cerne-re,** *to sift, separate ;* **temnō** (TEM-), **temne-re,** *to scorn ;* **pellō** (for PEL-NŌ, by assimilation), **pelle-re,** *to drive.*

C. Before the characteristic mute : **vincō** (VIC-), **vince-re,** *to conquer ;* **frangō** (FRAG-), **frange-re,** *to break ;* **fundō** (FUD-), **funde-re,** *to pour.*

Before a p-mute n becomes **m : rumpō** (RUP-), **rumpe-re,** *to rend ;* **cumbō** (CUB-), **cumbe-re,** *to lie down.*

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by **-nu;** as **sternuō** (STER-), **sternue-re,** *to sneeze.*

V. *The Inchoative class:* The Present stem has the suffix **-sc**; as, **īrā-scor**, *I am in a rage;* **crē-scō**, *I grow;* **pro-ficī-scor**, *I set out;* **nō-scō**, *I become acquainted:* **pō-scō** (= **porc-scō**), *I demand;* **dī-scō** (= **di-dc-scō**), *I learn.*

VI. *The* **I** *class:* The root is strengthened by **i** (**e**) in some forms of the Present System: **capi-ō** (CAP-), **cape-re**, *to take.*

VII. *The Mixed class:* Some verbs that originally belong to the **i**-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the Stem class: as **veniō** (VEN-), **venī-re**, *to come;* **videō** (VID-), **vidē-re**, *to see;* **sonō** (SON-), **sonā-re**, *to sound.*

## II. THE PERFECT STEM.

**134.** I. *Perfect in* **-vī** (or **-uī**): These are formed by the addition (*a*) Of **-vī** to the Present stem. To this class belong the Perfects of the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second conjugation mentioned in 124: **amā-re, amā-vī**; **audī-re, audī-vī**; **dēlē-re, dēlē-vī**.

(*b*) Of **-uī** to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second conjugation; **monē-re, mon-uī**.

II. *Perfect in* **-sī**: These are formed by the addition of **-sī** to the root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or by position. This class comprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute: **rēpō**, *I creep,* **rēp-sī**; **scrībō**, *I write,* **scrīp-sī**; **dīcō**, *I say,* **dīxī** (= **dīc-sī**); **carpō**, *I pluck,* **carp-sī**; **rādo**, *I scrape,* **rāsī** (= **rād-sī**).

In three verbs the stem-characteristic is **-m**: **preme-re**, *to press;* **sūme-re**, *to take;* **con-tem(n)e-re**, *to scorn;* and in a few others it is **-s**, as **ūr-ō**, *I burn,* **ūs-sī**; **haereō**, *I stick,* **haesī** (= **haes-sī**).

III. *Reduplicated Perfects:* These are formed by prefixing to the unstrengthened root its first consonant (or group of consonants), together with the following vowel (but **e** instead of **a** or **ae**), and adding the termination **-ī**: **currō**, *I run,* **cu-curr-ī**; **dīscō**, *I learn,* **di-dicī**; **spondeō**, *I pledge,* **spo-(s)pondī**; **tangō**, *I touch,* **te-ti-gī**; **tundō**, *I strike,* **tu-tud-ī**.

In composition the reduplication is in many cases dropped; so always in compounds of **cade-re**, *to fall;* **caede-re**, *to fell;* **cane-re**, *to sing;* **falle-re**, *to deceive;* **parce-re**, *to spare;* **pare-re**, *to bear;* **pende-re**, *to weigh;* **tange-re**, *to touch;* **tende-re**, *to stretch;* **tunde-re**, *to strike,* etc.

**Dīsc-ere**, *to learn,* always retains the reduplication in compounds, and so **pōsce-re**, *to demand,* and **admordēre**, *to bite.*

Of compounds of **curre-re**, *to run,* **succurrere** always drops the reduplication, **praecurrere** always retains it; the others vary.

Of compounds of **dare, abscondere** usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the **a**, and all quadrisyllabic compounds, retain it.   Compounds of **sistere**, *to set*, and **stāre**, *to stand*, retain it.

REMARK.—A few verbs beginning with vowels form the Perfect by prefixing **e**, which then contracts with the initial vowel : **ago**, *I act*, **ēgī** (= **e-ag-ī**) ; **emō**, *I buy*, **ēmī** (= **e-em-ī**).

IV. *Perfect in* **ī**. Verbs of the third conjugation, with a *short* stem-syllable, take **ī** in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing **ă** into **ē** : **legō**, *I read*, **lēg-ī** ; **vide-ō**, *I see*, **vīd-ī** ; **fodi-ō**, *I stab*, **fōd-ī** ; **fugi-ō**, *I flee*, **fūg-ī** ; **frang-ō**, *I break*, **frēg-ī**.

V. Denominative verbs in **-uō**, like **acuō**, *I sharpen* ; **metuō**, *I fear* ; also **sternuō**, *I sneeze*, form the Perfect in **-u-ī** after the analogy of primary verbs.

### III. THE SUPINE STEM.

**135.** I. *Supine in* **-tum**, *Perfect Passive Participle in* **-tus** : The stems are formed by the addition of **-tu** or **-to**

(*a*) To the Present stem.   Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124 : **amā-tum, dēlē-tum, audī-tum.**

Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in **-uī**, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel **e** to **i**, and adding **-tu, -to**, except **cēnsē-re**, *to deem*, **docē-re**, *to teach*, **miscē-re**, *to mix*, **tenē-re**, *to hold*, **torrē-re**, *to scorch*, which omit the thematic vowel, and form **cēnsum, doctum, mīxtum, (tentum), tōstum.**

(*b*) To the unstrengthened stem.   Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations : **cap-tum (capiō**, *I take*), **rēp-tum (rēpō**, *I creep*), **dic-tum (dīcō**, *I say*), **fac-tum (faciō**, *I do*).

In combinations of **-t-** with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually **ss** after a short vowel and **s** after a long vowel : **scissum (scindō**, *I cleave*), **caesum (caedō**, *I fell*).   On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in **-sī**, we find **-s-** also in some other stems : so **fīg-ō**, *I fix*, **fīx-um** ; **parcō**, *I spare*, **par-sum**, etc.

II. *Future Active Participle in* **-tūrus**.—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.

1. In some stems ending in **-u** a thematic vowel **i** is inserted ; as **arguitūrus (arguere**, *to prove*) ; **abnuitūrus (abnuere**, *to deny*) ; **ruitūrus (ruere**, *to rush*) ; **fruitūrus (fruī**, *to enjoy*).

2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect, as : **calitūrus (calēre**, *to be warm*) ; **dolitūrus (dolēre**, *to grieve*).

3. Irregular are : **āgnōtūrus, āgnitūrus** (āgnōscere, *to know well*) **;** **dīscitūrus** (dīscere, *to learn*) **;** hausūrus, haustūrus (haurīre, *to drain*) **;** **nīsūrus** (nītī, *to lean*) **;** moritūrus (morī, *to die*) **;** nōscitūrus (nōscere, *to know*) **;** oritūrus (orīrī, *to arise*) **;** paritūrus (parere, *to bear*).

## Change of Conjugation.

**136.** A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.

1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one of the other three :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| auge-ō, | augē-re, | aux-ī, | auc-tum, | *to increase.* |
| senti-ō, | sentī-re, | sēn-sī, | sēn-sum, | *to feel.* |
| saepi-ō, | saepī-re, | saep-sī, | saep-tum, | *to hedge about.* |
| veni-ō, | venī-re, | vēn-ī, | ven-tum, | *to come.* |
| vide-ō, | vidē-re, | vīd-ī, | vī-sum, | *to see.* |
| vinci-ō, | vincī-re, | vinx-ī, | vinc-tum, | *to bind.* |

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first, second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed according to the third, in consequence of strengthening :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ster-n-ō, | ster-ne-re, | strā-vī, | strā-tum, | *to strew.* |
| crē-sc-ō, | crē-sce-re, | crē-vī, | crē-tum, | *to grow.* |
| li-n-ō, | li-ne-re, | lē-vī (lī-vī), | li-tum, | *to smear.* |

3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a) the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| accumb-ō, | accumbe-re, | accub-uī, | accubi-tum, | *to recline.* |
| gīgn-ō, | gīgne-re, | gen-uī, | geni-tum, | *to beget.* |
| arcess-ō, | arcesse-re, | arcessī-vī, | arcessī-tum, | *to summon.* |
| cupi-ō, | cupe-re, | cupī-vī, | cupī-tum, | *to desire.* |

4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| crep-ō, I. | crepā-re, III. | crep-uī, II. | crepi-tum, II. | *to crackle.* |
| aperi-ō, IV. | aperī-re, | aper-uī, II. | aper-tum, II. | *to uncover.* |
| cie-ō, II. | ciē-re, | cī-vī, IV. | cī-tum, | *to stir up.* |

5. **dare**, *to give*, and **stāre**, *to stand*, pass over to the third conjugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| d-ō, | da-re, | ded-ī, | da-tum, | *to give.* |
| st-ō, | stā-re, | stet-ī, | (stā-tūr-us), | *to stand.* |

## LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

### First Conjugation.

TYPE: am-ŏ, amā-re, amā͵vī, amā-tum.

**137.**            Perfect: -uī; Supine: -(i)tum.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| crep-ŏ, | crepā-re, | crep-uī, | crepi-tum, | *to rattle.* |
| cub-ŏ, | cubā-re, | cub-uī, | cubi-tum, | *to lie.* |
| dom-ŏ, | domā-re, | dom-uī, | domi-tum, | *to tame.* |
| fric-ŏ, | fricā-re, | fric-uī, | fric-tum (-ā-tum), | *to rub.* |
| mic-ŏ, | micā-re, | mic-uī, | —— | *to quiver, flash.* |

But dī-micāre, *to fight* (*out*), is usually regular.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| nec-ŏ, | necā-re, | necā-vi (nec-uī rare), | necā-tum, | *to kill.* |
| -plic-ŏ, | -plicā-re, | -(plicā-vī), | -plici-tum, | *to fold.* |
| sec-ŏ, | secā-re, | sec-uī, | sec-tum, | *to cut.* |
| son-ŏ, | sonā-re, | son-uī, | soni-tum, | *to sound.* |

But regularly sonātūrus.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ton-ŏ, | tonā-re, | ton-uī, | —— | *to thunder.* |
| vet-ŏ, | vetā-re, | vet-uī, | veti-tum, | *to forbid.* |

**138.** Perfect: -ī *with reduplication;* Supine: -sum, -tum.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I. d-ŏ, | da-re, | ded-i, | da-tum, | *to give, put, do.* |

Everywhere ă, except in dās, *thou givest*, and dā, *give thou.*

1. Like dŏ, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as: circum-dŏ, *I surround;* satis-dŏ, *I give bail;* pessum-dŏ, *I ruin;* vēnum-dŏ, *I sell;* thus:
circum-d-ŏ, circum-da-re, circum-de-dī, circum-da-tum, *to surround.*

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ab-d-ŏ, | ab-de-re, | ab-did-I, | ab-di-tum, | *to put away.* |
| ad-d-ŏ, | ad-de-re, | ad-did-I, | ad-di-tum, | *to put to.* |
| con-d-ŏ, | con-de-re, | con-did-I, | con-di-tum, | *to put up (found).* |
| abs-con-dŏ, | -con-de-re, | -con-d-I, | -con-di-tum, | *to put far away.* |
| crē-d-ŏ, | crē-de-re, | crē-did-I, | crē-di-tum, | *to put faith.* |
| dē-d-ŏ, | dē-de-re, | dē-did-I, | dē-di-tum, | *to give up.* |
| ē-d-ŏ, | ē-de-re, | ē-did-I, | ē-di-tum, | *to put out.* |
| in-d-ŏ, | in-de-re, | in-did-I, | in-di-tum, | *to put in.* |
| per-d-ŏ, | per-de-re, | per-did-I, | per-di-tum, | *to fordo (ruin).* |
| prō-d-ŏ, | prō-de-re, | prō-did-I, | prō-di-tum, | *to betray.* |
| red-d-ŏ, | red-de-re, | red-did-I, | red-di-tum, | *to give back.* |
| trā-d-ŏ, | trā-de-re, | trā-did-I, | trā-di-tum, | *to give over.* |
| vēn-d-ŏ, | vēn-de-re, | vēn-did-I, | vēn-di-tum, | *to put up to sale.* |

2. **st-ŏ,**       **stā-re,**      **stet-ī, (stā-tū-rus),** *to stand.*

So the compounds :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ad-st-ŏ, | ad-stā-re, | ad-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand by.* |
| cŏn-st-ŏ, | cŏn-stā-re, | cŏn-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand fast.* |
| ĭn-st-ŏ, | ĭn-stā-re, | ĭn-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand upon.* |
| ob-st-ŏ, | ob-stā-re, | ob-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand out against.* |
| per-st-ŏ, | per-stā-re, | per-stit ī, | —— | *to stand firm.* |
| prae-st-ŏ, | prae-stā-re, | prae-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand ahead.* |
| re-st-ŏ, | re-stā-re, | re-stit-ī, | —— | *to stand over.* |
| dĭ-st-ŏ, | dĭ-stā-re, | —— | —— | *to stand apart.* |
| ex-st-ŏ, | ex-stā-re, | —— | —— | *to stand out.* |

All compounds of **stāre** with dissyllabic prepositions, have, however, -stetī in the Perfect, as : ante-stŏ, *I am superior ;* inter-stŏ, *I am between ;* super-stŏ, *I stand upon ;* thus :

     circum-st-ŏ, circum-stā-re, circum-stet-ī,    ——     *to stand round.*

### 139.      Perfect: -ī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| iuv-ŏ, | iuvā-re, | iūv-ī, | iū-tum (iuvātūrus), | *to help.* |
| ad-iuv-ŏ, | -iuvā-re, | -iūv-ī, | -iū-tum (-iū-tūrus), | *to stand by as aid.* |
| (lav-ŏ), | (lav-ere), | lāv-ī, | lau-tum (lŏ-tum), | *to wash.* |
| lav-ŏ, | lavā-re, | (lavā-vī), | lavā-tum, | *to wash.* |

## Second Conjugation.

| TYPES : | dēle-ŏ, | dēlē-re, | dēlē-vī, | dēlē-tum, see 124. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | mone-ŏ, | monē-re, | monu-ī, | moni-tum. |

### 140. Irregular and defective :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cie-ŏ (ci-ŏ), | ciē-re (cīre), | cī-vī, | cī-tum (ci-tum), | *to stir up.* |

In the compounds we find the Participles **concitus** or **concītus, percītus, excītus** or **excitus,** but **accītus.**

| sorbe-ŏ, | sorbē-re, | sorb-uī, | —— | *to sup up.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

### 141.      Perfect: -sī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| iube-ŏ, | iubē-re, | iūs-sī, | iūs-sum, | *to order.* |
| ārde-ŏ, | ārdē-re, | ār-sī, | ār-sum, | *to be on fire.* |
| rīde-ŏ, | rīdē-re, | rī-sī, | rī-sum, | *to laugh (at).* |
| haere-ŏ, | haerē-re, | hae-sī, | (hae-sum), | *to stick (to).* |
| mane-ŏ, | manē-re, | mān-sī, | mān-sum, | *to remain.* |
| suāde-ŏ, | suādē-re, | suā-sī, | suā-sum, | *to counsel.* |

With dental dropped before ending of Pf. and Supine.

| auge-ō, | augē-re, | auxī, | auc-tum, | to cause to wax. |
|---------|----------|-------|----------|------------------|
| frīge-ō, | frīgē-re, | (frīxī), | —— | to be chilled. |
| lūce-ō, | lūcē-re, | lūxī, | —— | to give light. |
| lūge-ō, | lūgē-re, | lūxī, | —— | to be in mourning. |
| alge-ō, | algē-re, | al-sī, | —— | to freeze. |
| fulge-ō, | fulgē-re, | ful-sī, | —— | to glow. |
| indulge-ō, | indulgē-re, | indul-sī, | (indul-tum), | to give way. |
| mulce-ō, | mulcē-re, | mul-sī, | mul-sum, | to stroke. |
| mulge-ō, | mulgē-re, | mul-sī, | mul-sum(ctum), | to milk. |
| terge-ō, | tergē-re, | ter-sī, | ter-sum, | to wipe. |
| torque-ō, | torquē-re, | tor-sī, | tor-tum, | to twist. |
| turge-ō, | turgē-re, | tur-sī, | —— | to swell. |
| urge-ō, | urgē-re, | ur-sī, | —— | to press. |

**142.**   Perfect: -ī *with reduplication ;* Supine: -sum.

| morde-ō, | mordē-re, | mo-mord-ī, | mor-sum, | to bite. |
|----------|-----------|------------|----------|----------|
| pende-ō, | pendē-re, | pe-pend-ī, | —— | to hang (intr.). |
| sponde-ō, | spondē-re, | spo-pond-ī, | spōn-sum, | to pledge oneself. |

Compounds omit the reduplication.

| tonde-ō, | tondē-re, | to-tond-ī, | tōn-sum, | to shear. |
|----------|-----------|------------|----------|-----------|

**143.**          Perfect: -ī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

| cave-ō, | cavē-re, | cāv-ī, | cau-tum, | to take heed. |
|---------|----------|--------|----------|---------------|
| fave-ō, | favē-re, | fāv-ī, | fau-tum, | to be well-disposed. |
| ferve-ō(ferv-ō), | fervē-re (ere), | ferv-ī (ferb-uī), | —— | to seethe. |
| fove-ō, | fovē-re, | fōv-ī, | fō-tum, | to keep warm. |
| move-ō, | movē-re, | mōv-ī, | mō-tum, | to move. |
| pave-ō, | pavē-re, | pāv-ī, | —— | to quake (with fear). |
| prande-ō, | prandē-re, | prand-ī, | prān-sum, | to breakfast. |
| sede-ō, | sedē-re, | sēd-ī, | ses-sum, | to sit. |
| strīde-ō (-dō), | strīdē-re(-e-re), | strīd-ī, | —— | to whistle, screech. |
| vove-ō, | vovē-re, | vōv-ī, | vō-tum, | to vow. |

The Present forms of the third conjugation also occur in the Augustan poets.

| vide-ō, | vidē-re, | vīd-ī, | vī-sum, | to see. |
|---------|----------|--------|---------|---------|

## Third  Conjugation.

FIRST TYPE : Perfect: -sī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

**144.** *The Stem class :*

| carp-ō, | carpe-re, | carp-sī, | carp-tum, | to pluck. |
|---------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| dē-cerp-ō, | -cerpe-re, | -cerp-sī, | -cerp-tum, | to pluck off. |
| nūb-ō, | nūbe-re, | nūp-sī, | nūp-tum, | to put on a veil (as a bride). |
| rēp-ō, | rēpe-re, | rēp-sī, | rēp-tum, | to creep. |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| scalp-ō, | scalpe-re, | scalp-sī, | scalp-tum, | *to scrape.* |
| scrīb-ō, | scrībe-re, | scrīp-sī, | scrīp-tum, | *to write.* |
| sculp-ō, | sculpe-re, | sculp-sī, | sculp-tum, | *to chisel.* |
| serp-ō, | serpe-re, | serp-sī, | serp-tum, | *to creep.* |
| prem-ō (-primō), | preme-re, | pres-sī, | pres-sum, | *to press.* |

Some compounds of **emo,** *I take, buy,* have Pf. in **-sī,** Sup. in **-tum,** before which a euphonic **p** develops :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cōm-ō, | cōme-re, | cōm-p-sī, | cōm-p-tum, | *to adorn.* |
| dēm-ō, | dēme-re, | dēm-p-sī, | dēm-p-tum, | *to take away.* |
| prōm-ō, | prōme-re, | prōm-p-sī, | prōm-p-tum, | *to take out.* |
| sūm-ō, | sūme-re, | sūm-p-sī, | sūm-p-tum, | *to take.* |

On **contemn-ō** see 146, *c.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| dīc-ō, | dīce-re, | dīxī (dīc-sī), | dic-tum, | *to say.* |

Impv. **dīc,** see 130, 1.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| dūc-ō, | dūce-re, | dūxī, | duc-tum, | *to lead.* |

Imperative **dūc,** see 130, 1.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| fīg-ō, | fīge-re, | fīxī, | fīxum, | *to fasten.* |
| -flīg-ō (con-, af-, in-), | -flīge-re, | -flīxī, | -flīc-tum, | *to strike.* |
| merg-ō, | merge-re, | mer-sī, | mer-sum, | *to plunge.* |
| sparg-ō, | sparge-re, | spar-sī, | spar-sum, | *to strew.* |
| cōn-sperg-ō, | -sperge-re, | -sper-sī, | -sper-sum, | *to besprinkle.* |
| coqu-ō, | coque-re, | coxī, | coc-tum, | *to cook.* |
| [-lig-ō (leg-), | -lige-re, | -lēxī, | -lēc-tum.] | |
| dī-lig-ō, | dī-lige-re, | dī-lēxī, | dīlēc-tum, | *to love.* |
| intel-legō (ligō), | intel-lege-re, | intel-lēxī, | intel-lēc-tum, | *to understand.* |
| neg-leg-ō (ligō), | neg-lege-re, | neg-lēxī, | neg-lēc-tum, | *to neglect.* |

Other compounds have **lēgī** in the Perfect.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| regō, | rege-re, | rēxī, | rēc-tum, | *to keep right.* |
| dī-rig-ō, | dī-rige-re, | dī-rēxī, | dī-rēc-tum, | *to guide.* |
| per-g-ō, | per-ge-re, | per-rēxī, | per-rēctum, | *to go on.* |
| su-rg-ō, | su-rge-re, | sur-rēxī, | sur-rēc-tum, | *to rise up.* |
| teg-ō, | tege-re, | tēxī, | tēc-tum, | *to cover.* |
| claud-ō, | claude-re, | clau-sī, | clau-sum, | *to shut.* |
| con-, ex-clūd-ō, | -clūde-re, | -clū-sī, | -clū-sum, | *to shut up, out.* |
| laed-ō, | laede-re, | lae-sī, | lae-sum, | *to harm.* |
| col-līd-ō, | -līde-re, | -lī-sī, | -lī-sum, | *to strike together.* |
| lūd-ō, | lūde-re, | lū-sī, | lū-sum, | *to play.* |
| plaud-ō (ap-plaud-ō), | plaude-re, | plau-sī, | plau-sum, | *to clap.* |
| ex-plōd-ō, | -plōde-re, | -plō-sī, | -plō-sum, | *to hoot off.* |
| rād-ō, | rāde-re, | rā-sī, | rā-sum, | *to scratch.* |
| trūd-ō, | trūde-re, | trū-sī, | trū-sum, | *to push.* |
| vād-ō (in-, ē-), | -vāde-re, | -vā-sī, | -vā-sum, | *to go.* |
| cēd-ō, | cēde-re, | cēs-sī, | cēs-sum, | *to give way.* |
| quati-ō, | quate-re, | (quas-sī), | quas-sum, | *to shake.* |
| con-cutiō (per-, ex-), | con-cute-re, | con-cus-sī, | con-cus-sum, | *to shatter.* |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| mitt-ō, | mitte-re, | mī-sī, | mis-sum, | *to send.* |
| dī-vid-ō, | dī-vide-re, | dī-vī-sī, | dī-vī-sum, | *to part.* |
| ūr-ō, | ūre-re, | ūs-sī, | ūs-tum, | *to burn.* |
| com-būr-ō, | com-būre-re, | com-būs-sī | com-būs-tum, | *to burn up.* |
| ger-ō, | gere-re, | ges-sī, | ges-tum, | *to carry.* |
| flu-ō (flugv-), | flue-re, | fluxī, | (flux-us), | *to flow.* |
| stru-ō (strugv-), | strue-re, | strūxī | strūc-tum, | *to build.* |
| trah-o (tragh-), | trahe-re, | trāxī, | trāc-tum, | *to drag.* |
| veh-ō (vegh), | vehe-re, | vexī, | vec-tum, | *to carry.* |
| vīv-ō (vigv), | vīve-re, | vīxī, | vīc-tum, | *to live.* |

### 145. *The T-class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| flect-ō, | flecte-re, | flexī, | flexum, | *to bend.* |
| nect-ō, | necte-re, | nexī (-nexuī), | nexum, | *to knot.* |
| pect-ō, | pecte-re, | pexī, | pexum, | *to comb.* |
| plect-ō, | plecte-re, | (plexī), | plexum, | *to plait.* |

### 146. *The Nasal class :*

(*a*) Supine without N :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| fing-ō, | finge-re, | finxī, | fic-tum, | *to form.* |
| ping-ō, | pinge-re, | pinxī, | pic-tum, | *to paint.* |
| string-ō, | stringe-re, | strinxī, | stric-tum, | *to draw tight.* |

(*b*) Supine with N :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ang-ō, | ange-re, | anxī, | —— | *to throttle, vex.* |
| cing-ō, | cinge-re, | cinxī, | cinc-tum, | *to gird.* |
| iung-ō, | iunge-re, | iūnxī, | iūnc-tum, | *to yoke, join.* |
| pang-ō, | pange-re, | panxī, | panc-tum, | *to drive in.* |

Perfect also **pēgī**, and Supine **pāctum**. Compare 150 and **pacīscor**, 165.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| plang-ō, | plange-re, | planxī, | planc-tum, | *to smite.* |
| -stingu-ō, | -stingue-re, | -stinxī, | -stinc-tum, | *to put out.* |

So the compounds **ex-, dīs-, re-**.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ting-ō (tingu-ō), | ting(u)e-re, | tinxī, | tinc-tum, | *to wet, dye.* |
| ung-ō (ungu-ō), | ung(u)e-re, | ūnxī, | ūnc-tum, | *to anoint.* |

(*c*) **tem-n-ō** (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic **p** :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| con-tem-n-ō, | -temne-re, | -tem-p-sī, | -tem-p-tum, | *to despise.* |

### 147. *The I-class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [-lici-ō (LAC), | -lice-re, | -lexī, | -lec-tum], | *to lure.* |
| pel-lici-ō, | pel-lice-re, | pel-lexī, | pel-lec-tum, | *to allure.* |

So **allicere, illicere**. But **ē-licere** has **-uī** regularly in classical times.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [-spici-ō (SPEC), | -spice-re, | -spexī, | -spec-tum], | *to peer.* |
| per-spici-ō, | per-spice-re, | per-spexī, | per-spec-tum, | *to see through.* |

So the compounds with **ad-, con-, dē-, in-**.

SECOND TYPE—**Perfect:** **-i** *with reduplication ;*  **Supine:** **-sum, -tum.**

**148**. *Stem class :*

Reduplication lost in the compounds :

| cad-ō, | cade-re, | ce-cid-ī, | cā-sum, | *to fall.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| oc-cid-ō, | oc-cide-re, | oc-cid-ī, | oc-cā-sum, | *to perish.* |

**re-cidere** sometimes forms **reccidī**, as well as **recidī**, in the Perfect.

| caed-ō, | caede-re, | ce-cīd-ī, | cae-sum, | *to fell.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| oc-cīd-ō, | oc-cīde-re, | oc-cīd-ī, | oc-cī-sum, | *to kill.* |

| can-ō, | cane-re, | ce-cin-ī, | (can-tum), | *to sing.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

Compounds form the Pf. in **-uī**. For (**cantum**), **cantātum** was used.

| curr-ō, | curre-re, | cu-curr-ī, | cur-sum, | *to run.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication ; see 134, III.

| parc-ō | parce-re, | pe-perc-ī (pars-ī), (par-sūrus), | | *to spare.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| com-parcō (-percō), | com-parce-re, | com-par-sī, | com-par-sum, | *to save.* |

**149**. *Reduplicated class :*

I. **sistō** (= **si-st-ō**), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand,* but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, *I stand.* Compare **stō,** *I stand,* and its compounds (138) :

| sist-ō, | siste-re, | (stit-ī), | sta-tum, | *to (cause to) stand.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

So the compounds :

| cōn-sist-ō, | cōn-siste-re, | cōn-stit-ī, | cōn-sti-tum, | *to come to a stand.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| dē-sist-ō (ab-), | dē-siste-re, | dē-stit-ī, | dē-sti-tum, | *to stand off.* |
| ex-sist-ō, | ex-siste-re, | ex-stit-ī, | ex-sti-tum, | *to stand up.* |
| ob-sist-ō, | ob-siste-re, | ob-stit-ī, | ob-sti-tum, | *to take a stand against.* |
| re-sist-ō, | re-siste-re, | re-stit-ī, | re-sti-tum, | *to withstand.* |
| ad-sist-ō, | ad-siste-re, | ad-stit-ī, | ——— | *to stand near.* |
| in-sist-ō, | in-siste-re, | in-stit-ī, | ——— | *to stand upon.* |
| circum-sist-ō, | circum-siste-re, | circum-stet-ī, | ——— | *to take a stand round.* |

2. **bi-bō,** **bi-be-re,** **bi-bī,** (**bi-bi-tus**), *to drink.*

No Supine.  The Pf. Part. is late.

**150**. *Nasal class :*

| fall-ō, | falle-re, | fe-fell-ī, | fal-sum, | *to cheat.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

The compound **refellō** has the Perfect **refellī**, and lacks Supine.

| pell-ō, | pelle-re, | pe-pul-ī, | pul-sum, | *to push, drive back.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

**repellō** loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. **reppulī**.

| toll-ō, | tolle-re, | ——— | ——— | *to lift up.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|

Pf. and Sup. are formed **sus-tulī** and **sub-lātum**.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (pang-ō), | (pange-re), | pe-pig-ī, | pāc-tum, | *to drive a bargain.* |

The Pr. forms are supplied by **paciscor**, 165. The Pf. **pēgī**, rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds **com-, im-, op-**. See 146, *b*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| tang-ō (TAG), | tange-re, | te-tig-ī, | tāc-tum, | *to touch.* |
| at-ting-ō, | -tinge-re, | -tig-ī, | -tāc-tum, | *to border upon.* |

So with other compounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| pend-ō, | pende-re, | pe-pend-ī, | pēn-sum, | *to hang* (trans.). |
| tend-ō, | tende-re, | te-tend-ī, | tēn-sum and -tum, | *to stretch.* |
| ex-tend-ō, | -tende-re | -tend-ī, | -tēn-sum and -tum, | *to stretch out.* |
| os-tend-ō, | -tende-re, | -tend-ī, | -tēn-sum (-tus), | *to stretch at, show.* |

The compounds prefer the Sup. in **-tum** ; so always **attentus, contentus**, usually **distentus** and **intentus**.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| pung-ō, | punge-re, | pu-pug-ī, | punc-tum, | *to prick.* |
| inter-pungō, | -punge-re, | -punxī, | -punc-tum, | *to place points between.* |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| tund-ō, | tunde-re, | tu-tud-ī, | tūn-sum, tū-sum, | *to thump.* |

Simple form has usually **tūnsus** in the Participle ; in the compounds more often **tūsus**. The reduplicating vowel is lost in **rettudī**.

### 151. *Inchoative class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| dīscō (= di-d(e)c-scō), | dīsce-re, | di-dic-ī, | —— | *to learn.* |

A late form is Fut. Part. **dīscitūrus**. Compounds retain reduplication. See 134, III.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| pōsc-o (= porc-scō), | pōsce-re, | po-pōsc-ī, | —— | *to claim.* |

Compounds retain the reduplication. See 134, III.

### 152. *The I-class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| pari-ō, | pare-re, | pe-per-ī, | par-tum (paritūrus), | *to bring forth.* |

The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in **-īre**. But **reperīre**, *to find*, forms its Pf., **repperī**, with omission of the vowel of reduplication.

### THIRD TYPE—Perfect: -ī ; Supine : -tum, -sum.

### 153. *The Stem class :*

With long vowel in the Perfect.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ag-o, | age-re, | ēg-ī, | āc-tum, | *to do, drive.* |
| cō-g-ō, | cō-ge-re, | co-ēg-ī, | co-āc-tum, | *to compel.* |
| dē-g-ō, | dē-ge-re, | —— | —— | *to pass (time).* |
| red-ig-ō, | red-ige-re, | red-ēg-ī, | red-āc-tum, | *to bring back.* |
| em-o, | eme-re, | ēm-ī, | ēmp-tum, | *to take, to buy.* |
| inter-im-ō, | -ime-re, | -ēm-ī, | -ēmp-tum, | *to make away with.* |

**co-em-ō**, *I buy up*, is conjugated like **em-o**. But the compounds with **ad-, ex-, inter-, red-**, take **-im-ō**. So, too, **dir-im-ō**, *I sever*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ed-ō, | ede-re, | ēd-ī, | ē-sum, | *to eat.* |
| cūd-ō, | cūde-re, | (cūd-ī), | (cū-sum), | *to hammer.* |
| leg-o, | lege-re, | lēg-ī, | lēc-tum, | *to pick up, read.* |
| col-lig-ō, | -lige-re, | -lēg-ī, | -lēc-tum, | *to gather.* |

So the other compounds, except **dī-lig-ō, intel-leg-ō, neg-leg-ō**, see 144.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| īc-ō (defective), | īce-re, | īc-ī, | īc-tum, | *to strike.* |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| sĭd-ŏ, | sĭde-re, | sĭd-ī, | —— | *to sit down.* |

The Pf. was originally reduplicated as the Present; see 133, 11. In composition the Pf. is **-sēdĭ, -sessum,** *from* **sede-ŏ,** thus:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cōn-sĭd-ŏ, | cōn-sĭde-re, | cōn-sēd-ī, | cōn-ses-sum, | *to settle down.* |
| scab-ŏ, | scabe-re, | scāb-ī, | —— | *to scratch.* |
| solv-ŏ, | solve-re, | solv-ī, | solū-tum, | *to loose, pay.* |
| vert-ŏ, | verte-re, | vert-ī, | ver-sum, | *to turn.* |
| re-vert-or, | re-vert-ī, | re-vert-ī (active), | re-ver-sum, | *to turn back.* |
| verr-ŏ, | verre-re, | verr-ī (rare), | ver-sum, | *to sweep.* |
| vīs-ŏ, | vīse-re, | vīs-ī, | —— | *to visit.* |
| volv-ŏ, | volve-re, | volv-ī, | volū-tum, | *to roll.* |

On **percellŏ, perculī,** see 158, *c.* On **tollō, sustulī,** see 150.

### 154. *The Nasal class:*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| psall-ŏ, | psalle-re, | psall-ī, | —— | *to play on the cithern.* |
| vell-ŏ, | velle-re, | vell-ī (vul-sī), vul-sum, | | *to pluck.* |
| lamb-ŏ, | lambe-re, | lamb-ī, | —— | *to lick.* |
| rump-ŏ, | rumpe-re, | rūp-ī, | rup-tum, | *to break.* |
| ac-cend-ŏ, | ac-cende-re, | ac-cend-ī, | ac-cēn-sum, | *to kindle.* |
| dē-fend-ŏ, | dē-fende-re, | dē-fend-ī, | dē-fēn-sum, | *to strike away, defend.* |
| fund-ŏ (FUD), | funde-re, | fūd-ī, | fū-sum, | *to pour.* |
| mand-ŏ, | mande-re, | mand-ī, | mān-sum, | *to chew.* |
| pand-ŏ, | pande-re, | pand-ī, | pas-sum, | *to spread out.* |
| prehend-ŏ, | prehende-re, | prehend-ī, | prehēn-sum, | *to seize.* |

Often shortened to **prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum.**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| scand-ŏ, | scande-re, | scand-ī, | scān-sum, | *to climb.* |
| ā(d)-, dē-scend-ŏ, | -scende-re, | -scend-ī, | -scēn-sum, | *to climb up, down.* |
| frang-ŏ, | frange-re, | frēg-ī, | frāc-tum, | *to break.* |
| per-fring-ŏ, | -fringe-re, | -frēg-ī, | -frāc-tum, | *to shiver.* |
| linqu-ŏ, | linque-re, | līqu-ī, | —— | *to leave.* |
| re-linqu-ŏ, | -linque-re, | -līqu-ī, | -lic-tum, | *to leave behind.* |
| (pang-ŏ), | (pange-re), | (pēg-ī), | (pāc-tum), | *to drive in.* |
| com-ping-ŏ, | -pinge-re, | -pēg-ī, | -pāc-tum, | *to drive tight.* |
| See 146, *b*, 150. | | | | |
| vinc-ŏ (vic), | vince-rĕ, | vīc-ī, | vic-tum, | *to conquer.* |

### 155. *The I-class.*

(*a*) With long vowel in the Perfect.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| capi-ŏ (cap-), | cape-re, | cēp-ī, | cap-tum, | *to take.* |
| ac-cipi-ŏ, | ac-cipe-re, | ac-cēp-ī, | ac-cep-tum, | *to receive.* |
| faci-ŏ, | face-re, | fēc-ī, | fac-tum, | *to make.* |
| cale-faci-ŏ (calf.), | cale-face-re, | cale-fēc-ī, | cale-fac-tum, | *to make warm.* |
| per-fici-ŏ, | per-fice-re, | per-fēc-ī, | per-fec-tum, | *to achieve.* |

On Impv. **fac,** see 130, 1.

**6**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| fodi-ō, | fode-re, | fōd-ī, | fos-sum, | *to dig.* |
| fugi-ō, | fuge-re, | fūg-ī, | (fug-i-tūrus), | *to flee.* |
| iaci-ō, | iace-re, | iēc-ī, | iac-tum, | *to cast.* |
| con-ici-ō, | -ice-re, | -iēc-ī, | -iec-tum, | *to gather.* |

(*b*) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| find-ō, | finde-re, | fid-ī, | fis-sum, | *to cleave.* |
| scind-ō, | scinde-re, | scid-ī, | scis-sum, | *to split.* |

**156.** A number of verbs of the *third* conjugation have a characteristic -u- ; these form the perfect in -ī.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ab-lu-ō, | ab-lue-re, | ab-lu-ī, | ab-lū-tum, | *to wash off.* |
| ab-nu-ō, | ab-nue-re, | ab-nu-ī, | (ab-nu-itūr-us), | *to dissent.* |
| acu-ō, | acue-re, | acu-ī, | acū-tum, | *to sharpen.* |
| ad-nu-ō (an-nu-ō), | ad-nue-re, | ad-nu-ī, | —— | *to nod assent.* |
| argu-ō, | argue-re, | argu-ī, | argū-tum, | *to accuse.* |
| batu-ō, | batue-re, | batu-ī, | —— | *to beat.* |
| con-gru-ō, | con-grue-re, | con-gru-ī, | —— | *to agree.* |
| dē-libu-ō, | dē-libue-re, | dē-libu-ī, | dē-libū-tum, | *to anoint.* |
| ex-u-ō, | ex-ue-re, | ex-u-ī, | ex-ū-tum, | *to put off, doff.* |
| im-bu-ō, | im-bue-re, | im-bu-ī, | im-bū-tum, | *to dip, dye.* |
| in-du-ō, | in-due-re, | in-du-ī, | in-dū-tum, | *to put on, don.* |
| lu-ō, | lue-re, | lu-ī, | lu-itūr-us, | *to atone for.* |
| metu-ō, | metue-re, | metu-ī, | —— | *to fear.* |
| minu-ō, | minue-re, | minu-ī, | minū-tum, | *to lessen.* |
| plu-ō, | plue-re, | plu-it, plūv-it, | —— | *to rain.* |
| ru-ō, | rue-re, | ru-ī, | ru-tum (ruitūrus), | *to rush down.* |
| spu-ō, | spue-re, | spu-ī, | spū-tum, | *to spew.* |
| statu-ō, | statue-re, | statu-ī, | statū-tum, | *to settle.* |
| sternu-ō, | sternue-re, | sternu-ī, | —— | *to sneeze.* |
| su-ō, | sue-re, | su-ī, | sū-tum, | *to sew.* |
| tribu-ō, | tribue-re, | tribu-ī, | tribū-tum, | *to allot.* |

## Mixed Conjugation.

### Perfect : -vī ; Supine : -tum.

**157.** (*a*) *Stem class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| arcess-ō, | arcesse-re, | arcessī-vī, | arcessī-tum, | *to send for.* |
| in-cess-ō, | in-cesse-re, | in-cessī-vī (cessī), | —— | *to attack.* |

So **facess-ō,** *I cause, make off.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| pet-ō, | pete-re, | petī-vī, | petī-tum, | *to seek (fly at).* |
| quaer-ō, | quaere-re, | quaesī-vī, | quaesī-tum, | *to seek.* |
| con-quīr-ō, | -quīre-re, | -quīsī-vī, | -quīsī-tum, | *to hunt up.* |

So other compounds of **-quīrō (quaerō).**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| rud-ŏ, | rude-re, | rudī-vī, | rudī-tum, | *to roar.* |
| ter-ŏ, | tere-re, | trī-vī, | trī-tum, | *to rub.* |

### (b) *Reduplicated class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ser-ŏ, | sere-re, | sē-vī, | sa-tum, | *to sow.* |

So cōnserŏ, but with Sup. cōn-situm.

### (c) *Nasal class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| li-n-ŏ, | li-ne-re, | lē-vī, | li-tum, | *to besmear.* |
| si-n-ŏ, | si-ne-re, | sī-vī, | si-tum, | *to let.* |
| pŏ-n-ŏ(=posinŏ), | pŏ-ne-re, | po-s-uī, | po-si-tum, | *to put.* |
| cer-n-ŏ, | cer-ne-re, | crē-vī, | (crē-tum), | *to separate.* |
| sper-n-ŏ, | sper-ne-re, | sprē-vī, | sprē-tum, | *to despise.* |
| ster-n-ŏ | ster-ne-re, | strā-vī, | strā-tum, | *to strew.* |

### (d) *Inchoative class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ĭnveterā-sc-ŏ, | ĭnveterā-sce-re, | ĭnveterā-vī, | ĭnveterā-tum, | *to grow old.* |
| pā-sc-ŏ, | pā-sce-re, | pā-vī, | pās-tum, | *to graze* (trans.). |
| vesperā-sc-ŏ, | vesperā-sce-re, | vesperā-vī, | —— | *to become evening.* |
| crē-sc-ŏ, | crē-sce-re, | crē-vī, | crē-tum, | *to grow.* |
| con-cupī-sc-ŏ, | -cupī-sce-re, | -cupī-vī, | -cupī-tum, | *to long for.* |
| ob-dormī-sc-ŏ, | -dormī-sce-re, | -dormī-vī, | -dormī-tum, | *to fall asleep.* |

So condormīscŏ, ēdormīscŏ.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ex-olē-sc-ŏ, | -olē-sce-re, | -olē-vī, | -olē-tum, | *to get one's growth.* |

So ob-solēscŏ, *I grow old.* But ab-olēscŏ, *I disappear*, has abolitum ; co-alēscŏ, *I grow together*, co-alitum ; ad-olēscŏ, *I grow up*, ad-ultum in the Sup.; and inolēscō lacks the Supine.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| quiē-sc-ŏ, | quiē-sce-re, | quiē-vī, | quiē-tum, | *to rest.* |
| scī-sc-ŏ, | scī-sce-re, | scī-vī, | scī-tum, | *to decree.* |
| su-ēsc-ŏ, | suē-sce-re, | suē-vī, | suē-tum, | *to accustom one's self.* |

So compounds as-, con-, dē-, man-.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (g)nŏ-sc-ŏ, | nŏ-sce-re, | nŏ-vī, | (nŏ-tum), | *to know.* |

So ĭgnōscŏ, *I pardon ;* but cō-gnōsco, *I recognize,* and other compounds of nōsco, have Sup. in -ĭtum.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| re-sip-ĭsc-ŏ, | -sipĭ-sce-re, | -sipī-vī, | —— | *to come to one's senses.* |

### (e) *I-class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cupi-ŏ, | cupe-re, | cupī-vī, | cupī-tum, | *to desire.* |
| sapi-ŏ, | sape-re, | sapī-vī (-uī), | —— | *to have a flavor.* |

#### Perfect: -uī ; Supine : -(i)tum.

**158.** (a) *Stem class :*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| frem-ŏ, | freme-re, | frem-uī, | —— | *to roar, rage.* |
| gem-ŏ, | geme-re, | gem-uī, | —— | *to groan.* |
| vom-ŏ, | vome-re, | vom-uī, | vomi-tum, | *to vomit.* |
| al-ŏ, | ale-re, | al-uī, | al-tum (ali-tum), | *to nourish.* |

| col-ō, | cole-re, | col-uī, | cul-tum, | *to cultivate.* |
| con-cin-ō, | -cine-re, | -cin-uī, | —— | *to sing together.* |

So **occinere, praecinere.**

| cōn-sul-ō, | cōn-sule-re, | cōn-sul-uī, | cōn-sul-tum, | *to consult.* |
| mol-ō, | mole-re, | mol-uī, | *moli-tum, | *to grind.* |
| occul-ō, | occule-re, | occul-uī, | occul-tum, | *to conceal.* |
| pīns-ō, | pīnse-re, | pīns-uī, | pīnsi-tum, | *to pound.* |

Sup. also **pīnsum, pīstum.**

| ser-ō, | sere-re, | —— | (ser-tum), | *to string (out).* |

Common in compounds : as, **dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum,** *to desert.*

| stert-ō, | sterte-re, | stert-uī, | —— | *to snore.* |
| strep-ō, | strepe-re, | strep-uī, | (strepi-tum), | *to make a din.* |
| tex-ō, | texe-re, | tex-uī, | tex-tum, | *to weave.* |

Irregular are :

| met-ō, | mete-re, | mess-uī, | mes-sum, | *to mow.* |
| vol-ō, | vel-le, | vol-uī, | —— | *to wish.* |

So **nōlō, mālō** ; see 174.

(b) *Reduplicated class :*

| gī-gn-ō (GEN-), | gī-gne-re, | gen-uī, | geni-tum, | *to beget.* |

(c) *The Nasal class :*

| frend-ō, | frende-re, | —— | frē-sum, frēs-sum, | *to gnash.* |

Also in the form **frende-ō, frendē-re.**

| ac-cumb-ō, | -cumbe-re, | -cub-uī, | -cubi-tum, | *to lie down.* |

So also the compounds **con-, dis-, in-** ; but **re-cumbō** lacks the Supine.

| ex-cell-ō, | -celle-re, | (cell-uī), | (cel-sus), | *to surpass.* |

But **per-cellere,** *to beat down,* has Pf. **per-culī,** Sup. **per-culsum.**

(d) *Inchoative class :*

| dispēsc-ō, | dispēsce-re, | dispēsc-uī, | —— | *to let loose.* |

So **compēscere,** *to check.*

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in **-uī**; as,

| co-alēsc-o, | -alēsce-re, | -al-uī, | -ali-tum, | *to grow together.* |

See 157, *d.*

| ē-vānēsc-ō, | -vānēsce-re, | -vān-uī, | —— | *to disappear.* |
| con-valēsc-ō, | -valēsce-re, | -val-uī, | -vali-tum, | *to get well.* |
| in-gemīsc-ō, | -gemīsce-re, | -gem-uī, | —— | *to sigh.* |
| nōtēsc-ō, | nōtēsce-re, | nōt-uī, | —— | *to become known.* |
| in-calēsc-ō, | -calēsce-re, | -cal-uī, | —— | *to get warm.* |

(e) *I-class :*

| rapi-ō, | rape-re, | rap-uī, | rap-tum, | *to snatch.* |
| cor-ripiō, | -ripe-re, | -rip-uī, | -rep-tum, | *to seize.* |

So other compounds.

# Fourth Conjugation.

TYPE: **audi-ō, audī-re, audī-vī, audī-tum.**

**159.** Irregular in Supine is :

| sepeli-ō, | sepelī-re, | sepelī-vī, | sepul-tum, | *to bury.* |

**160.** Perfect: -uī; Supine: -tum.

| amici-ō, | amicī-re, | amic-uī (ami-xī), | amic-tum, | *to clothe.* |
| aperi-ō, | aperī-re, | aper-uī, | aper-tum, | *to open.* |
| operi-ō, | operī-re, | oper-uī, | oper-tum, | *to cover up.* |
| sali-ō, | salī-re, | sal-uī, | sal-tum, | *to loop.* |

**161.** Perfect: -sī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

| saepi-ō, | saepī-re, | saep-sī, | saep-tum, | *to hedge in.* |
| sanci-ō, | sancī-re, | sānxī, | sānc-tum, | *to hallow.* |
| vinci-ō, | vincī-re, | vinxī, | vinc-tum, | *to bind.* |
| farci-ō (-fercī-ō), | farcī-re, | far-sī, | far-tum, | *to stuff.* |
| fulci-ō, | fulcī-re, | ful-sī, | ful-tum, | *to prop.* |
| sarci-ō, | sarcī-re, | sar-sī, | sar-tum, | *to patch.* |
| senti-ō, | sentī-re, | sēn-sī, | sēn-sum, | *to feel.* |
| hauri-ō, | haurī-re, | hau-sī, | haus-tum, | *to drain.* |

VERG., *A.* iv., 383, has **hausūrus.**

**162.** Perfect: -ī; Supine: -tum.

| com-peri-ō, | com-perī-re, | com-per-ī, | com-per-tum, | *to find out.* |
| re-peri-ō, | re-perī-re, | rep-per-ī, | re-per-tum, | *to find.* |

See the simple verb **parere,** 152.

| veni-ō, | venī-re, | vēn-ī, | ven-tum, | *to come.* |

## DEPONENTS.

**163.** The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the *first* conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. A few of the principal verbs are as follows :

In the *first* conjugation.

| arbitr-or, | arbitrā-rī, | arbitrā-tus sum, | *to think.* |
| comit-or, | comitā-rī, | comitā-tus sum, | *to accompany.* |
| cunct-or, | cunctā-rī, | cunctā-tus sum, | *to delay.* |
| (for), | fā-rī, | fā-tus sum, | *to speak.* |

See 175, 3.

| opīn-or, | opīnā-rī, | opīnā-tus sum, | *to think.* |
| tūt-or, | tūtā-rī, | · tūtā-tus sum, | *to protect.* |
| vag-or, | vagā-rī, | vagā-tus sum, | *to wander.* |
| vener-or, | venerā-rī, | venerā-tus sum, | *to reverence.* |

**164.** In the *second* conjugation :

| fate-or, | fatē-rī, | fas-sus sum, | *to confess.* |
| cōn-fite-or, | cōn-fitē-rī, | cōn-fes-sus sum, | *to confess.* |
| lice-or, | licē-rī, | lici-tus sum, | *to bid (at a sale).* |
| mere-or, | merē-rī, | meri-tus sum, | *to deserve.* |

Especially in the phrases **merērī bene dē aliquō**, *to deserve well of any one.*

| misere-or, | miserē-rī, | miseri-tus sum, | *to pity.* |
| pollice-or, | pollicē-ri, | pollici-tus sum, | *to promise.* |
| re-or, | rē-rī, | ra-tus sum, | *to think.* |

Pr. Part. Active is wanting.

| tue-or, | tuē-rī, | tui-tus (tūtus) sum, | *to protect.* |
| vere-or, | verē-rī, | veri-tus sum, | *to fear.* |

**165.** In the *third* conjugation :

| ad-ipīsc-or, | ad-ipīsc-ī, | ad-ep-tus sum, | *to get.* |
| am-plect-or, | am-plect-ī, | am-plex-us sum, | *to twine round, embrace.* |

So the compounds **complector, circumplector.**

| com-min-īsc-or, | com-min-īsc-ī, | com-men-tus sum, | *to think up, devise.* |
| experg-īsc-or, | ex-perg-īsc-ī, | ex-per-rēc-tus sum, | *to (right one's self up,) awake.* |
| fung-or, | fung-ī, | fūnc-tus sum, | *to discharge.* |
| fru-or (frugv-), | fru-ī, | frūc-tus sum, | *to enjoy.* |
| gradi-or, | grad-ī, | gres-sus sum, | *to step.* |
| ag-gredi-or, | ag-gred-ī, | ag-gres-sus sum, | *to attack.* |
| lāb-or, | lāb-ī, | lāp-sus sum, | *to glide.* |
| loqu-or, | loqu-ī, | locū-tus sum, | *to speak.* |
| mori-or, | mor-ī, | mor-tu-us sum, | *to die.* |
| nanc-īsc-or, | nanc-īsc-ī, | nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum, | *to get.* |
| nāsc-or (gnā-), | nāsc-ī, | nā-tus sum, | *to be born.* |

Fut. Part. **nāscitūrus.**

| nīt-or, | nīt-ī, | { nī-sus (nīx-us) sum, }<br>{ nī-sūrus, } | *to stay one's self on.* |
| ob-līv-īsc-or, | ob-līv-īsc-ī, | ob-lī-tus sum, | *to forget.* |
| pac-īsc-or, | pac-īsc-ī, | pac-tus sum (pepigī), | *to drive (a bargain).* |

See **pangō** (150).

| pati-or, | pat-ī, | pas-sus sum, | *to suffer.* |
| per-peti-or, | per-pet-ī, | per-pes-sus sum, | *to endure to the end.* |
| pro-fic-īsc-or, | pro-fic-īsc-ī, | pro-fec-tus sum, | *to (get forward) set out.* |
| quer-or, | quer-ī, | ques-tus sum, | *to complain.* |
| sequ-or, | sequ-ī, | secū-tus sum, | *to follow.* |
| ulc-īsc-or, | ulc-īsc-ī, | ul-tus sum, | *to avenge.* |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ūt-or, | ūt-ī, | ū-sus sum, | *to use.* |
| veh-or, | veh-ī, | vec-tus sum, | *to (wagon) ride.* |
| vesc-or, | vesc-ī, | —— | *to feed.* |

**166.** In the *fourth* conjugation :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| assenti-or, | assentī-rī, | assēn-sus sum, | *to assent.* |
| com-peri-or, | comperī-rī, | —— | *to find out.* |

Occasionally for **comperiō, comperīre.** But **experior, experīrī, expertus sum,** *to try*, is regularly deponent.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| largi-or, | largī-rī, | largī-tus sum, | *to bestow.* |
| menti-or, | mentī-rī, | mentī-tus sum, | *to lie.* |
| mēti-or, | mētī-rī, | mēn-sus sum, | *to measure.* |
| ōrdi-or, | ōrdī-rī, | ōr-sus sum, | *to begin.* |
| ori-or, | orī-rī, | or-tus sum, | *to arise.* |
| parti-or, | partī-rī, | partī-tus sum, | *to share.* |
| poti-or, | potī-rī, | potī-tus sum, | *to get possession of.* |
| pūni-or, | pūnī-rī, | pūnī-tus sum, | *to punish.* |
| sorti-or, | sortī-rī, | sortī-tus sum, | *to cast lots.* |

# SEMI-DEPONENTS.

**167.** 1. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| aude-ō, | audē-re, | au-sus sum, | *to dare.* |
| fīd-ō, | fīde-re, | fī-sus sum, | *to trust.* |
| gaude-ō, | gaudē-re, | gāv-īsus sum, | *to rejoice.* |
| sole-ō, | solē-re, | sol-itus sum, | *to be wont.* |

2. The reverse usage is found in :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| re-vert-or, | re-vert-ī, | re-vert-ī, | *to turn back.* |

So also **dēvertī,** but without Pf. Part. **Reversus** is also used actively, but **reversus sum** for **revertī** is post-classic.

See also **assentior,** *etc.*, 166.

NOTES. — 1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as : **cēnātus,** *one who has dined*, from **cēnāre,** *to dine ;* **prānsus,** *having breakfasted*, from **prandeō,** *I breakfast ;* **pōtus,** *drunken*, from **pōtō,** *I drink ;* **iūrātus,** *having taken the oath, sworn*, from **iūrō,** *I swear ;* **coniūrātus,** *a conspirator*, from **coniūrō,** *I conspire.* Many such are used purely as Adjectives : **cōnsīderātus,** *circumspect*, from **cōnsīderō ; cautus,** *wary*, from **caveō,** *I beware.*

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning : **adeptus** (adipīscor), *having acquired*, or *being acquired ;* **comitātus** (comitor, *I accompany*); **effātus** (effor, *I speak out*); **expertus** (experior, *I try*); **exsecrātus** (exsecror, *I curse*); **imitātus** (imitor, *I copy*); **meritus** (mereor, *I deserve*); **opīnātus, necopīnātus** (opīnor, *I think*); **pactus** (pacīscor, *I contract*); **partītus** (partior, *I distribute*); **sortītus** (sortior, *I cast lots*); **tueor,** *I protect ;* **tūtus,** *safe.*

For others, see the list of deponents.

# IRREGULAR VERBS.

(168) **169**. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present stem :

## 1. **ori-or, orī-rī, or-tus sum,** *to arise.*

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation ; the Impf. Subjv. always **orerer** ; but the Fut. Part. is **oritūrus**. The compounds follow the same usage except **adorīrī,** *to rise up at, attack,* which follows the fourth conjugation.

## 2. **ī-re,** *to go.*

The stem is **i,** which, before **a, o, u,** becomes **e.**

PRIN. PARTS : **eō, īre, īvī, (iī), itum.**

|  | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | *I go.* | | *I be going.* | |
| PRES. SG.—1. | **e-ō,** | PL.—**ī-mus,** | SG.—**ea-m,** | PL.—**eā-mus,** |
| 2. | **ī-s,** | **ī-tis,** | **eā-s,** | **eā-tis,** |
| 3. | **i-t,** | **eu-nt.** | **ea-t,** | **ea-nt.** |

IMPF.    **ī-ba-m,** *I went.*                           **ī-re-m,** *I were going.*
FUT.     **ī-b-o,** *I shall go.*
PERF.    **ī-v-ī (i-ī),** *I have gone.*                 **ī-v-eri-m (i-eri-m).**
PLUPF.   **ī-v-era-m (i-era-m),** *I had gone.*          **ī-v-isse-m (i-isse-m, ī-sse-m).**
FUT. PF. **ī-v-er-ō (i-er-ō),** *I shall have gone.*

### IMPERATIVE.

| SG.—2. | **ī,** | *go thou.* | **ī-tō,** | *thou shalt go.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3. | —— | | **ī-tō,** | *he shall go.* |
| PL.—2. | **ī-te,** | *go ye.* | **ī-tōte,** | *ye shall go.* |
| 3. | —— | | **eu-ntō,** | *they shall go.* |

| INFINITIVE. | | PARTICIPLES. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **ī-re.** | PRES. | **iē-ns** (G. **eu-nt-is**). |
| FUT. | **i-tūr-um** [esse]. | FUT. | **i-tūr-us.** |
| PERF. | **ī-v-isse (ī-sse).** | | |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. |
|---|---|
| **eu-nd-ī,** *etc.* | **i-tum,** *to go.* |

REMARKS.—1. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where **i-ī** is the regular form (see 131, 2). **Vēn-eō,** *I am for sale,* and **per-eō,** *I perish,* serve as passives to **vēn-dō,** *I sell,* and **per-dō,** *I destroy.* **Amb-iō,** *I solicit,* follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms **ītur, ībātur, itum est, īrī** (in combination with the Supine). But compounds *with transitive force* are conjugated regularly ; so, **praeter-eō** forms praeter-eor, -īris, -ītur, -īmur, -īminī, -euntur, ībar, *etc.*, -itus sum, eram, erō, -euntor, -ītor, -īrī, -eundus.

### 3. quī-re, *to be able ;* nequī-re, *to be unable.*

**170.** (*a*) que-ō, *I am able*, is found in the following forms, of which those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin and the poets ; CÆSAR uses no form of **queō**.

PR. INDIC. que-ō, (quīs), (quit), quīmus, (quītis), queunt. PR. SUBJV. queam, queās, queat, queāmus, queātis, queant. IMPF. (quībam), (quīrem). FUT. (quībō). PF. quīvī, *etc.;* quīverim, *etc.* PLUPF. quīveram, *etc.;* quīvissem, *etc.* FUT. PF. quīverō, *etc.* PR. INF. quīre. PF. quīvisse. PART. quiēns.

(*b*) **neque-ō**, *I am unable*, has the same forms, all of which seem to be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.

### 4. fer-re, *to bear.*

**171.** The endings beginning with **t, s,** and **r** are added directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by **tul-** (**tol-, tla-**).

PRIN. PARTS : **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.**

#### ACTIVE.

| INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | *I bear.* | *I be bearing.* | |
| SG.—1. fer-ō, | PL.—fer-i-mus, | SG.—fera-m, | PL.—ferā-mus, |
| 2. fer-s, | fer-tis, | ferā-s, | ferā-tis, |
| 3. fer-t, | fer-u-nt. | fera-t, | fera-nt. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| IMPF. | ferē-ba-m, *I was bearing.* | fer-re-m, *I were bearing.* | |
| FUT. | fera-m, *I shall bear.* | | |
| PERF. | tul-ī, *I have borne.* | tul-eri-m. | |
| PLUPF. | tul-era-m. | tul-isse-m. | |
| FUT. PF. | tul-er-ō. | | |

#### IMPERATIVE.

| SG.—2. fer, | *bear thou.* | fer-tō, | *thou shalt bear.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3. —— | | fer-tō, | *he shall bear.* |
| PL.—2. fer-te, | *bear ye.* | fer-tōte, | *ye shall bear.* |
| 3. —— | | fer-u-ntō, | *they shall bear.* |

| INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLES. |
|---|---|

PRES. **fer-re.**          PRES. **ferĕ-ns,** *bearing.*
FUT. **lā-tūr-um [esse].**   FUT. **lā-tūr-us.**
PERF. **tul-isse.**

GERUND.                    SUPINE.
**fere-nd-ī,** *etc.*          **lā-tum, lā-tū.**

## PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.                 SUBJUNCTIVE.
*I am borne.*                *I be borne.*

PRES.  SG.—1. **fer-o-r,**  PL.—**feri-mur,**  SG.—**fera-r,**  PL.—**ferā-mur,**
          2. **fer-ris,**          **feri-minī,**          **ferā-ris,**          **ferā-minī,**
          3. **fer-tur,**          **feru-ntur.**          **ferā-tur,**          **fera-ntur.**

IMPF.              **ferē-ba-r,**                    **fer-re-r.**
FUT.               **fera-r.**
PERF.              **lā-tus sum.**                   **lā-tus sim,**
PLUPF.             **lā-tus eram.**                  **lā-tus essem.**
FUT. PF.           **lā-tus erō.**

### IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2. **fer-re,**      *be thou borne.*   **fer-tor,**   *thou shalt be borne.*
      3. ———                              **fer-tor,**   *he shall be borne.*
PL.—2. **feri-minī,**  *be ye borne.*     ———
      3. ———                              **feru-ntor,**  *they shall be borne.*

INFINITIVE.                     PARTICIPLE.
PRES.  **fer-rī,**     *to be borne.*   PERF. **lā-t-us, -a, -um,** *borne.*

FUT.   **lā-tum īrī.**                  GERUNDIVE.
PERF.  **lā-tum esse,** *to have been borne.*   **fere-nd-us.**

### COMPOUNDS.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **af-fer-ō,** | **af-fer-re,** | **at-tul-ī,** | **al-lā-tum,** | *to bear to.* |
| **au-fer-ō,** | **au-fer-re,** | **abs-tul-ī,** | **ab-lā-tum,** | *to bear away.* |
| **cōn-fer-ō,** | **cōn-fer-re,** | **con-tul-ī,** | **col-lā-tum,** | *to collect.* |
| **dif-fer-ō,** | **dif-fer-re,** | **dis-tul-ī,** | **dī-lā-tum,** | *to put off.* |
| **ef-fer-ō,** | **ef-fer-re,** | **ex-tul-ī,** | **ē-lā-tum,** | *to carry out.* |
| **of-fer-ō,** | **of-fer-re,** | **ob-tul-ī,** | **ob-lā-tum,** | *to offer.* |

REMARKS.—1. The Pf. **tulī** was originally reduplicated **te-tulī.** Traces of this are seen in **rettulī.**

2. **Suf-ferō,** *I undergo,* has the Pf. **sus-tin-uī,** because **sus-tul-ī, sub-lā-tum** have been appropriated to **toll-ō.**

## 5. ede-re, *to eat.*

**172.** In certain forms the endings beginning with **s**, **t**, and **r** are added directly to the root (132) ; d before **s** (r) is dropped or assimilated (as **ss**) and before **t** becomes **s**.

PRIN. PARTS : edŏ, edere (ĕsse), ēdĭ, ēsum.

### ACTIVE.

| | INDICATIVE. | | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | PRESENT. | | | |
| | *I eat.* | | | *I be eating.* | |
| SG.—1. ed-ŏ, | PL.—edi-mus, | | SG.—eda-m, | PL.—edā-mus, | |
| 2. edi-s, ē-s, | edi-tis, ēs-tis, | | edā-s, | edā-tis, | |
| 3. edi-t, ē-st, | edu-nt. | | eda-t, | eda-nt. | |

| IMPF. | edē-ba-m, | *I ate.* | ede-re-m, ēs-se-m, *I were eating.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| FUT. | eda-m. | | |
| PERF. | ēd-ĭ, | | ēd-eri-m. |
| PLUPF. | ē-dera-m. | | ēd-isse-m. |
| FUT. PF. | ēd-er-ŏ. | | |

### IMPERATIVE.

| SG.—2. ede, ēs, | *eat thou.* | edi-tŏ, ēs-tŏ, | *thou shalt eat.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3. —— | | edi-tŏ, ēs-te, | *he shall eat.* |
| PL.—2. edi-te, ēs-te, | *eat ye.* | edi-tōte, ēs-tōte, | *ye shall eat.* |
| 3. —— | | edu-ntŏ, | *they shall eat.* |

| INFINITIVE. | | | PARTICIPLE. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | ede-re, ēs-se, | *to eat.* | PRES. | (edē-ns). |
| FUT. | ēs-ūr-um esse. | | FUT. | ēs-ūr-us. |
| PERF. | ēd-isse. | | | |

| GERUND. | SUPINE. |
|---|---|
| ede-nd-ĭ, *etc.* | ēs-um, ōs-ū. |

### PASSIVE.

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows : Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, **editur** and **ēstur.** Impf. Subjv. Sing. Third, **ederētur** and **ēssētur.** The Pf. Part. is **ēsus** and the Gerundive **edendus.**

## 6. fie-rī, *to become.*

**173.** FĪ-ŏ is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by **e** ; thus, **fi-e-rem,** *I were becoming ;* **fi-e-rī,** *to become.* In these forms the i is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in **-rī**, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to **faciō**, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from **faciō**.

<p align="center">PRIN. PARTS : <b>fīō, fierī, factus sum.</b></p>

|  | ACTIVE. |  |  | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **faci-ō,** | *I make.* | INDIC. | **fī-ō,** *I am made, I become.* |
|  |  |  |  | **fī-s, fī-t** (**fī-mus, fī-tis**), **fī-u-nt.** |
| IMPF. | **faci-ē-bam,** *I made.* |  |  | **fī-ē-ba-m,** *I was made, I became.* |
| FUT. | **faci-am,** *I shall make.* |  |  | **fī-a-m,** *I shall be made (become).* |
| PERF. | **fēcī.** |  |  | **fac-tus sum.** |
| PLUPF. | **fēc-era-m.** |  |  | **fac-tus eram.** |
| FUT. PF. | **fēc-er-ō.** |  |  | **fac-tus erō.** |
|  |  |  | SUBJV. | **fī-a-m, fī-ā-s, fī-a-t,** *etc.* |
|  | *etc.* |  |  | **fi-e-re-m, fi-e-rē-s,** *etc.* |

<p align="center">INFINITIVE.</p>

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
|  | PRES. | **fie-rī.** |
| IMPERATIVE. | PERF. | **fac-tum esse,** *to have become.* |
| (**fī**),     (**fī-tō**). | FUT. | **fu-tūr-um esse** *or* **fore.** |
| (**fī-te**). | FUT. PF. | **fac-tum fore.** |

REMARK.—The compounds of **faciō** with Prepositions change the **a** of the stem into **i**, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem : **perficiō**, *I achieve*, Pass. **perficior**; **interficiō**, Pass. **interficior**, *I am destroyed*. When compounded with words other than prepositions, **faciō** retains its **a**, and uses **fīō** as its Passive :

**patefaciō**, *I lay open*, Pass. **patefīō**; **calefaciō**, *I warm*, Pass. **calefīō**.

For the accent, see 15, 2, R. 2.

## 174.          7. **vel-le**, *to be willing.*

**nōlle**, *to be unwilling ;* **mālle**, *to be willing rather.*

PRIN. PARTS : **volō, velle, voluī; nōlō, nōlle, nōluī; mālō, mālle, māluī.**

<p align="center">INDICATIVE.</p>

| PRES. | **volō,** | **nōlō,** | **mālō,** |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | **vīs,** | **nōn vīs,** | **māvīs,** |
|  | **vult,** | **nōn vult,** | **māvult,** |
|  | **volumus,** | **nōlumus,** | **mālumus,** |
|  | **vultis,** | **nōn vultis,** | **māvultis,** |
|  | **volunt.** | **nōlunt.** | **mālunt.** |
| IMPF. | **volēbam,** | **nōlēbam,** | **mālēbam.** |
| FUT. | **volam,** | **nōlam,** | **mālam,** |
|  | **volēs,** *etc.* | **nōlēs,** *etc.* | **mālēs,** *etc.* |

| PERF. | voluī, | nōluī, | māluī, *etc.* |
| PLUPF. | volueram, | nōlueram, | mālueram, *etc.* |
| FUT. PF. | voluerō, | nōluerō, | māluerō, *etc.* |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRES. | velim, | nōlim, | mālim, |
| | velīs, | nōlīs, | mālīs, |
| | velit, | nōlit, | mālit, |
| | velīmus, | nōlīmus, | mālīmus, |
| | velītis, | nōlītis, | mālītis, |
| | velint. | nōlint. | mālint. |
| IMPF. | vellem, | nōllem, | māllem. |
| PERF. | voluerim, | nōluerim, | māluerim, *etc·* |
| PLUPF. | voluissem, | nōluissem, | māluissem, *etc.* |
| IMPV. | [fac velīs], | SG. —nōlī, nōlītō. | |
| | | PL.—nōlīte, nōlītōte, nōluntō. | |
| INF. PR. | velle, | nōlle, | mālle. |
| PF. | voluisse, | nōluisse, | māluisse. |
| PART. | volēns, | nōlēns. | |

## 175.  DEFECTIVE VERBS.

### 1. āiō, *I say aye.*

| INDIC. PRES. SG.—1. āiō, | 2. ais, | 3. ait, | PL.—3. āiunt. |
| IMPF. | āiēbam, *etc.* | | |
| PERF. | | 3. ait. | |
| SUBJV. PRES. SG.— | 2. āiās, | 3. āiat, | 3. āiant. |

PART. āiēns (as adj.), *affirmative.*  IMPV. aī.

### 2. inquam, *I say, quoth I.*

| INDIC. PRES. SG.—1. inquam, | 2. inquis, | 3. inquit. |
| PL.—1. inquimus, | 2. inquitis, | 3. inquiunt. |
| IMPF. SG.— | | 3. inquiēbat. |
| FUT. SG.— | 2. inquiēs, | 3. inquiet. |
| PERF. SG.—1. inquiī, | 2. inquīstī, | 3. inquit. |

IMPV. inque, inquitō.

### 3. fā-rī, *to speak.*

INDIC. Pres. fātur. Fut. fābor, fābitur. Perf. fātus sum, *etc.* IMPV. fāre.
PART. Pres. fāns, fantis, fantī, fantem. GER. fandī, fandō. SUP. fātū·

### 4. havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| IMPV. havē, | salvē, salvēbis, | *hail thou !* |
| havētō, | salvētō. | |
| havēte, | salvēte, | *hail ye !* |
| INF. havēre, | salvēre. | |

Corresponding to these are the forms of valēre, viz.: valē, valēte, valēre, *farewell.*

### 5. coepī, meminī, ōdī, nōvī.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepī, *I have begun,* which serves as a Perfect to incipiō, and meminī, *I remember,* ōdī, *I hate,* nōvī (from nōscō, see 131, 3, 157, *d*), *I know, am aware,* cōnsuēvī (from consuēscō), *I am wont,* which have the force of Presents.

*a.* INDIC. coepī, · *I have begun.* SUBJV. coeperim.
     coeperam.      coepissem.
     coeperō.    INF. coepisse, *to have begun.*

Passive forms coeptus sum, *etc.,* occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. See 423, R. 3.

*b.* INDIC. meminī, *I remember.* SUBJV. meminerim.
     memineram.      meminissem.
     meminerō.    INF. meminisse, *to remember.*
  IMPV. Sg.—mementō.     Pl.—mementōte.
*c.* INDIC. ōdī, *I hate.* SUBJV. ōderim.
     ōderam.      ōdissem.
     ōderō.    INF. ōdisse, *to hate.*
  FUT. PART. ōsūrus.

NOTE.—For the Passive the phrase odiō esse is used.

*d.* INDIC. nōvī.     SUBJV. nōverim (nōrim).
     nōveram (nōram).      nōvissem (nōssem).
     nōverō (nōrō).    INF. nōvisse (nōsse), *to know.*

### 6. cedo, quaesō.

Other defective forms are :

       Sg.—cedo, *give !* (old Impv.)      Pl.—cette.
   INDIC. Pres. quaesō, *please* (i. e., *I seek, beg*),      quaesumus.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

**176.** By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.

**177.** All roots of the Latin language are probably mono-syllabic. They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, NN. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root; so especially in the Root Verbs (132). But it is usually different.

**178.** Words are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* word is one that is formed from a single root : **sōl**, *sun ;* **stāre**, *stand, stay.*

A *compound* word is one that is made up of two or more roots : **sōl-stiti-um**, *sun-staying, solstice.*

### A.—Simple Words.

**179.** Simple words are partly *primitive*, partly *derivative* or *secondary*.

1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called *verbals :* **scrīb-a** (**scrībō**, *I write*), *scribe.*

2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem ; hence called *denominatives :* **vetus-tās**, *age*, from **vetes-** (N. **vetus**), *old.*

**180.** Substantives are generally formed by means of a *suf-fix*. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem **scrīb-** (**scrībō**, *I write*) comes **scrīp-tor**, *writ-er ;* **scrīp-tiō(n)**, *writ-ing.*

Suffixes are either *primary* or *secondary*. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, **-tor** in **scrīp-tor** is a primary suffix ; **-tās** in **vetus-tās** is secondary.

### 181.  FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows :

1. *Agency* is indicated by

*-tor, -trīc* (N. tor, trīx) : amā-tor, *lover ;*  vīc-trīx, *conqueress ;*

*-ōn* (N. ō, G. ōnis) : com-bib-ō (*fellow-drinker*), *boon companion ;*

*-o, -a* (N. -us, -a) : serv-os, *slave ;* scrīb-a, *scribe,* occasionally ;

*-ōno, -ōna* (N. ŏnu-s, -ōna) : col-ōnŭ-s, *settler ;*

*-(i)t* (N. es, G. itis) : mīl-es, *soldier,* and a few others.

2. *Action, Activity,* and *Event* are indicated by

*a. -tu* (N. tu-s, su-s, G. -ūs) : ad-ven-tus, *arrival ;*

*-trī-na* (N. trīna) : doc-trīna, *instruction ;*

*-īn-a* (N. īna) : rap-īna, *rapine ;*

*-men* (N. men, G. min-is) : āg-men, *train ;*

*-mento* (N. mentum) : tor-mentu-m, *torture ;*

*-ē-la* (*ella*) : loqu-ēla, *speech ;* quer-ēla, *complaint ;*

*-cinio* (N. -u-m) : latrō-ciniu-m, *highway robbery ;*

*-mōnio, -mōnia* : queri-mōnia, *complaint ;* tĕsti-mōniu-m, *testimony.*

b. *Abstracts.* Masculine : *-ōs* (N. -or, G. -ōr-is) : ang-or, *anguish.*

Feminine : *-ōn* (N. dō, gō, G. in-is) : imā-gō, *image ;* cup-ī-dō, *desire ;*

*-ia :* audāc-ia, *boldness ;*

*-iōn* (N. iō) : leg-iō, *legion ;*

*-tia :* avāri-tia, *avarice ;* collateral are some with Nom. in *-tiēs,* as dūri-tiēs, *hardness ;*

*-tiōn* (N. tiō, siō) : amb-i-tiō, *ambition ;* cōn-fū-siō, *confusion ;*

*-tāt* (N. tās) : aequāli-tās, *equality ;*

*-tūra :* pic-tūra, *painting ;*

*-tūt-* (N. tūs, sus) : iuven-tūs, *youth ;*

*-tu (-su)* (N. tu-s, su-s) : sēn-sus, *perception ;*

*-tūdōn* (N. tūd-ō, G. -inis) : aegri-tūdō, *sickness of heart.*

Neuter : *-tio* (N. tiu-m) : servi-tiu-m, *bondage.*

3. An *Artisan* or *Tradesman* is indicated by

*-ārio* (N. āriu-s) : argent-āriu-s, *money changer.*

4. The *Trade* is indicated by

*-āria :* argent-āria, *silver mine, bank.*

5. The *Locality* of the work (or trade) is indicated by

*-ārio* (N. āriu-m) : sēmin-ārium, *seed-plot ;*

*-ōnio* (N. ōniu-m) : full-ōniu-m, *fuller's shop ;*

*-īna :* offic-īna, *workshop ;*

*-cro, -culo* (N. -cru-m, -culu-m) : lavā-cru-m, *bath ;*

*-trīno, -trīna* (N. trīna, trīnu-m) : sū-trīna, *shoemaker's shop ;* pīs-trīnu-m, *mill.*

6. *Instrument* and *Means* are indicated by

*-bro, -bra* (N. bra, bru-m) : lī-bra, *balance ;* crī-brum, *sieve ;*

*-cro, -culo* (N. cru-m, culu-m) : ba-culu-m, *walking stick ;*

**–lo, –la** (N. -la, -lu-m): pī-la, *pillar;* tĕ-lu-m, *weapon;*

**–ulo, –ula** (N. ulu-s, ula, ulu-m): cap-ulu-s, *handle;* rēg-ula, *rule;* cing-ulu-m, *girdle;*

**–mento** (N. mentu-m): al-i-mentu-m, *nourishment;*

**–tro, –tra** (N. tra, tru-m): fenes-tra, *window;* arā-tru-m, *plow.*

7. *Relationship* is indicated by

**–ter** (N. ter, G. tr-is): pa-ter, *father;* mā-ter, *mother.*

8. *Condition* or *Relation* by

**–īna :** dīscipl-īna, *discipline;* medic-īna, *medicine.*

9. *Function* is indicated by

**–tūra (sūra) :** cul-tūra, *cultivation.*

10. *Office* is indicated by

**–ātu** (N. ātus, G. ātūs): cōnsul-ātus, *consulship;*
**–tūra (-sūra):** dictā-tūra, *dictatorship.*

11. *Dense Growths* are indicated by
**–ēto** (N. ĕtu-m): murt-ētu-m, *myrtle grove;*
**–to** (N. tu-m): virgul-tu-m, *brushwood.*

12. *Diminutives* are indicated by
**–lo, –la** (N. lu-s, *etc.*), before which a liquid is assimilated : (ager), agel-lu-s, *little field;* (corōn-a), corōl-la, *chaplet;*

**–olo, –ulo:** olo after e, i, v, otherwise -ulo (N. olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ula): (alve-us), alve-olu-s, *little hollow;* (fīli-a), fīli-ola, *little daughter;*

**–culo, –cula** (N. culu-s, *etc.*), after e, i, u, and consonant stems : (spēs), spē-cula, *slight hope;* (versu-s), versi-culu-s, *versicle;* (homŏ, homin-), homun-culu-s, *manikin;* (cor, cord-), cor-culu-m, *dear heart.*

## 182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows :

1. *Action* is indicated by
**–bundo, –bunda :** cunctā-bundu-s, *lingering;*
**–ulo, –ula** (*repeated action*): crēd-ulu-s, *quick to believe;*
**–bili** (*passive action*): amā-bili-s, *lovable.*

2. *Capacity* and *Inclination* are indicated by
**–cundo, –cunda :** fā-cundu-s, *of ready speech.*
**–ili** (*passive capacity*): ag-ili-s, *movable;* doc-ili-s, *teachable.*
The *Capacity* and *Resulting Condition* by
**–tili :** duc-tili-s, *ductile;* fic-tili-s, *capable of being moulded, of clay.*

3. *Tendency* is indicated by
**–āci** (N. āx): aud-āx, *bold;* rap-āx, *greedy.*

7

4. *Likeness* and *Composition* or *Material* are indicated by

**-āceo, -ācea :** arundin-āceu-s, *reedy ;* crēt-āceu-s, *chalky ;*
**-icio, -icia :** later-iciu-s, *made of brick ;*
**-no, -na :** acer-nu-s, *of maple ;*
**-neo, -nea :** ae-neu-s, *brazen.*

5. *Belonging to* is indicated by

**-io, -ia :** imperātōr-iu-s, *belonging to a general ;*
**-icio, -icia :** aedīl-iciu-s, *belonging to an œdile ;*
**-āno, -āna :** hūm-ānu-s, *human ;* urb-ānu-s, *urbane, city.*

6. *Appurtenance* and *Medium* are indicated by

**-tico, -tica :** aquā-ticu-s, *aquatic ;*
**-tili :** aquā-tili-s, *aquatic ;* plūmā-tili-s (*embroidered*) *like feathers.*

7. *Origin* is indicated by.

**-io, -ia :** Cornēl-ia (lēx), Corinth-iu-s ;
**-āno, -āna, -īno, -īna :** Rōm-ānu-s, Lat-īnu-s.

8. *Time* is indicated by

**-tino, -tina :** crās-tinu-s, *of to-morrow ;*
**-terno, -terna :** hes-ternu-s, *of yesterday ;*
**-urno, -urna :** noct-urnu-s, *by night ;*
**-tīno, -tīna :** mātū-tinu-s, *of early morning.*

9. *Locality, where, whence,* is indicated by
**-ia :** Galli-a, *Gaul ;*
**-tīno :** intes-tīnu-s, *inner, intestine ;*
**-ēnsi :** circ-ēnsi-s, *from the circus ;* Sicili-ēnsi-s, *Sicilian.*

10. *Fullness* is indicated by
**-ōso, -ōsa :** anim-ōsu-s, *full of spirit ;* verb-ōsu-s, *wordy ;*
**-lento, -lenta :** sanguin-o-lentu-s, *bloody.*

11. *Descent* and *Relationship* are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names (*Patronymics*). These suffixes are

M. **-idēs** (G. idae), F. **-is** (G. idis), from Nominatives in **us, or, ōs,** and **s** preceded by a consonant : (Tantalus) Tantal-idēs, *son of Tantalus ;* Tantal-is, *daughter of Tantalus ;* (Pelops) Pelopidēs.

M. **-īdēs** (G. īdae), F. **-ēis** (G. ēidis), from Nominatives in **-eus**: (Thēseus) Thēs-īdēs, Thēsēis.

M. **-adēs** (G. adae), F. **-ēis** (G. ēidis), from Nominatives in **ās** (G. ae) and **-ēs** (G. ae): (Aenēās) Aene-adēs.

M. **-iadēs** (G. iadae), F. **-ias** (G. iadis), from Nominatives in **ius, ēs, ōn, o** : (Lāertēs) Lāert-iadēs.

F. **-īnē,** from Nominatives in **-us** and **-eus** : (Neptūnus) Neptūn-īnē.
F. **-iōnē,** from Nominatives in **ius** : (Acrisius) Acrisiōnē.

12. *Diminutive* adjectives are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12) : albus, *white*, albu-lus, *whitish ;* miser, *wretched*, mis-ellus, *poor (little) ;* ācer, *sharp*, ācri-culu-s, *somewhat sharp.*

## 183. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

### (Root Substantives.)

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix :

1. With weak root : duc-s (dux), *leader*, from root duc, *lead ;* nec-s (nex), *killing*, from root nec, *kill.*

2. With strong root : lūc-s (lūx), *light*, from root lūc, *light ;* rēg-s (rēx), *king*, from root rēg, *rule.*

3. With reduplication : car-cer, *jail ;* mar-mor, *marble ;* mur-mur, *murmur.*

## (184–9) 190. FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stem-formations are shown in 133.

2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the Inchoatives and the Meditatives) formed in the same way, but certain classes of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings :

<div style="text-align:center">

The *Causatives.*        The *Frequentatives.*

The *Desideratives.*      The *Inchoatives.*

The *Meditatives.*

</div>

## 191. A. *Verbālia* (derived from verb-stems) :

1. **Frequentatives** or **Intensives,** denoting *repeated* or *intense action.* These verbs end in -tāre (sāre), -itāre, -titāre (-sitāre), and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).

(*a*) cantāre, *sing ;* compare canō (cantum) : cursāre, *run to and fro ;* compare currō (cursum) : dormītāre, *be sleepy ;* compare dormiō (dormītum) : pulsāre, *beat ;* compare pellō (pulsum).

(*b*) agitāre (ago), nōscitāre (nōscō).

(*c*) cantitāre (cantāre), cursitāre (cursāre).

2. **Inchoatives** indicate *entrance upon an action.* For their formation see 133, V.

3. **Desideratives** denote *desire* or *tendency.* They are formed by means of the suffix -turiō (-suriō) : ēsurīre (for ed-t), *to be sharp-set for eating, hungry ;* ēm-p-turīre, *to be all agog for buying.*

4. ***Causatives*** signify the *effecting* of the *condition* indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

*Change :* **cadere,** *fall,* and **caedere,** *fell ;* **līquere,** *melt* (intr.), and **liquēre,** *melt* (trans.) ; **necāre,** *kill,* and **nocēre,** *be death to.*

*No change :* **fugere,** *flee,* and **fugāre,** *put to flight ;* **iacere,** *throw,* and **iacēre,** (*lie*) *thrown ;* **pendere,** (*hang*) *weigh,* and **pendēre,** *hang* (intr.).

5. ***Meditatives :*** (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in -essere : **arcessere,** *to summon ;* **capessere,** *to catch at ;* **facessere,** *to do eagerly ;* **incessere,** *to enter ;* **lacessere,** *to irritate* (136, 3, *b*).

**192.** B. *Denominatives* (derived from noun-stems) :

1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is **i** or **u.**

(*a*) **acervā-re,** *heap up* (from **acervo-s**) ; **corōnā-re,** *wreathe* (**corōna**) ; **levā-re,** *lighten* (**levi-s**) ; **nōminā-re,** *name* (**nōmen, nōmin-is**).

The Deponents signify *condition, employment :* **ancillā-rī,** *be maid* (**ancilla**) ; **aquā-rī,** *be a drawer of water* (**aqua**) ; **fūrā-rī,** *thieve* (**fūr**).

(*b*) **albē-re,** *be white* (**albu-s**) ; **flōrē-re,** *be in bloom* (**flōs, flōris**) ; **frondē-re,** *be in leaf* (**frōns, frondi-s**) ; **lūcē-re,** *be light* (**lūx, lūc-is**).

(*c*) **argue-re** (*be bright, sharp*), *prove ;* **laede-re,** *hurt ;* **metue-re,** *be in fear* (**metu-s**).

(*d*) **cūstōdī-re,** *guard* (**cūstōs, cūstōd-is**) ; **fīnī-re,** *end* (**fīni-s**) ; **lēnī-re,** *soften* (**lēni-s**) ; **vestī-re,** *clothe* (**vesti-s**).

2. Noteworthy are the *Diminutives* formed by the suffix -illāre : **st-illāre,** *drop* (**st-illa**) ; **scint-illare,** *sparkle* (**scint-illa**). Similar in function but of different formation are **pullu-lare,** *sprout* (**pul-lus**) ; **fodic-āre,** *punch* (**fodere,** *dig*) ; **albicāre,** *whiten* (**albu-s**).

## B.—Compound Words.

**193.** 1. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

2. Composition is either *proper* or *improper.*

### Noun.

**194.** In COMPOSITION IMPROPER there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected : **ē-nōrmis = ex nōrmā,** *out of all rule ;* **lēgis-lātor,** *lawgiver ;* **Senātūs-cōnsultum,** *decree of the Senate.*

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional : **dēlīrus** (**dē-līra**), *crazy from fear :* **ēgregius** (**ē-grege**), *distinguished* (*from the crowd*) *;* **prōcōnsul** (for **prō cōnsule**) ; **trium-vir** (from **trium virum**), *etc.*

**195.** COMPOSITION PROPER.—1. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as **ne-fār-iu-s**, *nefarious;* **vē-sānu-s**, *mad, out of one's sound senses:* or a substantive.

If it is a substantive—

(*a*) The stems in **-a, -o, -u** regularly weaken these vowels into **-i** before the consonants of the second part, which **i** may vanish : **causi-dicus**, *pleader, lawyer* (**causa**); **sīgni-fer**, *standard-bearer* (**sīgnu-m**); **corni-ger**, *horn-wearer* (**cornū**); **man-ceps** (**manu-** and **cap-**), *one who takes in hand, contractor.* The **i**-stems retain **i** or drop it : **īgni-vomu-s**, *fire-vomiting* (**īgni-s**); **nau-fragu-s**, *shipwrecked* (**nāvi-s**).

(*b*) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of the second part : **māgn-animu-s**, *great-souled;* **ūn-animu-s**, *of one mind.*

(*c*) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add **i** : **homi-cīd-a**, *manslayer* (**homin-**); **lapi-cīd-a**, *stone-cutter* (**lapid-**); **mātr-i-cīd-a**, *mother-murderer, matricide.*

2. The second part of the composition is a substantive : **tri-enn-iu-m**, *space of three years* (**annus**); **miseri-cor-s**, *tender-hearted* (**cor**).

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as **flāvi-comus**, *yellow-haired* (**coma**, *hair*), but more often this final vowel becomes **i** and the adjective follows the third declension : **ab-nōrmi-s**, *abnormal* (**nōrma**, *norm*).

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change : **bi-dēn-s**, *two-pronged;* **simplex** (**sim-plec-s**), *simple.*

## Signification of Nouns.

**196.** Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes : Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes : Attributive or Appositional, and Dependent.

**197.** 1. *Attributive compounds.* The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive : **āli-pēs**, *wing-foot(ed);* (2) an adjective : **māgn-animus**, *great-hearted;* **lāti-fundium**, *large estate;* (3) a numeral: **bi-enni-um** (*i. e.,* **spatium**), *space of two years.*

2. *Dependent compounds.* In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.

(*a*) The first word is : (1) an adjective : **merī-diēs** (from **medī-diē** = **mediō diē**), *mid-day;* (2) an adverb : **bene-ficus** (*well-doing*), *beneficent;* **male-ficus**, *evil-doing;* (3) a numeral : **ter-geminus**, *triple;* (4) a par-

ticle : **dis-sonus,** *harsh-sounding ;* **per-māgnus,** *very large ;* **in-dĭgnus,** *unworthy ;* (5) a verb-stem : **horri-ficus,** *horrible (horror-stirring).*

(*b*) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative : **armi-ger = arma gerēns,** *armor-bearer ;* **agri-cola = agrum colēns** (*land-tiller*), *husbandman ;* (2) the Genitive : **sōl-stitium = sōlis statiō** (*sun-staying*), *solstice ;* (3) the Locative : **aliēni-gena** (*born elsewhere*), *alien ;* (4) the instrumental : **tībī-cen = tībiā canēns,** *flute-player.*

**198.** *Possessive Compounds* are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive : **angui-manus,** (*having a*) *snake-hand* (*elephant*): (2) an adjective : **flāvi-comus,** (*having*) *yellow hair ;* (3) a numeral : **bi-frōns,** (*having*) *two front(s) ;* (4) a particle : **dis-cors,** *discordant ;* **in-ers,** *inactive.*

### Verb.

**199.** In *C o m p o s i t i o n　I m p r o p e r* the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In *C o m p o s i t i o n　P r o p e r* the verb is combined with a preposition.

**200.** 1. COMPOSITION IMPROPER.—(*a*) *Verb with verb:* This only takes place when the second part of the compound is **faciō** or **fīō** (173, R.). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation : **cale-faciō, cale-fīō,** *warm, am warmed.*

(*b*) *Verb with substantive :* **anim-advertō = animum advertō,** *take notice ;* **manū-mittō,** *set free ;* **ūsū-capiō,** *acquire by use.*

(*c*) *Verb with adverb :* **bene-dīcō,** *bless ;* **male-dīcō,** *curse ;* **mālō, nōlō** (for **mage (magis) volō,** ne- **volō**), **satis-faciō,** *satisfy.*

2. COMPOSITION PROPER.—The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 413, R. 3.

(*a*) *With inseparable prepositions :* **amb-iō,** *go about ;* **am-plector,** *enfold ;* **an-hēlō,** *draw deep breath, pant ;* **dis-currō,** *run apart ;* **dir-imō,** 153 ; **por-tendō,** *hold forth, portend ;* **red-dō,** *give back ;* **re-solvō,** *resolve ;* **sē-iungō,** *separate.*

(*b*) *With separable prepositions :* **ab-eō,** *go away ;* **ad-eō,** *come up ;* **ante-currō,** *run in advance ;* **com-pōnō,** *put together ;* **dē-currō,** *run down, finish a course ;* **ex-cēdō,** *overstep ;* **in-clūdō,** *shut in ;* **ob-dūcō,** *draw over ;* **per-agrō,** *wander through ;* **post-habeō,** *keep in the background ;* **prae-dīcō,** *foretell ;* **praeter-eō,** *pass by ;* **prōd-eō,** *go forth ;* **prae-videō,** *foresee ;* **sub-iciō,** *put under ;* **subter-fugiō,** *flee from under ;* **super-sum,** *remain over ;* **trāns-gredior,** *pass beyond.*

# Syntax.

---

**201.** Syntax treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (**sententia**) in words.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

**Lūna fulget,** *the moon shines.*
**Lūna** is the *subject ;* **fulget,** the *predicate.*

REMARKS.—1. The Interjection (16, R. 1) and the Vocative case (23, 5) do not properly belong to the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

**Almae fīlius Māiae,** H., *O.,* I. 2, 43 ; *son of mild Maia !*
**Audī tū, populus Albānus,** L., I. 24, 7 ; *hear thou, people of Alba !*

**Ō** is prefixed to give emphasis to the address :

**Ō fōrmōse puer, nimium nē crēde colōrī,** V., *Ec.* 2, 17 ; *O shapely boy ! trust not complexion all too much.*

## SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

**202.** The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb : **su-m,** *I am ;* **docē-s,** *thou teachest ;* **scrībi-t,** *he writes.*

**203.** SUBJECT.—The subject of the finite verb is in the Nominative Case.

The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

REMARK.—The subj. of the Infinitive is in the Accusative (343, 2).

**204.** The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive :

**Deus mundum gubernat,** GOD *steers the universe.*
**Ego rēgēs ēiēcī,** [C.] *ad Her.,* IV. 53, 66 ; I *drove out kings.*
**Sapiēns rēs adversās nōn timet,** THE SAGE *does not fear adversity.*
**Victī in servitūtem rediguntur,** THE VANQUISHED *are reduced to slavery.*
**Contendisse decōrum est,** Ov., *M.,* IX. 6; TO HAVE STRUGGLED *is honorable.*

REMARKS.—1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and participles, are often used as substantives : **pauperēs,** *the poor ;* **dīvitēs,** *the rich.*

This is very rare in the Nom. Sing., where the substantive should be expressed : **vir pauper,** *a poor man ;* **mulier peregrīna,** *a foreign woman.* So regularly, if a *proper name* is added : **Platō, doctissimus homŏ,** *the learned Plato.*

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers : **medium,** *the midst ;* **extrēmum,** *the end ;* **futūrum,** *the future ;* **bonum,** *good ;* **bona,** *blessings, possessions ;* **malum,** *evil ;* **mala,** *misfortunes.*

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen., after words of quantity or pronouns : **aliquid bonī,** *something good ;* **nihil malī,** *nothing bad.*

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word **rēs,** *thing,* is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous : so **bonārum rērum,** *of blessings,* rather than **bonōrum** (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English ; **adventūs imperātōrum,** *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Abstract substantives often become concrete in the plural : **fortitūdinēs,** *gallant actions ;* **formīdinēs,** *bugbears ;* **īrae,** *quarrels.*

**205.** PREDICATE AND COPULA.—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called copula (i. e. coupler) is generally employed, in order to couple the predicate with the subject. The chief copula is the verb **sum,** *I am.*

**Fortūna caeca est,** C., *Lael.* 15, 54 ; *fortune is blind.*
**Ūsus magister est optimus,** C., *Rab. Post.,* 4, 9 ; *practice is the best teacher.*

Note.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb : **est Deus,** *there is a God, God exists ;* **rēctē semper erunt rēs,** *things will always be (go on) well ;* **sīc vīta hominum est,** C., *Rosc. Am.,* 30, 84 ; *such is human life ;* " *So runs the world away.*"

**206.** Other copulative verbs are : **vidērī,** *to seem ;* **nāscī,** *to be born ;* **fierī,** *to become ;* **ēvādere,** *to turn out ;* **creārī,** *to be created ;* **dēligī,** *to be chosen ;* **putārī,** *to be thought ;* **habērī,** *to be held ;* **dīcī,** *to be said ;* **appellārī,** *to be called ;* **nōminārī,** *to be named.* Hence the rule :

Verbs of *seeming, becoming,* with the passive of verbs of *making, choosing, showing, thinking,* and *calling,* take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate :

**Nēmŏ nāscitur dīves,** Sen., *E.M.,* 20, 13 ; *no one is born rich.*
**Aristīdēs iūstus appellātur,** *Cf.* Nep., iii. 1, 4 ; *Aristides is called just.*
**Thūcȳdidēs numquam est numerātus ōrātor,** C., *O.,* 9, 31 ; *Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.*

Remarks.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (423).

**Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmŏ potest,** C., *N.D.,* 1. 18, 48 ; *no one can be happy without virtue.*

2. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

**207.** Subject Omitted.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts, or when the subject changes :

**Amāmus parentēs,** *We love (our) parents.*
**Ego rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis,** [C.] *ad Her.,* iv. 53, 66 ; *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

**208.** Impersonal Verbs.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the person is not expressed. Chief of these are :

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather : **tonat,** *it thunders, the thunder thunders,* or rather, *the Thunderer thunders ;* **fulget,** *it lightens ;* **pluit,** *it rains ;* **ningit,** *it snows, etc.*
**Nocte pluit tōtā,** V., (Poet. Lat. Min., iv. 155, B.) ; *all night it (he, Jupiter) rains.*

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally ; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217) : **vīvitur,** *people live ;* **curritur,** *there is a running ;* **pūgnātur,** *there is a battle ;* **mihĭ invidētur,** *I am envied.* The subject is contained in the verb itself : **pūgnātur = pūgna pūgnātur,** *a battle is (being) fought.*

**209.** COPULA OMITTED.—**Est** or **sunt** is often omitted in proverbs, in short statements and questions, and in tenses compounded with participles :

**Summum iūs summa iniūria,** C., *Off.*, I. 10, 33 ; *the height of right (is) the height of wrong.*

**Nēmo malus fēlīx,** JUV., IV. 8 ; *no bad man (is) happy.*

So also **esse,** with participles and the like :

**Caesar statuit exspectandam clāssem,** CAES., *B. G.*, III. 14, 1 : *Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.*

### CONCORD.

**210.** THE THREE CONCORDS.—There are three great concords in Latin :

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).

2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (285, 321).

3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

## 211.  Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject $\begin{cases} \text{in number and} \\ \text{person.} \end{cases}$

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject $\begin{cases} \text{in number,} \\ \text{gender, and} \\ \text{case.} \end{cases}$

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

**Substantīva mōbilia** (21, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject; as C., *Or.*, I. 4, 13 (321).

**Ego** (207) **rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis,** [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 53, 66 ; *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

**Vērae amīcitiae sempiternae sunt,** C., *Lael.*, 9. 32 : *true friendships are abiding.*

**Dōs est decem talenta,** TER., *And.*, 950 ; *the dowry is ten talents.*

REMARKS.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes ; *either* the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (*construction according to the sense*), *or* the nearer is preferred to the more remote.   Hence the following

EXCEPTIONS.—(*a*) Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural : **pars,** *part ;* **vīs** (*power*), *quantity ;* **multitūdō,** *crowd ;* organized bodies more rarely.

**Pars māior recēperant sēsē,** L., XXXIV. 47, 6 ; *the greater part had retired.*

**Omnis multitūdō abeunt,** L., XXIV. 3, 15 ; *all the crowd depart.*

(*b*) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject; so especially with **mīlia.**

**Capita coniūrātiōnis virgīs caesī sunt,** L., x. 1, 3 ; *the heads of the conspiracy were flogged.*

**Samnītium caesī tria mīlia,** *Cf.* L., x. 34, 3 : *of the Samnites* (*there*) *were slain three thousand.*

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate : **Nōn omnis error stultitia dīcenda est,** C., *Div.*, ii. 43, 90 ; *not every false step is to be called folly.*

(*c*) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate (" the wages of sin *is* death ") :

**Amantium īrae** (204, R. 5) **amōris integrātiō est,** TER., *And.*, 555 ; *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.*

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes :

**Indus, quī est omnium flūminum māximus,** C., *N.D.*, ii. 52, 130 ; *the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers.*

(3) 4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject :

**Trīste lupus stabulīs,** V., *Ec.*, 3, 80 ; *the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds.*

**Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina,** V., *A.*, iv. 569 ; "*a thing of moods and fancies*" *is woman ever.*

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate :

**Ea nōn media sed nūlla via est,** L., xxxii., 21, 33 ; *that is not a middle course, but no course at all.*

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions :

**Quid aut quāle est Deus?** *Cf.* C., *N.D.*, i. 22, 60 ; *what or what manner of thing is God ?*

6 The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is **oppidum, cīvitās,** and the like :

**Coriolī oppidum captum est,** L., ii. 33, 9 ; *Corioli-town was taken.*

## Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

### VOICES OF THE VERB.

**212.** There are two voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

**213.** ACTIVE.—The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject.* Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows :

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object (**trānseō,** *I go over*) ; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject: **occīdere,** *to fell = to kill* (Transitive); **occidere,** *to fall* (Intransitive).

REMARK.—(*a*) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of *movement ;* as **dēclīnāre, inclīnāre, movēre, mūtāre, vertere,** and the like.

(*b*) On the other hand, many intransitive verbs are often used transitively. In this case the Acc. is usually the *inner* object (332).

**214.** PASSIVE.—The Passive Voice denotes that the *subject receives the action* of the verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

**Virgīs caedētur,** C., *Verr.,* III. 28, 69 ; *he shall be beaten with rods.*
**Īgnis lūmine prōditur suō,** Ov., *Her.,* 15, 8 ; *the fire is betrayed by its own light.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with **ab (ā).**

**Ab amīcīs prōdimur,** C., *Cluent.,* 52, 143 ; *we are betrayed by friends.*
**Virgīs caesī tribūnī ab lēgātō sunt,** L., XXIX. 18, 13 ; *the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

REMARKS.—1. Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives : **famē perīre,** C., *Inv.,* II. 57, 172, *to perish of hunger.* So **vēnīre,** *to be sold ;* **vāpulāre** (chiefly vulgar), *to be beaten,* ab aliquō, *by some one.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed :

**Vincī ā Voluptāte,** C., *Off.,* I. 20, 68 ; *to be overcome by Dame Pleasure.*
**Patriciīs iuvenibus saepserant latera,** L., III. 37, 6 ; *they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.*

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.

**Ā cane nōn māgnō saepe tenētur aper,** Ov., *Rem. Am.,* 422 ; *a boar is often held fast by a little dog.*

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.

Compare **equō vehī,** *to ride a horse* (*to be borne by a horse*), with **in equō,** *on horseback.*

**215.** The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.

1. With the Perfect passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

**Carmina nūlla mihī sunt scrīpta**, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 35 ; *poems—I have none written* (I have written no poems).

2. With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the rule.

**Nihil est hominī tam timendum quam invidia**, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7 ; *there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy.*

**216.** The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

**Alexander Dārēum vīcit**, *Alexander conquered Darius.*
**Dārēus ab Alexandrō victus est**, *Darius was conquered by Alexander.*

**217.** The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

Active :  **Miserī invident bonīs**, *The wretched envy the well-to-do.*
Passive : **mihī invidētur**, *I am envied,*
       **tibī invidētur**, *thou art envied,*
       **eī invidētur**, *he is envied,* ⎫
       **nōbīs invidētur**, *we are envied,*   **ab aliquō**, *by some one.*
       **vōbīs invidētur**, *you are envied,*
       **iīs invidētur**, *they are envied,* ⎭

**Nihil facile persuādētur invītīs**, Quint., iv. 3, 10 ; *people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.*

**Ānulīs nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur**, Sen., *Ben.*, iii. 15, 3 ; *our seals are more trusted than our souls.*

**218.** Reflexive.—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English :

**Omne animal sē ipsum dīligit**, C., *Fin.*, v. 9, 24; *Every living creature loves itself.*

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive is employed : **lavor**, *I bathe, I bathe myself.*

**Pūrgārī nequīvērunt**, Cf. L., xxiv. 18, 4 ; *they could not clear themselves.*

**219.** The passive in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself : **trahor,** *I let myself be dragged ;* **tondeor,** *I have myself shaved.*

Sine gemitū adūruntur, C., *Tusc.*, v. 27, 77 ; *they let themselves be burned without a moan.*

Ipse docet quid agam ; fās est et ab hoste docērī, Ov., *M.*, iv. 428 ; *he himself teaches (me) what to do ; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).*

**220.** DEPONENT.—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification : **hortor,** *I am exhorting* (trans.) ; **morior,** *I am dying* (intrans.).

**221.** RECIPROCAL.—Reciprocal relations (*" one another "*) are expressed by **inter,** *among,* and the personal pronouns, **nōs,** *us ;* **vōs,** *you ;* **sē,** *themselves.*

Inter sē amant, C., *Q.F.* iii. 3, 1 : *they love one another.*

## TENSES.

**222.** The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:
1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished.* The second tells whether the action is *past, present,* or *future.*

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

**223.** There are six tenses in Latin :
1. The *Present,* denoting *continuance* in the *present.*
2. The *Future,* denoting *continuance* in the *future.*
3. The *Imperfect,* denoting *continuance* in the *past.*
4. The *Perfect,* denoting *completion* in the *present.*
5. The *Future Perfect,* denoting *completion* in the *future.*
6. The *Pluperfect,* denoting *completion* in the *past.*

**224**. An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, *i.e.* as an *occurrence* without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*.

This is the *aoristic* or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Present and the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Present and Perfect.

**225**. The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

**226**.  Table of Temporal Relations.

### ACTIVE.

| | *Continuance.* | *Completion.* | *Attainment.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **scrībō,** | **scrīpsī,** | **scrībō,** |
| | *I am writing.* | *I have written.* | *I write.* |
| FUT. | **scrībam,** | **scrīpserō,** | **scrībam (scrīpserō),** |
| | *I shall be writing.* | *I shall have written.* | *I shall write.* |
| PAST. | **scrībēbam,** | **scrīpseram,** | **scrīpsī,** |
| | *I was writing.* | *I had written.* | *I wrote.* |

### PASSIVE.

| | *Continuance.* | *Completion.* | *Attainment.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **scrībitur (epistula),** | **scrīpta est,** | **scrībitur,** |
| | *The letter is written (writing).* | *has been written, is written.* | *is written.* |
| FUT. | **scrībētur,** | **scrīpta erit,** | **scrībētur,** |
| | *The letter will be written (writing).* | *will have been, will be written.* | *will be written.* |
| PAST. | **scrībēbātur,** | **scrīpta erat,** | **scrīpta est,** |
| | *The letter was written (writing).* | *had been written, was written.* | *was written.* |

REMARK.—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

*A letter was written :* { Continuance, *Some one was writing* a letter.
Completion, *Some one had written* a letter.
Attainment, *Some one wrote* a letter.

## Present Tense.

**227.** The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements *that apply to all time* (Universal Present).

Specific Present :

**Auribus teneō lupum,** TER., *Ph.,* 506 ; *I am holding a wolf by the ears.*

Universal Present :

**Probitās laudātur et alget,** JUV., I. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and freezes.*

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc. :

**Dē iuvenum amōre scrībit Alcaeus,** C., *Tusc.,* IV. 33, 71 ; *Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.*

REMARK.—1. The Pr. like the Impf. (233) is sometimes used of *attempted* or *intended* action (*Present of Endeavor*). But do not mistake the Endeavor that lies in the *verb* for the Endeavor that lies in the *tense.*

**Perīculum vītant,** C., *Rosc.Am.,* I. 1 ; *they are trying to avoid danger.*

2. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes *Resistance to Pressure* (233) ; this is, however, colloquial : **Tacĕ : nōn taceō,** PL., *Cas.,* 826 ; *keep quiet !* I WON'T.

**228.** The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future,* chiefly in compound sentences :

**Sī vincimus, omnia tūta erunt,** S., *C.,* 58, 9 ; *if we conquer (= shall have conquered) everything will be safe.*

**229.** The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present) :

**Cohortīs incēdere iubet,** S., *C.,* 60, 1 ; *he orders the cohorts to advance.*

**230.** The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued into the present,* especially with **iam,** *now ;* **iam diū,** *now for a long time ;* **iam prīdem,** *now long since.* In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

**Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat,** C., *Imp.,* 3, 7 ; *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

**Līberāre vōs ā Philippō iam diū magis vultis quam audētis,** L., XXXII. 21, 36 ; *you have this long time had the wish rather than* (= *though not*) *the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.*

"How does your honor for this many a day ?" SHAK., *Ham.,* III. I, 91.

## Imperfect Tense.

**231.** The Imperfect Tense denotes *continuance in the past :* **pūgnābam,** *I was fighting.*

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations ;* to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process ;* the Historical Perfect states the *result.* The Imperfect counts out the *items ;* the Historical Perfect gives the *sum.*

**232.** The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect :

**Verrēs in forum vēnit ; ārdēbant oculī ; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat,** C., *Verr.,* v. 62, 161 ; *Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

**233.** The Imperfect is used of *attempted* and *interrupted, intended* and *expected* actions (*Imperfect of Endeavor*).

It is the Tense of *Disappointment* and (with the negative) of *Resistance to Pressure.* (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

**Cūriam relinquēbat,** TAC., *Ann.,* II. 34, 1 ; *he was for leaving the senate-house.*

**Lēx abrogābātur,** *Cf.* L., XXXIV. I, 7 ; *the law was to be abrogated.*

**Aditum nōn dabat,** NEP., IV. 3, 3 ; *he* WOULD *not grant access* (**nōn dedit,** DID *not*).

8

REMARKS.—1. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

**Gorgiās centum et novem vīxit annōs,** QUINT., III. 1, 9 ; *Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.*

2. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (*Imperfect of Awakening*). Greek influence is not unlikely.

**Tū aderās,** TER., *Ph.*, 858 ; (so it turns out that) *you were here* (all the time).

**234.** The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation ; especially with **iam, iam diū, iam dūdum.**

**Iam dūdum tibi adversābar,** PL., *Men.*, 420 ; *I had long been opposing you.*

**Archiās domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēbat,** *Cf.* C., *Arch.*, 4, 7 ; *Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.*

REMARK.—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively *narrative*, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively *description*, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

## Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses :
1. Pure Perfect.      2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

### 1. PURE PERFECT.

**235.** The Pure Perfect Tense expresses *completion in the Present,* and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

**236.** The Pure Perfect is used :

1. Of an action that is now *over and gone.*

**Vīximus,** C., *Fam.*, XIV. 4, 5 ; *we have lived* (*life for us has been*).
**Fīlium ūnicum habeō, immo habuī,** TER., *Heaut.*, 94 ; *I have an only son—nay, have had an only son.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (*resulting condition*) :

**Āctumst, perīstī,** TER., *Eun.*, 54 ; *it is all over; you're undone.*
**Equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibī relīquī,** C., *Fam.*, XVI. 9, 3 ; *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundusium*—(they are still there).

Remark.—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present : **nōvī,** *I have become acquainted with, I know ;* **meminī,** *I have recalled, I remember ;* **ōdī,** *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate ;* **cōnsuēvī,** *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed, etc.*

**Ōdērunt hilarem trīstēs trīstemque iocōsī,** H., *Ep.,* i. 18, 89; *the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

**237.** As the Present stands for the Future (228), so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

**Brūtus sī cōnservātus erit, vīcimus,** C., *Fam.,* xii. 6, 2 ; *Brutus !—if* HE *is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.*

**238. Habeō** or **teneō,** *I hold, I have,* with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, lays peculiar stress on the *maintenance of the result.*

**Habeō statūtum,** *Cf.* C., *Verr.,* iii. 41, 95 ; *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.*

**Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī,** Mart., ii. 79, 2 ; *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

**239.** The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a *past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence.*

**Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī,** Suet., *Iul.,* 37 ; *I came, saw, overcame.*

**Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestīmenta mūtāvit, paulīsper commorātus est,** C., *Mil.,* 10, 28 ; *Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.*

**Gorgiās centum et novem vīxit annōs,** Quint., iii. 1, 9 ; *Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.*

**240.** The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

## Pluperfect Tense.

**241.** The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past,* and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used :

1. Of an action *just concluded* in the past.

**Modo Caesarem rēgnantem vīderāmus**, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 108 ; *we had just seen Caesar on the throne.*

2. Of an action that was *over and gone.*

**Fuerat inimīcus**, C., *Red. in Sen.*, 10, 26 ; *he had been my enemy.*

3. Of a *resulting condition* in the past.

**Massiliēnsēs portās Caesarī clauserant**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 34, 4 ; *the Marseillese had shut their gates against Caesar.* (Their gates were shut.)

REMARK.—When the Pf. is translated by an English Pr. (236, 2, R.), the Plupf. is translated by an English Imperfect : **nōveram**, *I had become acquainted with, I knew ;* **memineram**, *I remembered ;* **ōderam**, *I hated ;* **cōnsuēveram**, *I was accustomed, etc.*

## Future Tense.

**242.** The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future :* **scrībam**, *I shall be writing.*

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future : **scrībam**, *I shall write.*

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is often more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

**Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs**, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 9, 5 ; *so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.*

2. Observe especially the verbs **possum**, *I can*, and **volō**, *I will.*

**Ōderō sī poterō ; sī nōn, invītus amābō**, Ov., *Am.*, III. 11, 35 ; *I will hate if I shall be able (can) ; if not, I shall love against my will.*

**Quī adipīscī vēram glōriam volet, iūstitiae fungātur officiīs**, C., *Off.*, II. 13, 43 ; *whoso shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.*

**243.** The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

**Tū nihil dīcēs**, H., *A.P.*, 385 ; *you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing).*

**Cum volet, accēdēs ; cum tē vītābit, abībis**, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 529 ; *when she wants you, approach ; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.*

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

**Ita mē amābit Iūppiter**, PL., *Trin.*, 447 ; *so help me Jove !*

## Future Perfect Tense.

**244.** The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment ;* **fēcerō**, Ter., *Ph.,* 882 ; *I shall have done it,* or *I shall do it* (once for all) ; **prōfēcerit,** C., *Fin.,* III. 4, 14 ; *it will prove profitable.*

Remarks.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future : **nōverō,** *I shall know ;* **cōnsuēverō,** *I shall be accustomed ;* **Ōdero, sī poterō,** Ov., *Am.,* III. 11, 35 ; *I will hate if I can.*

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect ; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

**Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, ēius victōria erit,** L., XXIV. 38, 5 ; *who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.*

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in **volō,** *I will ;* **nōlō,** *I will not ;* **possum,** *I can ;* **licet,** *it is left free ;* **libet,** *it is agreeable ;* **placet,** *it is the pleasure ;* whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

**Sī potuerō, faciam vōbīs satis,** C., *Br.,* 5, 21; *if I can, I shall satisfy you.*

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment ; one action involves the other.

**Ea vitia quī fūgerit, is omnia ferē vitia vītāverit,** C., *Or.,* 69, 231 ; *he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.*

**245.** As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

**Dē tē tū vīderīs ; ego dē mē ipse profitēbor,** C., *Ph.,* II. 46, 118 ; *do you see to yourself ; I myself will define my position.*

## Periphrastic Tenses.

**246.** The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of **esse,** *to be,* with participles and verbal adjectives.   See 129.

### I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

**247.** The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of **esse** and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active.   The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency.*   Compare **amātor** and **amātūrus.**   The translation is very various :

1. **Scrīptūrus sum,** *I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*

2. **Scrīptūrus eram,** *I was about to write, etc.*

3. **Scrīptūrus fuī,** *I have been* or *was about to write* (often = *I should have written*).

4. **Scrīptūrus fueram,** *I had been about to write, etc.*

5. **Scrīptūrus erō,** *I shall be about to write, etc.*

6. **Scrīptūrus fuerō,** *I shall have made up my mind to write, etc.* (of course very rare).

1. **Fīet illud quod futūrum est,** C., *Div.,* II. 8, 21 ; *what is to be, will be.*

2. **Rēx nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat,** L., XXXVI. 43, 9 ; *the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.*

3. **Fascīs ipsī ad mē dēlātūrī fuērunt,** C., *Ph.,* XIV. 6, 15 ; *they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me.*

4. **Māior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginiēnsium fuerat,** L., XXII. 22, 19 ; *the Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.*

5. **Eōrum apud quōs aget aut erit āctūrus, mentēs sēnsūsque dēgustet,** C., *Or.,* I. 52, 223 ; *he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead.*

6. **Sapiēns nōn vīvet, sī fuerit sine homine vīctūrus,** SEN., *E.M.,* 9, 17 ; *The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.* (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)

REMARKS.—1. The forms with **sum, eram,** and the corresponding Subjv. forms with **sim, essem,** are much more common than those with **fuī,** *etc.,* probably for euphonic reasons.

2. The Subjv. and Inf. **scrīptūrus sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem, scrīptūrum esse, fuisse,** are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

## II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.
### A.—Of Future Relations.

**248.** The periphrases **futūrum esse** (more often **fore**) **ut,** (*that*) *it is to be that,* and **futūrum fuisse ut,** (*that*) *it was to be that,* with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive Active ; necessarily so when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with **īrī.**

**Spērō fore ut contingat id nōbīs,** C., *Tusc.,* I. 34, 82 ; *I hope that we shall have that good fortune.*

**In fātīs scrīptum Vēientēs habēbant fore ut ā Gallīs Rōma caperētur,** C., *Div.,* I. 44, 100 ; *the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would be taken by the Gauls.*

Remark.—**Posse**, *to be able*, and **velle**, *to will*, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of **posse** are often used instead. (656, R.)

**249**. In eō est,  *it is on the point,* } ut, *that* (*of*), with
  erat, } *was* (Impersonal), the Subjunctive.
  fuit, }

In eō erat ut Pausaniās comprehenderētur, NEP., IV. 5, 1 : *it was on the point that Pausanias should be* (*Pausanias was on the point of being*) *arrested.*

### B.—Of Past Relations.

**250**. The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with **sum**, *I am*, and **fuī**, *I have been, I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. **Eram**, *I was*, and **fueram**, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect ; and **erō**, *I shall be*, and **fuerō**, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

Remarks.—1. **Fuī** is the *favorite* form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective : **convīvium exōrnātum fuit**, *the banquet was furnished forth ;* **fuī** is the *necessary* form when the Pf. denotes that the action is over and gone : **amātus fuī**, *I have been loved* (but I am loved no longer).

**Arma quae fīxa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humī inventa**, C., *Div.*, I. 34, 74 ; *the arms which had been fastened to the walls, were found on the ground.*

**Quod tibĭ fuerit persuāsum, huĭc erit persuāsum**, C., *Rosc. Com.*, I, 3 ; *what is* (*shall have proved*) *acceptable to you will be acceptable to him.*

2. To be distinguished is that use of the Pf. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

**Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs**, CAES., *B.G.*, I, 1 : *Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts.*

### C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

**251**. I. The combination of the Tenses of **esse**, *to be*, with the Gerundive (verbal in **-ndus**), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of *necessity.*

**Praepōnenda est dīvitiĭs glōria**, C., *Top.*, 22, 84 ; *glory is to be preferred to riches.*

2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form.

**Parcendum est victīs,** *The vanquished must be spared.*

## TENSES IN LETTERS.

**252.** The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase **Nihil erat (habēbam) quod scrīberem,** *I have nothing to write.* This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

### Table of Permutations.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **scrībō,** | *I am writing,* | becomes | **scrībēbam.** |
| | *I write,* | " | **scrīpsī.** |
| **scrīpsī,** | *I have written,* | " | **scrīpseram.** |
| | *I wrote,* | " | **scrīpseram** or is unchanged. |
| **scrībam,** | *I shall write,* | " | **scrīptūrus eram.** |

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **herī,** | *yesterday,* | becomes | **prīdiē.** |
| **hodiē,** | *to-day,* | " | **quō diē hās litterās dedī, dabam.** |
| **crās,** | *to-morrow,* | " | **posterō diē, postrīdiē.** |
| **nunc,** | *now,* | " | **tum.** |

**Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam,** C.. *Att.,* VII. 15, 3 ; *I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiae.*

**Litterās eram datūrus postrīdiē eī quī mihī prīmus obviam vēnisset,** C., *Att.,* II. 12, 4 ; *I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

## MOODS.

**253.** Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :

1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

Note.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

## The Indicative Mood.

**254.** The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power, obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts;* whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize.*

Such expressions are : **dēbeō,** *I ought, it is my duty;* **oportet,** *it behooves;* **necesse est,** *it is absolutely necessary;* **possum,** *I can, I have it in my power;* **convenit,** *it is fitting;* **pār, aequum est,** *it is fair;* **īnfīnītum,** *endless;* **difficile,** *hard to do;* **longum,** *tedious;* and many others ; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

**Possum persequī permulta oblectāmenta rērum rūsticārum,** C., *Cat.M.,* 16, 55 ; *I might rehearse very many delights of country life.*

Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of **dēbeō, possum, oportet,** *etc.*

**Ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat,** C., *Cat.,* I. 1, 2 ; *it behooved you to be (you ought to have been) led to execution* (you were not).

**Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōsior esse,** C., *Fam.,* XIV. 16 ; *it was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you.*

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment (233) is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things : **dēbēbam,** *I ought* (but do not) ; **poterās,** *you could* (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

**Poteram morbōs appellāre, sed nōn convenīret ad omnia,** C., *Fin.,* III. 10, 35 ; *I might translate* (that Greek word) *"diseases," but that would not suit all the cases* (**poteram sī convenīret**).

3. The Impf. Indic. is sometimes used in unreal conditional Apodoses like the Periphrastic Impf. and the Plupf. like the Periphrastic Plupf. : so **lābēbar = lāpsūrus eram ; vīcerāmus = victūrī fuerāmus.** (See 597, R. 2.)

4. In general relative expressions, such as **quisquis,** *no matter who,* **quotquot,** *no matter how many,* and all forms in **-cumque, -ever,** the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent : **quisquis est,** *no matter who he is, be, may be;* **quālecumque est,** *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.*

**Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs,** V., *A.,* II. 49 ; *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.*

## Subjunctive Mood.

**255.** The Subjunctive Mood represents the Predicate *as
an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind.

REMARK.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the
auxiliary verbs *may, can, must, might, could, would, should.* When
these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power, obliga-
tion* and *necessity,* they are represented in Latin by the corresponding
verbs, thus : *may, can, might, could* by the forms of **posse**, to be *able*,
**licet**, *it is left free ; will* and *would* by **velle**, *to will, to be willing ; must*,
by **dēbeō** or **oportet** (of moral obligation), by **necesse est** (of absolute
obligation).

**256.** 1. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*,
or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal
Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect
Tenses ; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Im-
perfect and Pluperfect.

2. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. In the first case
the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case
Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indica-
tive, from which it differs in tone ; the Optative Subjunc-
tive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

### Potential Subjunctive.

**257.** 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion
of the speaker as an opinion based on the character of the
action. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral cer-
tainty, from " may " and " might " to " must." The
negative is the negative of the Indicative, **nōn**.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present
or Perfect Subjunctive. The proof of the action is in
suspense, and so future ; the action itself may be present
or future : with Perfect sometimes past.

**Velim**, *I should wish ;* **nōlim**, *I should be unwilling ;* **mālim**, *I should
prefer ;* **dīcās**, *you would say ;* **crēdās**, *you would believe, you must be-
lieve ;* **dīcat aliquis**, *some one may undertake to say ;* **dīxerit aliquis**,
*some one may go so far as to say, may prove to have said.*

**Caedī dīscipulōs minimē velim**, QUINT., I. 3, 13 ; *I should by no means
like pupils to be flogged.*

**Tū Platŏnem nec nimis valdē nec nimis saepe laudāverĭs**, C., *Leg.*, III. 1, 1 ; *you can't praise Plato too much nor too often.*

**258.** The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

**Vellem**, *I should have wished ;* **nōllem**, *I should have been unwilling ;* **māllem**, *I should have preferred* (it is too late).

**Crēderēs victōs**, L., II. 43, 9 ; *you would, might, have thought them beaten.*

**Mīrārētur quī tum cerneret**, L., XXXIV. 9, 4 ; *any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

**259.** The Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

**Quis dubitet** (= **nēmŏ dubitet**) **quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint ?** C., *Parad.*, VI. 2, 48 ; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue ?* (No one.)

**Quis tulerit Gracchōs dē sēditiōne querentēs ?** JUV., II. 24 ; *who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion ?* (No one.)

## Optative Subjunctive.

**260.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood. The negative is **nē**.

The Pr. and Pf. Subjv. are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish ; the Impf. and Plupf. are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Pf. is rare and old.

**Stet haec urbs**, C., *Mil.*, 34, 93 ; *may this city continue to stand !*

**Ita dī faxint** (= **fēcerint**), PL., *Poen.*, 911 ; *the gods grant it !*

**Nē istuc Iūppiter optimus māximus sīrit** (= **sīverit**) **!** L., XXXIV. 24, 2 ; *may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not !*

**261.** The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes **utinam**, *would that;* **utinam nē**, **utinam nōn**, *would that . . . not.* **Ō sī**, *oh if*, is poetical and very rare; **ut** is mainly archaic.

**Valeās beneque ut tibi sit**, PL., *Poen.*, 912 ; *farewell ! God bless you !*

**Utinam revīvīscat frāter !** GELL., X. 6, 2 ; *would that my brother would come to life again !*

**Illud utinam nē vērē scrīberem**, C., *Fam.*, V. 17, 3 ; *would that what I am writing were not true !*

**Utinam susceptus nōn essem**, C., *Att.*, III. 11, 8 ; *would I had not been born !*

**Ō mihi praeteritōs referat sī Iūppiter annōs**, V., *A.*, VIII. 560 ; *O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by !*

REMARK.—For the wish with adverse decision, **vellem** and **māllem** (theoretically also **nōllem**) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially **vellem**) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

**Vellem adesse posset Panaetius !** C., *Tusc.*, I. 33, 81 ; *would that Panaetius could be present !*

**Vellem mē ad cēnam invītāssēs**, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 ; *would that you had invited* ME *to your dinner-party.*

So **velim, nōlim**, *etc.*, for the simple wish (546, R. 2).

**Tuam mihī darī velim ēloquentiam**, C., *N.D.*, II. 59, 147 ; *I could wish your eloquence given to me.*

**262.** The Optative Subjunctive is used in *asseverations :*

**Ita vīvam ut māximōs sūmptūs faciō**, C., *Att.*, V. 15, 2 ; *as I live* (literally, *so may I live as*), *I am making very great outlay.*

**Moriar, sī magis gaudērem sī id mihī accidisset**, C., *Att.*, VIII. 6, 3 ; *may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to me.*

**263.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Imperative :*

1. In the First Person Plural Present, which has no Imperative form :

**Amēmus patriam**, C., *Sest.*, 68, 143 ; *let us love our country.*

**Nē difficilia optēmus**, C., *Verr.*, IV. 7, 15 ; *let us not desire what is hard to do.*

2. In the Second Person.

(*a*) In the Present chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary " you " :

**Istō bonō ūtāre, dum adsit, cum absit, nē requīrās**, C., *Cat. M.*, 10, 33 ; *you must enjoy that blessing so long as 'tis here, when it is gone you must not pine for it.*

(*b*) In the Perfect negatively :

**Nē trānsierīs Hibērum**, L., XXI. 44, 6 ; *do not cross the Ebro.*

**Nē vōs mortem timuerītis**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 41, 98 ; *have no fear of death !*

3. In the Third Person Present (regularly) :

**Suum quisque nōscat ingenium**, C., *Off.*, I. 31, 114 ; *let each one know his own mind.*

**Dōnīs impiī nē plācāre audeant deōs**, C., *Leg.*, II. 16, 41 ; *let the wicked not dare to try to appease the gods with gifts.*

**264.** The Subjunctive is used as a *Concessive* :

**Sit fūr**, C., *Verr.*, V. 1, 4 ; *(granted that) he be a thief.*

**Fuerit malus cīvis**, C., *Verr.*, I. 14, 37 ; *(suppose) that he was a bad citizen.*

For other examples with **ut** and **nē**, see 608.

**265.** The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (**cōniūnctīvus dēlīberātīvus**).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

**Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crūdēlitātem**, C., *Verr.*, I. 47, 122 ; *shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty ?*

**Māgna fuit contentiō utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam īrent hostibus**, NEP., I. 4, 4 ; *there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy.* (**Utrum nōs dēfendāmus an obviam eāmus ?**)

### Imperative Mood.

**266.** The Imperative is the mood of the will. Its tone varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

**Abī in malam rem**, PL., *Capt.*, 877 ; *go to the mischief.*
**Compēsce mentem**, H., *O.*, I. 16, 22 ; *curb your temper.*
**Dā mihī hōc, mel meum!** PL., *Trin.*, 244 ; *give me this, honey dear !*

**267.** The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person ; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form : so **scītō**, *know thou ;* **mementō**, *remember thou ;* **habētō**, in the sense of *know, remember.*

**268.** 1. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative) :

*Special :* **Patent portae ; proficīscere**, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10 ; *open stand the gates ; depart.*

*General :* **Iūstitiam cole et pietātem**, C., *Rep.*, VI. 16, 16 ; *cultivate justice and piety.*

2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like ; likewise in familiar language.

Cōnsulēs nēminī pārentō, C., *Leg.*, III. 3, 8 ; *the consuls shall obey no one.*

Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus īdem est, II., *Ep.*, I. 18, 69 ; *avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

(269) **270.** NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē** (**nēve, neu**), which is found with the Second Imperative ; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō nēve ūritō, C., *Leg.*, II. 23, 58 ; *one shall not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.*

Tū nē cēde malīs, sed contrā audentior ītō, V., *A.*, VI. 95 ; *yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn** may be used to negative a single word :

Opus poliat līma, nōn exterat, *Cf.* QUINT., X. 4, 4 ; *let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.*

2. Instead of **nē** with the First Imperative was employed either **nōlī** with the Infinitive (271, 2) : or occasionally **nē** with the Pf. Subjv. (263, 2, *b*). The Pr. Subjv. with **nē** is the Ideal Second Person ; see 263, 2, *a*.

**271.** PERIPHRASES.—1. For the *Positive Imperative* may be used **cūrā** (**cūrātō**) **ut**, *take care that ;* **fac** (**facitō**) **ut**, *cause that ;* **fac** (**facitō**), *do,* with the Subjunctive.

Cūrā ut quam prīmum (303) veniās, C., *Fam.*, IV. 10, 1 ; *manage to come as soon as possible.*

Fac cōgitēs, C., *Fam.*, XI. 3, 4 ; *do reflect !*

2. For the *Negative Imperative* (Prohibitive) **nōlī**, *be unwilling,* with Infinitive is the rule :

Cavē and cavē (cavētō) nē, *beware lest,* and also **fac nē**, *do not,* with the Subjunctive are also found.

Nōlī verberāre lapidem, PL., *Curc.*, 197 ; *don't beat a stone.*

Cavē fēstīnēs, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 12, 6 ; *do not be in a hurry.*

Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs hōc tempore, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 11, 1 ; *see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.*

**272.** REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed :

(*a*) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
(*b*) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (243).
(*c*) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).

2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed :

(*a*) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 2, *a*).
(*b*) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 2).
(*c*) The Second Person of the Future, with **nōn** (243).
(*d*) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with **nē** (263, 3).

REMARK.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on *the continuance of the action;* the Pf., when stress is laid on the *completion.* Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

**Dōtem darētis ;** quaereret alium virum, TER., *Ph.,* 297 ; *you should have given her a portion ; she should have sought another match.*

**Nē popōscissēs librōs,** C., *Att.,* II. 1, 3 ; *you ought not to have asked for the books.*

**273.** Passionate questions are equivalent to a command :

**Nōn tacēs ?** PL., *Am.,* 700 ; *won't you hold your tongue ?*
**Quīn tū tacēs ?** PL., *Men.,* 561 : *why don't you hold your tongue ?*

## (274) 275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.

| Positive. | | Negative. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | SECOND PERSON. | |
| **audī,** | *hear thou,* | **nōlī audīre,** *hear not.* | |
| | | **nē audīverīs** (occasional). | |
| **audītō** | (legal or contingent), | **nē audītō** | (legal). |
| **audiās** | (ideal 2nd Person chiefly), | **nē audiās** | (ideal 2nd Pers. chiefly). |
| **audiēs** | (familiar), | **nōn audiēs** | (familiar). |
| | | **nē audī** | (poetic). |
| | | THIRD PERSON. | |
| **audiat,** | *let him hear.* | **nē audiat,** *let him not hear.* | |
| | | **nē audīverit.** | |
| **audītō** | (legal), | **nē audītō** | (legal). |

## Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

**276.** THE INDICATIVE.—The tenses of the Indicative alone express with uniform directness the period of time.

**277.** THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjuctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive have a Future force because the Future alone can tell whether the action is realized. . The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive ; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat, *he may believe* (now *or* hereafter).
Crēdiderit, *let him have had the belief* (heretofore), *he may have come to the belief* (now), *he may come to the belief* (hereafter).

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, R. 3) ; otherwise the tenses of the Subjunctive represent corresponding tenses of the Indicative according to the law of sequence (509).

**278.** The IMPERATIVE is necessarily Future.

**279.** The INFINITIVE has two uses :

1. Its use as a Substantive.

2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

**280.** *The Infinitive as a Substantive.*—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)

1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with *continued* action.

(*a*) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 422, 424.)

**Quibusdam tōtum hōc displicet philosophārī,** C., *Fin.*, I. 1, 1 ; *to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.*

(*b*) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (often called Auxiliary Verbs, see 423.)

**Catō servīre quam pūgnāre māvult,** C., *Att.*, VII. 15, 2 ; *Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).*

**2.** The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment.*

(*a*) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

**Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est,** Ov., *M.*, IX. 5 ; *'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

(*b*) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active in prose, except after **velle,** *to wish.*

**Nēminem notā strēnuī aut īgnāvī mīlitis notāsse voluī,** L., XXIV. 16, 11; *I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

In the poets it is not uncommon, perhaps for metrical reasons ; but it occurs usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, **voluī,** *etc.*, **potuī, dēbueram (dēbuī).**

**Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposuisse Olympō,** H., *O.*, III. 4, 52 ; *the brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus for good and all.*

(*c*) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired. See 537.

**Patriam exstinctam cupit,** C., *Fin.*, IV. 24. 66 ; *he desires his country blotted out.*

Here the Infinitive **esse** is seldom expressed.

**281.** *The Infinitive as the representative of the Indicative.*—As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses : Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

1. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence : the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense :

> **Dīcō eum venīre,** *I say that he is coming.*
> **Dīcēbam eum venīre,** *I said that he was coming.*

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *prior action*—hence : the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense :

> **Dīcō eum vēnisse,** *I say that he came, has come, used to come.*
> **Dīxī eum vēnisse,** *I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

REMARK.—**Meminī,** *I remember*, when used of *personal experience*, commonly takes the Present.

> **Tum mē rēgem appellārī ā vōbīs meminī, nunc tyrannum vocārī videō,** L., XXXIV. 31, 13 ; *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.*

When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience.

> **Mē meminī īrātum dominae turbāsse capillōs,** Ov., *A.A.*, II. 169 ; *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.*

3. The Future Infinitive represents *subsequent action :*

> **Dīcō eum ventūrum [esse],** *I say that he will come.*
> **Dīxī eum ventūrum [esse],** *I said that he would come.*

**282.** The Present Participle active denotes *continuance ;* the Perfect passive, *completion* or *attainment.* See 665.

REMARK.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present, as **ratus,** *thinking ;* **veritus,** *fearing ;* **gāvīsus,** *rejoicing, etc.*

**283.** The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum,** *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations ; such as, Time, Cause, Condition, and Concession ; especially Purpose after a verb of Motion. See 670.

## SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

**284.** The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

### A.

### 1. Multiplication of the Subject.

#### Concord.

**285.** NUMBER.—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number :

**Pater et māter mortuī sunt,** TER., *Eun.*, 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important : "My flesh and my heart *faileth,*" PSA., LXXIII. 26.

**Aetās et fōrma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōciōrem facit,** L., XXXI. 18, 3 ; *your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb : "When distress and anguish *cometh* upon you," PROV., I. 27.

**Religiō et fidēs antepōnātur amīcitiae,** C., *Off.,* III. 10, 46 ; *let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union : "Your gold and silver *is* cankered," JAS., v. 3.

**Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit,** C., *Fam.,* v. 8, 2 ; *the senate and people of Rome perceives* (= *Rome perceives*).

**286.** GENDER.—When the genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender ; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the *strongest* gender or the *nearest.*

1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest ; in things without life, the neuter.

(*a*) The strongest :

**Pater et māter mortuī sunt,** TER., *Eun.,* 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

**Mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant,** L., XXXII. 29, 1 ; *wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

(*b*) The nearest :

**Convicta est Messālīna et Sīlius,** *Cf.* TAC., *Ann.,* XII. 65 ; *Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.*

2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

(*a*) Both as persons :

**Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profectī sunt,** L., XXI. 50, 11 ; *the king and the king's fleet set out.*

(*b*) Both as things :

**Nātūrā inimīca sunt lībera cīvitās et rēx,** *Cf.* L., XLIV. 24, 2 ; *a free state and a king are enemies by nature.*

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, R. 4).

**Stultitiam et intemperantiam dīcimus esse fugienda,** C., *Fin.,* III. 11, 39 ; *folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided.*

**287.** PERSONS.—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third :

**Sī tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus,** C., *Fam.,* XIV. 5, 1; *if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well.*

REMARKS.—(*a*) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.

**Et ego et Cicerō meus flāgitābit,** C., *Att.,* IV. 18, 5 ; *my Cicero will demand it and (so will) I.*

(*b*) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness : **Ego et uxor mea,** *Wife and I.*

## 2. Qualification of the Subject.

**288.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character. The chief forms of the attribute are :

I. The adjective and its equivalents : **amīcus certus,** *a sure friend.*

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are :

1. The pronouns **hīc,** *this,* **ille,** *that,* etc.

2. Substantives denoting *rank, age, trade :* **servus homŏ,** *a slave person ;* **homŏ senex,** *an old fellow ;* **mulier ancilla,** *a servant-wench.*

3. The Genitive of quality (365).

4. The Ablative of quality (400).

5. Preposition and case : **excēssus ē vītā,** *departure from life.*

6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles : **rēctē facta,** *good actions.*

7. Relative clauses (624).

II. The substantive in apposition : **Cicerō ōrātor,** *Cicero the orator.*

## I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

### Concord.

**289.** The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case :

| GENDER. | NUMBER. |
|---|---|
| **Vir sapiēns**, *a wise man,* | **virī sapientēs**, *wise men.* |
| **Mulier pulchra**, *a beautiful woman,* | **mulierēs pulchrae**, *beautiful women.* |
| **Rēgium dōnum**, *royal gift,* | **rēgia dōna**, *royal gifts.* |

CASE.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Virī sapientis**, *of a wise man.* | **bone fīlī !** *good son !* |
| **Mulierī pulchrae**, *for a beautiful woman.* | **rēgiō dōnō**, *by royal gift.* |
| **Virum sapientem**, *wise man.* | **mulierēs pulchrās**, *beautiful women.* |

**290.** The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest ; rarely with the most important.

**Volusēnus, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis**, CAES., *B. G.*, III. 5, 2 ; *Volusenus, a man of great wisdom and valor.*

**Cūncta maria terraeque patēbant**, S., *C.*, 10, 1 ; *all seas and lands lay open.*

REMARKS.—1. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive.

**Semprōniae multae facētiae, multusque lepōs inerat**, S., *C.*, 25, 5 ; *Sempronia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk.*

2. When a substantive is construed with several *similar* adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position :

**Quārta et Mārtia legiōnēs**, C., *Fam.*, XI. 19, 1, but **Legiō Mārtia quārtaque**, C., *Ph.*, v. 17, 46, *The fourth and Martian legions.*

**291.** *Position of the Attribute.*—1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it.

1. **Fugitīvus servus**, *a runaway slave* (one complex).

2. **Servus fugitīvus**, *a slave* (that is) *a runaway* (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as **cīvis Rōmānus**, *Roman citizen ;* **populus Rōmānus**, *people of Rome.*

Compare *body politic, heir apparent* in English.

REMARKS.—1. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus **rēs bonae,** *good things;* **bonae rēs,** *articles of value,* or *good circumstances;* **rēs urbānae,** *city matters;* **urbānae rēs,** *witticisms;* **mēnsa secunda,** *a second table;* **secunda mēnsa,** *dessert.*

2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantive : **summa aqua,** *the surface of the water;* **summus mōns,** *the top of the mountain;* **vēre prīmō, prīmō vēre,** *in the beginning of spring.* Similarly **in mediā urbe,** *in the midst of the city;* **reliqua, cētera Graecia,** *the rest of Greece,* and the like.

2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

**Dīvitiae, nōmen, opēs vacuae cōnsiliō dēdecoris plēnae sunt,** C., *Rep.,* I. 34, 51 ; *riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonor.*

For examples of the other positions see 290.

## Numerals.

**292. Duo** means simply *two,* **ambō,** *both* (two considered together), **uterque,** *either* (two considered apart, as, "They crucified two other with him, on either side one," JOHN, XIX. 18) :

**Supplicātiō ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utrīque dēcrētus est,** L., XXVIII. 9, 9 ; *a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed.*

REMARK.—**Uterque** is seldom Pl., except of sets : so with **plūrālia tantum.**

**Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 50, 1 ; *Caesar led his forces out of either camp.*

On **uterque** with the Pl., see 211, R. 1; with Gen., see 371, R.

**293. Mīlle,** *a thousand,* is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive : **mīlle mīlitēs,** rather than **mīlle mīlitum,** *a thousand soldiers;* in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive : **duo mīlia mīlitum,** *two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers.* If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number ; see the following examples :

3500 *cavalry.* { tria mīlia quīngentī equitēs,
tria mīlia equitum et quīngentī, but
equitēs tria mīlia quīngentī, or
equitum tria mīlia quīngentī.

But **duo mīlia quīngentī hostium periēre,** L., XXII. 7, 3 ; *2500 of the enemy perished.*

**294.** ORDINALS.—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English : thus always in dates : **annō ducentēsimō quārtō,** *in the year 204.* Sometimes they are carelessly used for the cardinals :

**Quattuor annī sunt, ex quō tē nōn vīdī,**
*It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).*
**Quārtus annus est, ex quō tē nōn vīdī,**
*It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).*

**295.** DISTRIBUTIVES.—The distributives are used wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

**Bis bīna quot sunt ?** C., *N.D.,* II. 18, 49 ; *how many are twice two ?*
**Scrīptum eculeum cum quīnque pedibus, pullōs gallīnāceōs trīs cum ternīs pedibus nātōs esse,** L., XXXII. 1, 11 ; *a letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet,* (and) *three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).*

## Comparatives and Superlatives.

**296.** COMPARATIVE.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with **quam,** *than,* or in the Ablative :

**Īgnōrātiō futūrōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia,** C., *Div.,* II. 9, 23 ; *ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).*
**Nihil est virtūte amābilius,** C., *Lael.,* 8, 28 ; *nothing is more lovable than virtue.*

REMARKS.—1. (*a*) The Abl. is used only when the word with **quam** would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

**Caesar minor est** { **quam Pompēius,** } *Caesar is younger than Pompey.*
{ **Pompēiō,** }

**Caesarem plūs amāmus,** { **quam Pompēium,** } *we love Caesar more than*
{ **Pompēiō,** } *Pompey.*

In the second example the adverb makes the Ablative construction ambiguous, for **plūs Pompēiō** may mean *"more than Pompey does."* Hence the comparative adverb with the Abl. is avoided in careful prose.

(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., **quam** is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

**Ānulīs nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēditur**, SEN., *Ben.*, III. 15, 3 ; *our seals are* (217) *more trusted than our souls.*

2. The Abl. is very common in negative sentences and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

**Polybium sequāmur, quō nēmŏ fuit dīligentior**, C., *Rep.*, II. 14, 27 ; *let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful.*

3. Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (403).

4. **Quam** is often omitted after **plūs**, **amplius**, *more*, and **minus**, *less*, and the like, without affecting the construction :

**Plūs quīngentōs colaphōs īnfrēgit mihĭ**, TER., *Ad.*, 199 ; *he has dealt me more than five hundred boxes on the ear.*

**Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 38, 5 ; *the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.*

But the normal construction is not excluded :

**Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā**, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 19, 1 ; *a swamp not broader than fifty feet* (or **pedēs quīnquāgintā**).

5. Age may be variously stated ; thus, *more than thirty years old* may be :

1. **Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.**   3. **Māior (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.**
2. **Nātus plūs trīgintā annīs** (rare).   4. **Māior trīgintā annīs (nātus).**
<div align="center">5. <b>Māior trīgintā annōrum.</b></div>

**297.** *Standard of Comparison omitted.*—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied : 1. By the context ; 2. By the usual or proper standard ; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context :

**Solent rēges Persārum plūrēs uxōrēs habēre**, *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, III. 33, 76 ; *the kings of Persia usually have more wives* [than one].

2. By the proper standard :

**Senectūs est nātūrā loquācior**, C., *Cat.M.*, 16, 55 ; *old age is by nature rather* (or *too*) *talkative.*

3. By the opposite :

**Quiēsse erit melius**, L., III. 48, 3 ; *it will be better to be-perfectly-quiet* (than to make a disturbance).

**298.** *Disproportion.*—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with **quam prō**, *than for*, and the Ablative; or with **quam ut**, *than that* or **quam quī**, *than who*, and the Subjunctive:

Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit, L., x. 14, 21 ; *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory.*

Quis nōn intellegit Canachī sīgna rigidiōra esse quam ut imitentur vēritātem ?* C., *Br.*, 18, 70 ; *who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth (of nature)?*

Māior sum quam cuī possit Fortūna nocēre, Ov., *M.*, vi. 195 ; *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

**299.** *Two Qualities compared.*—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive, or a double comparative:

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiēns, C., *Att.*, x. 1, 4 ; *your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.*

Acūtiōrem sē quam ōrnātiōrem vult, C., *Opt. Gen.*, 2, 6 ; *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.*

**300.** *Restriction to the Comparative.*—The Latin uses the Comparative more exactly than the English. So regularly when only two objects are compared.

Nātū māior, *the eldest* (of two), *the elder;* nātū minor, *the youngest, the younger.* **Prior**, *the first;* posterior, *the last.*

Posteriōrēs cōgitātiōnēs, ut āiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse, C., *Ph.*, xii. 2, 5 ; *afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.*

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative **uter**, *which of two ? (whether ?)* : Ex duōbus uter dīgnior ? ex plūribus, quis dīgnissimus ? QUINT., vii. 4, 21 ; *of two, which is the worthier ? of more (than two), which is the worthiest ?*

**301.** *Comparative Strengthened.* The comparative is often strengthened by the insertion of **etiam**, *even;* adhūc, *still;* multō, *(by) much;* longē, *far :*

Dīc etiam clārius, C., *Verr.*, iii. 75, 175 ; *speak even more clearly !*

**302.** *Superlative.*—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons :

Quīntus Fabius Māximus, *Quintus Fabius the Great.*

Māximō impetū māiōre fortūnā, L., xxviii. 36, 2 ; *with great vigor, with greater luck.*

**303.** *Superlative Strengthened.*—The superlative is strengthened by **multō,** (*by*) *much ;* **longē,** *by far ;* **vel,** *even ;* **ūnus, ūnus omnium,** *one above all others.*

**Prōtagorās sophistēs illīs temporibus vel māximus,** C., *N.D.,* I. 23, 63 ; *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist in those times.*

**Urbem ūnam mihī amīcissimam dēclīnāvī,** C., *Planc.,* 41, 97 ; *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.*

**Quam** (with or without a form of **possum**) and the superlative is the regular form for *as—as possible.*

**Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit,** CAES., *B.G.,* V. 49, 7 ; *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.*

## PRONOUNS.

### 1. Personal Pronouns.

**304.** 1. The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb ; see 207.

2. The Genitive forms, **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** are used mainly as *Objective* Genitives.

**Mārcellīnus sē ācerrimum tuī dēfēnsōrem fore ostendit,** C., *Fam.,* I. 1, 2 ; *Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender.*

REMARK.—The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive : **Vester cōnspectus reficit et recreat mentem meam,** C., *Planc.,* 1, 2 ; *the sight of you refreshes and renews my spirits.*

"If I be a master, where is my fear ? " MAL., I. 6.

3. The Genitive forms, **nostrum** and **vestrum,** are used *partitively* ; see 364, R.

**Tē ad mē venīre uterque nostrum cupit,** C., *Att.,* XIII. 33, 2 ; *each of us two desires that you should come to me.*

### 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

**305. Hīc,** *this* (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker,* and may mean :

1. The Speaker himself : **hīc homŏ = ego,** PL., *Trin.,* 1115.

2. His friends : **sī ego hōs nōvī,** *if I know these men* (= my friends, the Gentlemen of the Jury).

3. His subject : **hīc sapiēns dē quō loquor,** C., *Ac.,* II. 33, 105 ; *this* (imaginary) *wise man of whom I am speaking.*

4. His hobby : **hōc studium,** *this pursuit of mine, of ours.*

5. That which has just been mentioned : **haec hāctenus,** *these things thus far = so much for that.*

6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned : **hīs con-diciōnibus,** *on the following terms.*

7. The current period of time : **hīc diēs,** *to-day ;* **haec nox,** *the night just past* or *just coming ;* **hīc mēnsis,** *the current month.*

**306. Iste,** *that* (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person) :

**Adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt,** C., *Cat.*, I. 7, 16 ; *at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.*

**307. Ille,** *that* (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker,* and is often used in contrast to **hīc,** *this.*

**Catulus nōn antīquō illō mōre sed hōc nostrō ērudītus,** C., *Br.*, 35, 132 ; *Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time* (**illō**) *but by the standard of to-day* (**hōc**).

**Ille** may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**) : **illud quod initiō vōbīs prōposuī,** C., *Font.*, 7, 17 ; *that which I propounded to you at first.*

2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) : **tēstula illa,** *that* (notorious) *potsherd = institution of ostracism ;* **illud Solōnis,** *that* (famous saying) *of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled : **illud imprīmīs mīrābile,** *that* (which I am going to remind you of) *is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected :

**Illa diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam,** Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 2, 73 ; *the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.*

REMARKS.—1. **Hīc** and **ille** are used together in contrasts : as, *the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

(*a*) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed : **hīc,** *the latter ;* **ille,** *the former.*

**Īgnāvia corpus hebetat, labor fīrmat ; illa mātūram senectūtem, hīc longam adolēscentiam reddit,** CELS., I. 1 : *laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it ; the one* (the former) *hastens old age, the other* (the latter) *prolongs youth.*

(*b*) When the former is the more important, **hīc** is *the former,* **ille,** *the latter :*

**Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria ; haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū est,** L., XXX. 30, 19 ; *better and safer is certain peace than hoped for victory ; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.*

**2. Hǐc et ille ; ille et ille ; ille aut ille,** *this man and* (or) *that man =* *one or two.*

**Nōn dīcam hōc sīgnum ablātum esse et ǐllud ; hōc dīcō, nūllum tē sīgnum relīquisse,** C., *Verr.,* I. 20, 53 ; *I will not say that this statue was taken off and that ;* (what) *I say* (is) *this, that you left no statue at all.*

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of **hǐc, iste, ille** : **hǐc,** *here* (where I am) ; **hinc,** *hence* (from where I am) ; **hūc,** *hither* (where I am); **istǐc,** *there* (where you are); **illǐc,** *there* (where he is), *etc.*

## 3.  Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

**308. Is,** *that,* is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person.   It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative :

**Mihǐ vēnit obviam tuus puer ; is mihǐ litterās abs tē reddidit,** C., *Att.,* II. 1, 1 ; *I was met by your servant ; he delivered to me a letter from you.*

**Is minimō eget mortālis quī minimum cupit,** SYRUS, 286 (Fr.) ; *that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

REMARKS.—1. **Is,** as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

**Bis dat quī dat celeriter,** SYRUS, 235 (Fr.) ; *he gives twice who gives in a trice.*

Often it has the force of **tālis** (631, 1) in this connection :

**Ego is sum quī nihil umquam meā potius quam meōrum cīvium causā fēcerim,** C., *Fam.,* V. 21, 2 ; *I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.*

2. **Is,** with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis.  Such expressions are : **et is, atque is, isque,** *and he too, and that too ;* **neque is, et is nōn,** *and he not ; and that not ;* **sed is,** *but he.*

**Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antīqua,** C., *Verr.,* III. 90, 210 : *we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.*

3. **Is** does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of.*  In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

**Nōn iūdiciō dīscipulōrum dīcere dēbet magister sed dīscipulī magistrī,** QUINT., II. 2, 13 ; *the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils ; but the pupils according to that of the master.*

**Nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere,** C., *Tusc.,* I. 19, 43 ; *there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.*

**Coelius tribūnal suum iūxtā Trebōnī sellam collocāvit,** CAES., *B.C.*, III. 20, 1 : *Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Trebonius.*

Of course **hīc, ille,** and **iste** can be used with the Gen. in their proper sense.

**309.** REFLEXIVE. Instead of forms of **is,** the Reflexive Pronoun **suī, sibī, sē,** together with the Possessive of the Reflexive **suus, sua, suum** is used. (See 521.)

1. *Regularly* when reference is made to the *grammatical* subject of the sentence.

**Ipse sē quisque dīligit quod sibī quisque cārus est,** C., *Lael.*, 21, 80 ; *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.*

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

**Contentum suīs rēbus esse māximae sunt dīvitiae,** C., *Par.*, VI. 3, 51 ; *to be content with one's own things (what one hath) is the greatest riches.*

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep *himself* unspotted from the world." JAMES, I. 27.

2. *Frequently* when reference is made to the *actual* subject (521, R. 2) :

**Ōsculātur tigrim suus cūstōs,** SEN., *E.M.*, 85, 41 ; *her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper).*

This is especially common with **suus,** which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense : *own, peculiar, proper.*

3. **Suī, sibī, sē** are the reflexive of the Infinitive and its equivalents.

**Rōmānī suī colligendī hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt,** CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to get themselves together, to rally.*

**Sē** is also used with prepositions **ergā, inter, propter, per** in reflexive or emphatic phrases ; as **inter sē,** *among one another,* **per sē,** *by itself.*

4. **Suus** is also used in prepositional phrases, especially after **cum** and **inter** ; more rarely after **in, intrā,** and **ad.**

**Māgōnem cum clāsse suā in Hispāniam mittunt,** L., XXIII. 32, 11; *they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain.*

So the phrases **suō tempore,** *at the right time ;* **suō locō,** *at the right place.*

**Cōmoediae quem ūsum in puerīs putem suō locō dīcam,** QUINT., I. 8. 7; *what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

**310.** **Īdem,** *the same,* serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing; it is often to be translated by *at the same time; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.*

**Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus,** NEP., V. 3, 1 ; *Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.*

**Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es īdem,** MART., XII. 47, 1 ; *crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by **īdemque, et īdem, atque īdem.**

**Vir doctissimus Platō atque īdem gravissimus philosophōrum omnium,** C., *Leg.,* II. 6, 14 ; *Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.*

2. *The same as* is expressed by **īdem** with **quī,** with **atque** or **āc,** with **ut,** with **cum,** and poetically with the Dative. See 359, N. 6, 642, 643.

**Tibī mēcum in eōdem est pīstrīnō vīvendum,** C., *Or.,* II. 33, 144 ; *you have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

3. **Īdem** cannot be used with **is,** of which it is only a stronger form (**is + dem**).

**311.** 1. **Ipse,** *self,* is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others :

**Ipse fēcī,** *I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.* **Nunc ipsum,** *at this very instant, at this precise moment.*

**Valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuērunt,** C., *Div.,* I. 34, 74 ; *the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.*

**Catō mortuus est annīs octōgintā sex ipsīs ante Cicerōnem cōnsulem,** C., *Br.,* 15, 61 ; *Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.*

REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, **ipse** is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things; riders* in opposition to *horses; inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit ; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household, etc.*

**Ipse dīxit,** C., *N. D.,* I. 5, 10 ; *the master said* (αὐτὸς ἔφα).

**Mē ipsa mīsit,** PL., *Cas.,* 790 ; *mistress sent me.*

2. **Et ipse,** *likewise, as well,* is used when a new subject takes an old predicate :

**Locrī urbs dēscīverat et ipsa ad Poenōs,** L., XXIX. 6, 1 ; *Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.*

2. **Ipse** is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation ; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

**Sē ipse laudat,** *he* (and not another) *praises himself.* **Sē ipsum laudat,** *he praises himself* (and not another).

**Piger ipse sibī obstat,** Prov. (Sen., *E.M.*, 94, 28) ; *the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

Exceptions are common :

**Quīque aliīs cāvit, nōn cavet ipse sibī,** Ov., *A.A.*, I. 84 ; *and he who cared for others, cares not for himself.*

### 4. Possessive Pronouns.

**312.** The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

**Manūs lavā et cēnā,** C., *Or.*, II. 60, 246 : *wash (your) hands and dine.*
**Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vīvō,** C., *Rosc.Am.*, 50, 145: *you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others.*

REMARKS.—1. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness :* **suum esse,** *to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.*

**Tempore tuō pūgnāstī,** L., XXXVIII. 45, 10 ; *you have fought at your own time* (= when you wished).

**Hōc honōre mē adfēcistis annō meō,** C., *Leg.Agr.*, II. 2, 4 ; *you visited me with this honor in my own year* (= the first year in which I could be made consul).

2. On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

### 5. Indefinite Pronouns.

**313. Quīdam** means *one, a, a certain one ;* the speaker may know but he does not tell. In the Plural, **quīdam** means *some, sundry,* without emphasis.

**Intereā mulier quaedam commigrāvit hūc,** Ter., *And.*, 69 ; *meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here.*

REMARKS.—1. With an adjective **quīdam** often heightens by adding vagueness and mystery. (Gr. τις.)

**Est quōdam incrēdibilī rōbore animī,** C., *Mil.*, 37, 101 ; *really he is endowed with a certain* (strange, indescribable) *strength of mind that is past belief.*

2. **Quĭdam** is often used with or without **quasi,** *as if,* to modify an expression :

**Est quaedam virtūtum vitiōrumque vīcīnia,** QUINT., II. 12, 4; *there is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

**314. Aliquis (aliquī)** means, *some one, some one or other;* neither the speaker nor the hearer knows :

**Dēclāmābam cum aliquŏ cottīdiē,** C., *Br.,* 90, 310 ; *I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.*

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Lītotēs, 700) : **sum aliquis, aliquid,** *I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight;* opposed to : **nūllus sum, nihil sum,** *I am a nobody, nothing.*

**Est hōc aliquid, tametsī nōn est satis,** C., *Div. in Caec.,* 15, 47 ; *this is something, although it is not enough.*

**315. Quis (quī),** fainter than **aliquis,** is used chiefly after **sī,** *if;* **nisi,** *unless;* **nē,** *lest;* **num,** *whether,* and in relative sentences.    See 107, R.

**Nē quid nimis!** TER., *And.,* 61; *nothing in excess!*

REMARK.—**Aliquis** is used after **sī,** *etc.,* when there is stress : **sī quis,** *if any;* **sī aliquis,** *if some;* **sī quid,** *if anything;* **sī quidquam,** *if anything at all* (317, 1).

**Sī aliquid dandum est voluptātī, senectūs modicīs convīviīs dēlectārī potest,** C., *Cato M.,* 14, 44 ; *if something is to be given to pleasure* (as something or other must), *old age can take delight in mild festivities.*

**316. Quispiam** is rarer than **aliquis,** but not to be distinguished from it, except that **quispiam** never intimates importance.

**Dīxerit quispiam,** C., *Cat.M.,* 3, 8 ; *some one may say.*

**317.** 1. **Quisquam** and **ūllus** (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in questions that imply a negative answer, and in sweeping conditions :

**Iūstitia numquam nocet cuīquam,** C., *Fin.,* I. 16, 50 ; *justice never hurts anybody.*

**Quis Graecōrum rhētorum ā Thūcȳdide quidquam dūxit ?** C., *Or.,* 9, 317 ; *what Greek rhetorician drew anything from Thucydides ?* [None.]

**Sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit,** C., *Lael.,* 2, 9 ; *if any one at all* (was) *wise, he was.*

**Hostem esse in Syriā negant ūllum,** C., *Fam.,* III. 8, 10 ; *they say that there is not any enemy in Syria.*

So after comparatives, for these involve a negative :

**Sōlis candor inlūstrior est quam ūllīus īgnis,** C., *N.D.*, II. 15, 40 ; *the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.*

**2.** The negative of **quisquam** is **nēmŏ,** *nobody ;* **nihil,** *nothing* (108). The negative of **ūllus** is **nūllus,** *no, none.*

**Nēmŏ vir māgnus,** C., *N.D.*, II. 66, 167 ; *no great man, no one (who is) a great man.*

REMARK.—Instead of **nēminis** and **nēmine, nūllīus** and **nūllō, nūllā** are used regularly.

**318.** 1. **Quisque** means *each one,* as opposed to **omnis,** *every,* and is usually post-positive.

**Laudātī omnēs sunt dōnātīque prō meritō quisque,** L., XXXVIII. 23 ; *all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.*

**2.** With superlatives and ordinals **quisque** is loosely translated *every :*

**Optimum quidque rārissimum est,** C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81 ; *every good thing is rare = the better a thing, the rarer it is.*

**Quīntō quōque annō Sicilia tōta cēnsētur,** C., *Verr.*, II. 56, 139 ; *every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.*

**3.** **Quisque** combines readily with the reflexives, **suī, sibī, sē, suus,** in their emphatic sense (309, 2).

Here the reflexive regularly precedes.

**Sua quemque fraus et suus terror vexat,** C., *Rosc. Am.*, 24, 67 ; *it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man.*

REMARK.—**Suum cuīque** has become a standing phrase : *let every one have his own.*

**319.** **Alter** and **alius** are both translated *other, another,* but **alter** refers to one of two, **alius** to diversity.

**Sōlus aut cum alterō,** *alone or with* (only) *one other ;* **alter Nerō,** *a second Nero.*

**Alter alterum quaerit,** *one* (definite person) *seeks the other* (definite person) ; **alius alium quaerit,** *one seeks one, another another.*

**Alterī—alterī,** *one party—another party* (already defined) ; **aliī—aliī,** *some—others.*

**Alter** often means *neighbor, brother, fellow-man ;* **alius,** *third person.*

**Alter :**

**Āgēsilāüs fuit claudus alterō pede,** NEP., XVII. 8, 1 ; *Agesilaüs was lame of one foot.*

**Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā,** PL., *Aul.*, 195; *in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread.*

10

### Alius:

**Fallācia alia aliam trūdit,** TER., *And.*, 739 ; *one lie treads on the heels of another* (indefinite series).

**Dīvitiās aliī praepōnunt, aliī honōrēs,** C., *Lael.*, 6, 20 ; *some prefer riches, others honors.*

### Alter and alius :

**Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēcerĭs,** SYRUS, 2 (Fr.) ; *you may look for from another what you've done unto your brother* (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

## APPOSITION.

**320.** By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it :

**Cicerō ōrātor,** *Cicero the orator.*   **Rhēnus flūmen,** *the river Rhine.*

### CONCORD.

**321.** The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number :

Nom. **Hērodotus pater historiae,** *Herodotus, the father of history ;* Gen. **Hērodotī patris historiae ;** Dat. **Hērodotō patrī historiae.**

**Cnidus et Colophōn, nōbilissimae urbēs, captae sunt,** Cf. C., *Imp.*, 12, 33 ; *Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken.*

**Omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs Athēnae,** Cf. C., *Or.*, I. 4, 13 ; *Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning.*

REMARKS.—1. Exceptions in *number* are due to special uses, as, for example, when **dēliciae** or **amōrēs,** *etc.*, are used of a Singular :

**Pompēius, nostrī amōrēs, ipse sē afflīxit,** C., *Att.*, II. 19. 2 : *Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself.*

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition :

**Urbs meā ūnīus operā fuit salva,** Cf. C., *Pis.*, 3, 6 ; *the city was saved by my exertions alone.*

3. On the agreement of predicate with appositive, see 211, R. 6.

**322.** *Partitive Apposition.—*Partitive Apposition takes a part out of the whole.

**Cētera multitūdō sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lēctī sunt,** L., II. 59. 11 ; (*of*) *the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment.*

**323.** *Distributive Apposition.—*Distributive Apposition subdivides the whole into its parts, chiefly with **alter—alter,**

*the one—the other;* **quisque, uterque,** *each one;* **alii—alii, pars—
pars,** *some—others.* (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

**Duae fīliae altera occīsa altera capta est,** Caes., *B.G.,* i. 53, 4 ; *(of)
two daughters, the one was killed the other captured.*

Remark.—The Part. Gen. is more commonly employed than either
of these forms of apposition.

**324.** *Apposition to a Sentence.*—Sometimes an Accusative
stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence.

**Admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dīcendum exīstimem, rem nōn
difficilem,** C., *Tusc.,* i. 43, 102 ; *I am reminded to take into considera-
tion that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.*

## Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

**325.** Any case may be attended by the same case in Pred-
icative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the
ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

Nominative : **Fīlius aegrōtus rediit.**
> Ordinary Attribution : *The sick son returned.*
> Predicative Attribution : *The son returned sick* = *he was sick
> when he returned.*
> > **Herculēs iuvenis leōnem interfēcit.**
> Ordinary Apposition : *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*
> Predicative Apposition : *Hercules, when a young man, slew a
> lion* = *he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

Genitive : **Potestās ēius adhibendae uxōris,** *the permission to take her
to wife.*

Dative : **Amīcō vīvō nōn subvēnistī,** *you did not help your friend
(while he was) alive.*

Accusative : **Herculēs cervam vīvam cēpit.**
> Ordinary Attribution : *Hercules caught a living doe.*
> Predicative Attribution : *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

Ablative : **Aere ūtuntur importātō,** *they use imported copper* = *the
copper which they use is imported.*

Remarks.—1. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predi-
catively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

**Quō, moritūre, ruis ?** V., *A.,* x. 810 ; *"whither dost thou rush to die"*
*(thou doomed to die) ?*

Notice here the old phrase : **Macte virtūte estō,** H., *S.,* i. 2, 31 ; *in-
creased be thou in virtue* = *heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

2. **Victōrēs rediērunt** may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or, *they returned conquerors;* **Idem**, *the same*, is similarly used.

**Iīdem abeunt quī vēnerant,** C., *Fin.*, IV. 3, 7 ; *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive :

**Dēfendī rem pūblicam adulēscēns, nōn dēseram senex,** C., *Ph.*, II. 46, 118 ; *I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age.*

So with prepositions :

**Ante Cicerōnem cōnsulem,** *before the consulship of Cicero ;* **ante urbem conditam,** *before the building of the city.*

4. Do not confound the " as " of apposition with the " as "(= *as if*) of comparison—**ut, quasi, tamquam, sīcut, velut** (602, 642).

(5) 6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of temporary condition generally :

**Libēns,** *with pleasure ;* **volēns,** *willing(ly) ;* **nōlēns,** *unwilling(ly) ;* **invītus,** *against one's will ;* **prūdēns,** *aware ;* **imprūdēns,** *unawares ;* **sciēns,** *knowing(ly) ;* **prīmus, prior,** *first ;* **ūltimus,** *last ;* **medius,** *in, about the middle ;* **hodiernus,** *to-day ;* **mātūtīnus,** *in the morning ;* **frequēns,** *frequent(ly) ;* **sublīmis,** *aloft ;* **tōtus,** *wholly ;* **sōlus, ūnus,** *alone ;* and many others.

**Ego eum ā mē invītissimus dīmīsī,** C., *Fam.*, XIII. 63, 1 ; *I dismissed him most unwillingly.*

**Plūs hodiē bonī fēcī imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diem umquam,** TER., *Hec.*, 880 ; *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before.*

**Adcurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur,** TER., *And.*, 133 ; *he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.*

**Vespertīnus pete tēctum,** H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 20 ; *seek thy dwelling at eventide.*

**Sōlī hōc contingit sapientī,** C., *Par.*, V. 1, 34 ; *this good luck happens to the wise man alone = it is only the wise man who has this good luck.*

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of **prīmus,** and the adverbs **prīmum,** *first, for the first time,* and **prīmō,** *at first.* **Prīmum** means first in a series ; **prīmō,** first in a contrast.

**Prīmus sententiam dīxit,** C., *Ph.*, X. 3, 6 ; *he was the first to express his opinion.*

**Samothrāciam tē prīmum, post Thasum contulistī,** C., *Pis.*, 36, 89 ; *you betook yourself to Samothrace first, afterwards to Thasos.*

**Improbōrum facta prīmō sūspīciō īnsequitur, tum accūsātor,** C., *Fin.*, I. 16, 50 ; *the deeds of the reprobate are attacked at first by suspicion, then by the public prosecutor.*

## B.

### 1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

**326.** The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

### 2. Qualification of the Predicate.

**327.** The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change :

I. External change : combination with an object.

1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.

II. Internal change : combination with an attribute which may be in the form of

1. The Genitive Case.     3. Preposition with a case.
2. The Ablative.         4. An Adverb.

### I. External Change.
#### Accusative.

**328.** The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

1. (*a*) The object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

**Deus mundum creāvit,** *God made a creation—the universe.*

(*b*) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

**Ā rēctā cōnscientiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere,** C., *Att.*, XIII. 20, 4 ; *one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.*

**Decem annōs (Trōia) oppūgnāta est,** L., v. 4, 11 ; *ten years was Troy besieged.*

**Māximam partem lacte vīvunt,** CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 1, 8 ; *for the most part they live on milk.*

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected) :

**Deus mundum gubernat,** *God steers the universe.*

### DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

(329) **330**. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case :

**Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit,** *Cf.* C., *Div.*, I. 17, 30 ; *Romulus founded the City of Rome.* (Object Effected.)

**Mēns regit corpus,** C., *Rep.*, VI. 24, 26 ; *mind governs body.* (Object Affected.)

REMARK.—Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as : **dolēre,** *to grieve (for) ;* **dēspērāre,** *to despair (of) ;* **horrēre,** *to shudder (at) ;* **mīrārī,** *to wonder (at) ;* **rīdēre,** *to laugh (at).*

**Honōrēs dēspērant,** C., *Cat.*, II. 9, 19 ; *they despair of honors (give them up in despair).*

**Cōnscia mēns rēctī Fāmae mendācia rīsit,** Ov., *F.*, IV. 311 ; *conscious of right, her soul* (but) *laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.*

**331**. Verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super,** and **trāns,** when they become transitive, take the Accusative :

All with **circum, per, praeter, trāns,** and **subter.**

Many with **ad, in,** and **super.**

Some with **ante, con, inter, ob,** and **sub.** See 347.

**Pȳthagorās Persārum magōs adiit,** C., *Fin.*, V. 29, 87 ; *Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.*

**Stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem,** C., *N.D.*, II. 20, 53 ; *the star Venus goes in advance of the sun.*

**Omnēs Domitium circumsistunt,** CAES., *B.C.*, I. 20, 5 ; *all surround Domitius.*

**Eam, sī opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam,** C., *Fam.*, V. 11, 2 ; *I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient.*

**Convīvia cum patre nōn inībat,** C., *Rosc. Am.*, 18, 52 ; *he would not go to banquets with his father.*

**Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patrās interfluit,** L., XXVII. 29, 9 ; *the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae.*

**Alexander tertiō et trīcēsimō annō mortem obiit,** C., *Ph.*, V. 17, 48 ; *Alexander died in his thirty-third year.*

**Caesar omnem agrum Pīcēnum percurrit,** CAES., *B.C.*, I. 15, 1 ; *Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.*

**Populus solet dīgnōs praeterīre,** C., *Planc.*, 3, 8 ; *the people is wont to pass by the worthy.*

**Epamīnōndās poenam subiit,** *Cf.* NEP., XV. 8, 2 ; *Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.*

**Crīminum vim subterfugere nūllō modō poterat**, C., *Verr.*, I. 3, 8 ; *he could in no way evade the force of the charges.*

**Rōmānī ruīnās mūrī supervādēbant**, L., XXXII. 24, 5 ; *the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.*

**Crassus Euphrātem nūllā bellī causā trānsiit**, *Cf.* C., *Fin.*, III. 22, 75 ; *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives : **Equitum māgnam partem flūmen trāiēcit**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 55, 1 ; *he threw a great part of the cavalry across the river.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated ; but never **circum** : **Cōpiās trāiēcit Rhodanum**, or **trāns Rhodanum**, *he threw his troops across the Rhone.*

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition ; so, **adīre ad aliquem**, *to go to a man ;* **adīre aliquem**, *to apply to* (*to consult*) *a man.*

## INNER OBJECT.

**332.** Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

**333.** 1. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

**Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat**, C., *N.D.*, I. 12, 31 ; *Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.*

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides :

**Dīscipulōs id ūnum moneō**, QUINT., II. 9, 1 ; *I give pupils this one piece of advice.*

REMARKS.—1. The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English *it* after intrans. verbs, "to walk it, to foot it," *etc.*, where " it " represents the substantive that lies in " walk, foot," *etc.*

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative **quid**, which has almost the force of **cūr. Quid rīdēs ?** *what* (*laughter*) *are you laughing* = *what means your laughter ? Why do you laugh ?*

2. *Cognate Accusative.*—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute.

**Mīrum atque īnscītum somniāvī somnium**, PL., *Rud.*, 597 ; *a marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.*

Remark.—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phrase-ological usages, such as **rem certāre**, *to fight a case;* **foedus ferīre**, *to make a treaty* (compare, *to strike a bargain*)**;** **iūs respondēre**, *to render an opinion;* **causam vincere**, *to win a case, etc.* Also the phrases with **īre :** **exsequiās īre**, *to attend a funeral;* **infitiās īre**, *to deny, etc.*

### Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

**334.** The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, **multum, plūs, tantum, quantum,** *etc.*

**Sī mē amās tantum quantum profectō amās,** C., *Att.,* II. 20, 5 ; *if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.*

Remarks.—1. The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

2. Here belong the adverbial Accusatives **māgnam**, *etc.,* **partem**, *to a great extent, in great part;* perhaps **meam**, *etc.,* **vicem**, *on my side, in my turn, in my stead.*

**335.** The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of **per**, *through.*

**Trabēs, dīstantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collocantur,** Caes., *B. G.,* VII. 23, 1 ; *beams two feet apart are planted in the ground.*

**Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fēcit,** Nep., XVI. 1, 2 ; *Phoebidas marched through Thebes.*

**Mīlitēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt,** Caes., *B. G.,* VII. 24, 1 ; *the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide* (and) *eighty feet high.*

Remarks.—1. The adjectives in most common use with this Accusa-tive are **longus**, *long,* **lātus**, *wide,* **altus**, *deep, high.*

2. With **abesse** and **dīstāre**, an Abl. of Measure may also be used :

**Mīlibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse,** Caes., *B. G.,* I. 41, 5 ; *to be twenty-four miles from. . . .*

Noteworthy also is **ab (ā) : ab mīlibus passuum duōbus,** Caes., *B. G.,* II. 7, 3 ; *two miles off.*

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time, with or without **per,** answers the question, *How long?*

Duodĕquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum fuit Dionȳsius, C., *Tusc.*, v. 20, 57 ; *thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse.*

Lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt, C., *Cat.*, iii. 8, 20 ; *games were performed for ten days.*

Sedet aeternumque sedēbit īnfēlīx Thēseus, V., *A.*, vi. 617 ; *there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus.*

REMARKS.—1. In giving definite numbers with **iam, iam diū, iam dūdum,** *etc.*, the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (403).

Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat, C., *Imp.*, 3, 7 ; *Mithridates has been* (230) *reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

2. **Per** with the Acc. is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. **Per illa tempora** = illīs temporibus, *in those times.*

So especially with the negative :

Nūlla rēs per triennium iūdicāta est, C., *Verr.*, i. 5, 13 ; *no matter was decided during* (*in*) *three years.*

3. The Dating Point may be given by **abhinc,** *ago*, which usually precedes the Accusative.

Dēmosthenēs abhinc annōs prope trecentōs fuit, C., *Div.*, ii. 57, 118 ; *Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago.*

4. **Nātus,** *old* (*born*), may also take Accusative of Extent. For other constructions see 296, R. 5.

Puer decem annōs nātus est, *the boy is ten years old.*

5. Here belong the colloquial phrases **id temporis,** *at that time,* **id aetātis,** *at that age.*

### Accusative of the Local Object.

*Terminal Accusative.*

**337.** Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also **rūs,** *into the country,* **domum, domōs,** *home.*

Missī lēgātī Athēnās sunt, L., iii. 31, 8 ; *envoys were sent to Athens.*

Lātōna cōnfūgit Dēlum, *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, i. 18, 48 ; *Latona took refuge in Delos.*

Ego rūs ībō atque ibi manēbō, TER., *Eun.*, 216 ; *I shall go to the country and stay there.*

Innumerābilēs philosophī numquam domum revertērunt, C., *Tusc.*, v. 37, 107 ; *innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

REMARKS.—1. Countries and large Islands require prepositions, such as : **in**, *into ;* **ad**, *to ;* **versus**, *-ward ;* **in Graeciam proficīscī**, *to set out for Greece.*

2. When **urbem**, *city*, or **oppidum**, *town*, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition **in** or **ad** is prefixed ; if **urbem** or **oppidum** follows, **in** or **ad** may be omitted : **in (ad) oppidum Cirtam**, *to, in (at) the town* (of) *Cirta.*

When **urbem** or **oppidum** is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition :

**Iugurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum māgnum et opulentum**, S., *Iug.*, 75, 1 ; *Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. **Domum**, with a possessive pronoun, or Gen., may mean *house* as well as *home*, and accordingly may or may not have **in** before it : **domum meam**, or, **in domum meam**, *to my house ;* **domum Pompēiī**, or, **in domum Pompēiī**, *to Pompey's house ;* also **domum ad Pompēium**. Otherwise : **in māgnificam domum venīre**, *to come into a grand house.*

4. **Ad** means *to the neighborhood of*, often *before*, of military operations : **ad Mutinam**, *to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina* (Modena).

5. The simple Acc. will suffice even for *extent :*

**Omnia illa mūnicipia, quae sunt ā Vibōne Brundisium**, C., *Planc.*, 41, 97 ; *all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.*

6. Motion *to a place* embraces all the places mentioned :

**Phalara in sinum Māliacum prōcēsserat**, L., xxxv., 43, 8 ; *he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliac Gulf.* **Tarentum in Ītaliam īnferiōrem proficīscī**, *to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

7. The poets and later prose writers occasionally omit the preposition also before Countries and large Islands.

## OUTER OBJECT.

### Accusative of Respect.

**338.** The Accusative of the object affected is sometimes used with a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective. It is called the *Accusative of Respect*, sometimes the *Greek Accusative.*

1. *Definite :* The Accusative of the part affected (chiefly poetic).

**Percussa novā mentem formīdine**, V., *G.*, iv. 357 ; *her mind stricken (stricken in her mind) with a new dread.*

**Saucius pectus**, QUINT., ix. 3, 17 ; *"breast-wounded."*

2. *Indefinite :* **cētera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plēraque, cūncta** ; *in other respects, in all respects, in most respects.*

**Cētera adsentior Crassō**, C., *Or.*, i. 9, 35 ; *in all other points I agree with Crassus.*

**Omnia Mercuriō similis**, V., *A.*, iv. 558 ; *in all respects like unto Mercury.*

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

**339.** Active verbs signifying to Ask, Demand, Teach, and Conceal take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

Pūsiōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geōmetrica, C., *Tusc.*, I. 24, 57 ; *Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.*

Caesār Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 1 ; *Caesar kept demanding corn from the Aedui.*

Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam ? C., *Pis.*, 30, 73 ; *why should* (265) *I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey ?*

Nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem Ampiī, C., *Fam.*, II. 16, 3; *I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Ampius.*

REMARKS.—1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe :

| | |
|---|---|
| This then is not the only way, | Pōscō, *I claim*, and flāgitō, |
| For it is also right to say, | And always petō, pōstulō, |
| Docēre and cēlāre dē, | Take aliquid ab aliquō, |
| Interrogāre dē quā rē. | While quaerō takes ex, ab, dē, quō. |

Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs mīserat, quī senātum docērent dē caede frātris, S., *Iug.*, 13, 3 ; *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.*

Aquam ā pūmice nunc pōstulās, PL., *Pers.*, 41 ; *you are now asking water of a pumice-stone* (blood of a turnip).

2. With doceō the Abl. of the Instrument is also used : docēre fidibus, equō, *to teach the lyre, to teach riding ;* with ērudīre, the Abl., or Abl. with in. The Participles doctus and ērudītus generally take the Abl.: doctus Graecīs litterīs, *a good Grecian.*

3. With the Passive cēlārī, we find either : aliquid mē cēlātur, *something is being concealed from me* ; or, cēlor dē aliquā rē, *I am kept in the dark about something.*

4. The Passive of docēre is usually dīscere, *to learn.*

**340.** Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing :

Īram bene Ennius initium dīxit īnsāniae, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52 ; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit, L., I. 32, 1 ; *the people made Ancus Marcius king.*

Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam, *Cf.* NEP., XXIV. 1, 2 ; *Cato had Valerius Flaccus* (as) *colleague.*

**Athēniēnsibus Pȳthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibǐ imperātōrem sūmerent,** NEP., I. 1, 3 ; *the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades* (as) *their commander.*

**Praestā tē eum quǐ mihǐ es cōgnitus,** C., *Fam.*, I. 6, 2 ; *show yourself the man that I know you to be.*

REMARKS.—1. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). **Reddō,** *I render,* is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, **fīō,** *I become.*

**Habeō,** with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have ;* in the sense of *hold, regard,* other turns are used ; usually **prō.**

**Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō fīliā ?** PL., *Pers.*, 341 ; *do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter ?*

Similarly **habēre servōrum locō,** (in) **numerō deōrum,** *to regard as slaves, as gods.*

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the *end* or *purpose* is indicated by the Dat. or **ad** with Accusative.

**Rōmulus trecentōs armātōs ad cūstōdiam corporis habuit,** L., I. 15, 8 ; *Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard.*


## ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

(341–2) **343.** 1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations :

**Mē miserum,** C., *Fam.*, XIV. 1, 1 ; *poor me !*

**Mē caecum quǐ haec ante nōn vīderim,** C., *Att.*, X. 10, 1 ; *blind me ! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions :

**Quō mihi fortūnam, sǐ nōn concēditur ūtī ?** H., *Ep.*, I. 5, 12 ; *what* (is the object of) *fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it ?*

The Interjections **heu,** *alas !* **ō,** *oh !* **prō,** *for,* are sometimes used.

**Heu mē miserum !** TER., *Ph.*, 187 ; *Alas ! poor me !*

**Ō miserās hominum mentēs, Ō pectora caeca,** LUCR., II. 14 ; *oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts !*

**Prō deum fidem,** C., *Tusc.*, V. 16, 48 ; *for heaven's sake !*

So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

REMARK.—**Ecce,** *behold !* takes only the Nom. in classical Latin ; so usually **ēn,** *lo !*

2. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used :

(*a*) In Exclamations. (See 534.)

(*b*) As an Object. (See 527.)

(*c*) As a Subject. (See 535.)

## DATIVE.

**344.** The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be expressed in the Accusative case or contained in the verb itself.

Tĭbĭ exercitum patria prō sē dedit, C., *Ph.*, xiii. 6, 14 ; *your country gave you an army for its own defence.*

Nēmŏ errat ūnī sibĭ, Sen., *E.M.*, 94, 54 ; *no one errs* (makes mistakes) *to* (*for*) *himself alone.*

### Dative with Transitive Verbs.

**345.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation *to, for, from.*

This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged.

Active Form :

To : Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, rēcta cōnsilia aegrōtīs damus, Ter., *And.*, 309 ; *readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.*

For : Frangam tōnsōrī crūra manūsque simul, Mart., xi. 58, 10 ; *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.*

From : Somnum mihĭ adēmit, C., *Att.*, ii. 16, 1; *it took my sleep away from me.*

Passive Form :

To : Mercēs mihi glōria dētur, Ov., *F.*, iii. 389 ; *let glory be given to me as a reward.*

For : Immeritīs franguntur crūra caballīs, Juv., x. 60 ; *the innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.*

From : Arma adimuntur mīlitibus, L., xxii. 44, 6 ; *the soldiers have their arms taken from them.*

Remarks.—1. The Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like (*Dative of Separation*), is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for.* When the Person is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

Is frāter, quī ēripuit frātrem carcere, nōn potuit ēripere fātŏ, Sen., *Dial.*, xi. 14, 4 ; *the brother who wrested his brother from prison could not wrest him from fate.*

2. Observe that *to* when *motion* is involved is **ad** or **in** : lĭtterās ad aliquem dare, *to indite a letter to some one; for* (*in defence of*) is **prō** : prō patriā morī, *to die for one's country.*

### Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

**346.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

**Crassī pudor nōn obfuit ēius ōrātiōnī,** C., *Or.,* I. 26, 122 ; *Crassus's modesty was not a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory.*

**Ipsa sibī imbēcillitās indulget,** C., *Tusc.,* IV. 18, 42 ; *weakness gives free course to itself.*

**Probus invidet nēminī,** C., *Tim.,* 3, 9 ; *your upright man cherishes envy to no one.*

**Catilīna litterās mittit sē fortūnae cēdere,** S., *C.,* 34, 2 ; *Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune.*

**Diēs stultīs quoque medērī solet,** C., *Fam.,* VII. 28, 3 ; *time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools.*

**Moderārī animō, est nōn mediocris ingeniī,** C., *Q.F.,* I. II. 13, 38 ; *to put bounds to one's temper is the work of (shows) no mean ability.*

**Sīc agam, ut auctōrī hūius dīsciplīnae placet,** C., *Fin.,* I. 9, 29 ; *I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought).*

**Mundus deō pāret et huīc oboediunt maria terraeque,** C., *Leg.,* III. I, 3 ; *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.*

**Virtūtī suōrum satis crēdit,** *Cf.* S., *Iug.,* 106, 3 ; *he puts full confidence in the valor of his men.*

REMARKS.—1. Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (208) :

**Quī invident, egent, illīs quibus invidētur, ī rem habent,** PL., *Truc.,* 745 ; *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.*

2. Observe the difference where either Accusative or Dative may be employed ; so especially with verbs of Fearing, as : **metuere aliquem,** *to dread some one,* but **metuere alicuī,** *to fear for some one ;* **cavēre alicuī,** *to take precautions for some one,* but **cavēre aliquem** (also **dē, ab aliquō**), *to take precautions against some one ;* **cōnsulere aliquem,** *to consult a person,* but **cōnsulere alicuī,** *to consult for a person.*

Noteworthy are the constructions of **invidēre** and **vacāre :**

**Invidēre alicuī (in) aliquā rē,** }
      **alicuī aliquid,** } *to begrudge a man a thing.*

      **alicūius alicuī reī,** *to envy something belonging to a man.*

**Vacāre reī,** *to be at leisure for, to attend to* }
    **rē, ā rē,** *to be at leisure from* } *a matter.*

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning :

**Comitor aliquem,** *I accompany a man ;* **comitor alicuī,** *I act as companion to a man ;* **praestōlor alicuī** (better) or **aliquem,** *I wait for.*

3. Some words with meaning like to the above take the Acc.; the most notable are : **aequāre**, *to be equal ;* **decēre** (*to distinguish*), *to be becoming ;* **dēficere**, *to be wanting :* **dēlectāre**, *to please ;* **iuvāre**, *to be a help ;* **iubēre**, *to order ;* **laedere**, *to injure ;* and **vetāre**, *to forbid.* **Aequāre** and **dēficere** have also the Dative.

**Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multī, aequāvit nēmŏ**, PLIN., *N.H.*, xxxv. 11, 126 ; *that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.*

**Fōrma virōs neglēcta decet**, OV., *A.A.*, I. 509 ; *a careless beauty is becoming to men.*

**Mē diēs dēficiat**, *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, II. 21, 52 ; *the day would fail me.*

**Fortēs fortūna adiuvat**, TER., *Ph.*, 203 ; *fortune favors the brave.*

### Dative with Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

**347.** Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super,** take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

**Plēbēs cūncta comitiīs adfuit**, C., *Planc.*, 8, 21 ; *the entire commonalty was present at the election.*

**Omnis sēnsus hominum multō antecellit sēnsibus bēstiārum**, C., *N.D.*, II. 57, 145 ; *every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts.*

**Ennius equī fortis senectūtī comparat suam**, C., *Cat.M.*, 5, 14 ; *Ennius compares his* (*old age*) *to the old age of a gallant steed.*

**Imminent duo rēgēs tōtī Asiae**, C., *Imp.*, 5, 12 ; *two kings are menaces to all Asia.*

**Interes cōnsiliīs**, C., *Att.*, xiv. 22, 2 ; *you are in their councils, are privy to their plans.*

**Piger ipse sibī obstat**, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 28 ; *the lazy man stands in his own way.*

**Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus**, CAES., *B.G.*, vi. 13, 8 ; *at the head of all the Druids is one man.*

**Anatum ōva gallīnīs saepe suppōnimus**, C., *N.D.*, II. 48, 124 ; *we often put ducks' eggs under hens* (for them to hatch).

**Neque dēesse neque superesse reī pūblicae volō**, C. (POLLIO), *Fam.*, x. 33, 5 ; *no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the state's—that is my motto.*

REMARKS.—1. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs are used in a figurative sense. In a local sense the preposition is usually employed, except in poetry and later prose.

So **incumbere in gladium**, C., *Inv.*, II. 51, 154, *to fall upon one's sword.*

(2, 3, 4) 5. Some trans. verbs compounded with **dē** and **ex** (rarely with **ab**) sometimes take the Dative of Separation ; see 345, R. 1.

### Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

**348**. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

**Praedam mīlitibus dōnat**, CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 11, 9 ; *he presents the booty to the soldiers.* But **Rubrium corōnā dōnāstī**, C., *Verr.*, III. 80, 185 ; *thou didst present Rubrius with a crown.*

**Nātūra corpus animō circumdedit**, SEN., *E. M.*, 92, 13 ; *Nature has put a body around the mind.* But **Deus animum circumdedit corpore**, *Cf.* C., *Tim.*, 6, 20 ; *God has surrounded the mind with a body.*

### Dative of Possessor.

**349**. **Esse**, *to be*, with the Dative, is commonly translated by the verb *to have :*

**Contrōversia mihĭ fuit cum avunculō tuō**, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 6 ; *I had a debate with your uncle.*

**An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs ?** Ov., *Her.*, XVI. 166 ; *or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms ?*

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of **esse**, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner : **Caesar amīcus est mihĭ**, *Caesar is a friend to me* (**amīcus meus**, MY *friend, friend of* MINE).

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. With the Dat. the Possession is emphatic ; with the Gen. the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner ; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other :

**Latīnī concēdunt Rōmam caput Latiō esse**, *Cf.* L., VIII. 4, 5 ; *the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in* ROME. (**Latiī**: *that* LATIUM'S *capital is Rome*).

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by **esse** with **in** and the Abl., by **inesse** with Dat. or with **in**, or by some other turn :

**Fuit mīrificus in Crassō pudor**, C., *Or.*, 1. 26, 122 ; *Crassus had a marvellous modesty.*

**Cimōn habēbat satis ēloquentiae**, NEP., V. 2, 1 ; *Cimon had eloquence enough.*

4. **Abesse** and **dēesse**, *to be wanting, to fail*, take also the Dat. of Possessor.

5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases **nōmen est, cōgnōmen est**, *etc.* Here the name is regularly in the Nom. in apposition to **nōmen** ; occasionally in the Dative.

**Fōns aquae dulcis, cuĭ nōmen Arethūsa est**, C., *Verr.*, IV. 53, 118 ; *a fountain of sweet water named Arethusa.*

**Nōmen Arctūrō est mihĭ**, PL., *Rud.*, 5 ; *my name is Arcturus.*

### Dative of Personal Interest.

**350.** The Dative is used of the person in whose honor, or interest, or advantage, an action takes place, or the reverse (*Datīvus Commodī et Incommodī*):

**Cōnsurrēxisse omnēs Lȳsandrō dīcuntur,** C., *Cat. M.,* 18, 63 ; *all are said to have risen up together in honor of Lysander.*

**Deō nostra altāria fūmant,** V., *Ec.,* I. 43 ; *our altars smoke in honor of the god.*

### Ethical Dative.

**351.** The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Datīvus Ēthicus*).

**Ecce tibĭ Sēbōsus!** C., *Att.,* II. 15 ; *here's your Sebosus!*

**Tū mihĭ istīus audāciam dēfendis ?** C., *Verr.,* III. 91, 213 ; *do you defend me (to my face) that fellow's audacity ?*

"She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss *you* morning nor evening prayer."—Shaks., *Merry Wives,* II. 2, 201.

### Dative of Reference.

**352.** This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Datīvus Iūdicantis*).

**Ut mihĭ dēfōrmis, sīc tibĭ māgnificus,** Tac., *H.,* XII. 37 ; *to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendor.*

**Quīntia fōrmōsa est multīs,** Cat., 86, 1 ; *Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.*

**353.** Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles.

**Vērē aestimantī,** L., XXXVII. 58, 8 ; *to one whose judgment was true.*

**Hōc est oppidum prīmum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō,** Caes., *B.C.,* III. 80 ; *this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus.*

### Dative of the Agent.

**354.** The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result.

**Mihĭ rēs tōta prōvīsa est,** C., *Verr.,* IV. 42, 91 ; *I have had the whole matter provided for.*

**Cuĭ nōn sunt audītae Dēmosthenis vigiliae ?** C., *Tusc.,* IV. 19, 44 ; *to whom are not Demosthenes' long watchings a familiar hearsay ?*

11

**355.** The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

**Dēspēranda tibī salvā concordia socrū,** Juv., vi. 231 ; *you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

Remark.—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with **ab (ā)** is employed :

**Cīvibus ā vōbīs cōnsulendum,** C., *Imp.*, 2, 6 ; *the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.*

### Dative of the Object For Which.

**356.** Certain Verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

**Nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī fuit,** C., *Verr.*, I. 6, 16 ; *to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense.*

**Habēre quaestuī rem pūblicam turpe est,** C., *Off.*, ii. 22, 77 ; *it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.*

### Dative with Derivative Substantives.

**357.** A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives :

**Iūstitia est obtemperātiō lēgibus,** C., *Leg.*, I. 15, 42 : *justice is obedience to the laws.*

### Local Dative.

**358.** The Dative is used in poetry to denote the *place whither.*

**It caelō clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum,** V., *A.*, xi. 192 ; *mounts to high Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

### Dative with Adjectives.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative :

**Canis similis lupō est,** C., *N.D.*, I. 35, 97 ; *the dog is like unto the wolf.*

**Castrīs idōneus locus,** Caes., *B.G.*, vi. 10, 2 ; *a place suitable for a camp.*

**Ūtile est reī pūblicae nōbilēs hominēs esse dīgnōs māiōribus suīs,** C., *Sest.*, 9, 21 ; *it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors.*

**Vir mihĭ amīcissimus, Fabricius**, C., *Sest.*, 35, 75 ; *my very great friend, Fabricius.*

**Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis**, Cf. C., *Cat.M.*, 19, 68 ; *death is common to every time of life.*

**Proxumus sum egomet mihĭ**, Ter., *And.*, 636 ; *myself am nearest to me.*

**Tēstis id dīcit quod illī causae māximē est aliēnum**, C., *Caec.*, 9, 24 ; *the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).*

Remarks.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive : **amīcus**, *friend ;* **aequālis**, *contemporary ;* **cōgnātus**, *kinsman ;* **commūnis**, *common ;* **contrārius**, *opposite ;* **pār**, *match ;* **proprius**, **pecūliāris**, *own, peculiar ;* **similis**, *like* ("we ne'er shall look upon his *like* again").

**Ille, cūius paucōs parēs haec cīvitās tulit**, C., *Pis.*, 4, 8 ; *(he was) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne.*

2. The *object toward which* is expressed by the Acc. with **in, ergā, adversus** :

**Manlius fuit sevērus in fīlium**, C., *Off.*, iii. 31, 112; *Manlius was severe toward his son.*

**Mē esse scit sēsē ergā benivolum**, Pl., *Capt.*, 350 ; *he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.*

3. The *object for which* may be expressed by the Acc. with **ad**, *to :*

**Homŏ ad nūllam rem ūtilis**, C., *Off.*, iii. 6, 29 ; *a good-for-nothing fellow.*

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

## II. Internal Change.

### Genitive.

**360.** 1. The Genitive Case is the case that fills out or completes the meaning of the word with which it is construed. It may be defined as the Case of the Complement (**compleō**, *I fill out*).

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are :

(*a*) The Possessive case : **domus rēgis**, *the king's palace.*

(*b*) The Objective case with *of :* **domus rēgis**, *the palace of the king.*

(*c*) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition : **arbor abietis**, *fir-tree.*

Remarks.—1. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used :

**Patriae quis exsul sē quoque fūgit ?** H., *O.*, ii. 16, 19 ; *what exile* from *his country ever fled himself as well ?*

**Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgae relīquit**, L., xxxiii. 37, 10 ; *he left the hope of a triumph* over *the Boii to his colleague.*

2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute :

**Vernī temporis suāvitās,** C., *Cat.M.,* 19, 70 ; *the sweet spring-time.*

**Fontium gelidae perennitātēs,** C., *N.D.,* II. 39, 98 ; *cool springs that never fail.*

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with *of :*

**Ante Rōmam conditam,** *before the founding of Rome.*   (325, R. 3.)

Notice also **hīc metus,** *this fear = fear of this,* and kindred expressions.

2. The Genitive is employed :

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

## I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.
### Adnominal Genitive.

#### Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.

**361.** The Genitive is sometimes used by way of Apposition or Explanation, thus :

1. *Appositional Genitive.*—Genitive after such words as, **vōx,** *expression ;* **nōmen,** *name, noun ;* **verbum,** *word, verb ;* **rēs,** *thing, etc.*

**Nōmen amīcitiae,** C., *Fin.,* II. 24, 78 ; *the name friendship.*

2. *Explanatory (Epexegetical) Genitive.*—Genitive after such words as **genus,** *class ;* **vitium,** *vice ;* **culpa,** *fault, etc.*

**Virtūtēs continentiae, gravitātis, iūstitiae, fideī,** C., *Mur.,* 10, 23 ; *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.*

#### Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

**362.** The Person to whom a thing belongs is put in the Genitive. This is called the Possessive Genitive and is often parallel with the adjective.

**Domus rēgis = domus rēgia,** *the palace of the king, the king's palace = the royal palace ;* **domus ēius,** *his house.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns : **amīcus meus,** *a friend of mine ;* **gladius tuus,** *a sword of thine.* But when **omnium** is added, **vestrum** and **nostrum** are used (364 R.). Sometimes the adjective form is preferred : **canis aliēnus,** *a strange dog, another man's dog ;* **fīlius erīlis,** *master's son.*

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. **Statua Myrōnis**, *Myron's statue*, may mean: 1. A statue which Myron owns; 2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily supplied, so especially **aedem** or **templum**, after **ad**, and less often after other prepositions: **pecūnia utinam ad Opis manēret**, C., *Ph.*, I. 7, 17; *would that the money were still at Ops's* (temple).

### Active and Passive Genitive.

**363**. When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (**nōmen āctiōnis**), the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive: **amor Deī**, *the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves); **patriae beneficia**, *the benefits of* (*conferred by*) *one's country.*

2. Passive or Objective Genitive: **amor Deī**, *love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively: the love of women.* Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for, toward,* and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin:

**Voluntās Servīliī ergā Caesarem**, *Cf.* C., *Q.F.*, III. 1. 6, 26; *the goodwill of Servilius toward Caesar.*

**Odium in bonōs inveterātum**, C., *Vat.*, 3, 6; *deep-seated hate toward the conservatives.*

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive:

**Veterēs Helvētiōrum iniūriae populī Rōmānī**, *Cf.* CAES., *B.G.*, I. 30, 2; *the Helvetians' ancient injuries of the Roman people.*

**364**. The Subjective Genitive, like the Possessive, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used.

**Amor meus**, *my love* (*the love which I feel*). **Dēsīderium tuum**, *your longing* (*the longing which you feel*).

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (321, R. 2):

**Iūrāvī hanc urbem meā ūnīus operā salvam esse**, C., *Pis.*, 3, 6; *I swore that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone.*

REMARK.—**Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as Partitive Genitives.

**Māgna pars nostrum,** *a great part of us ;* **utĕrque vestrum,** *either (both) of you.*

**Nostrī melior pars** means *the better part of our being, our better part.* With **omnium,** the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** must be used (362, R. 1).


## Genitive of Quality.

**365.** The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

**Vir māgnae auctōritātis,** CAES., *B.G.,* V. 35, 6 ; *a man of great influence.*

**Homŏ nihilī** (= nūllīus pretiī), PL., *B.,* 1188 ; *a fellow of no account.*
**Trīduī via,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 38, 1 ; *a three days' journey.*

REMARK.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space ; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)


## Genitive as a Predicate.

**366.** The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

**Hīc versus Plautī nōn est, hīc est,** C., *Fam.,* IX. 16, 4 ; *this verse is not by Plautus, this is.*

**Virtūs tantārum vīrium est ut sē ipsa tueātur,** C., *Tusc.,* V. 1, 2 ; *virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector.*

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

**Hūius erō vīvus, mortuus hūius erō,** PROP., II. 15, 35 ; *hers I shall be, living ; dead, hers I shall be.*

**Damnātiō est iūdicum, poena lēgis,** C., *Sull.,* 22, 63 ; *condemning is the judges'* (business), *punishment the law's.*

**Pauperis est numerāre pecus,** OV., *M.,* XIII. 823 ; *'tis only the poor man that counts his flock* (*'tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock*).

Observe this Genitive with **facere,** *to make* (*cause to be*).

**Rōmānae diciōnis facere,** L., XXI. 60, 3 ; *to bring under the Roman sway.*

2. **Stultitiae est,** *it is the part of folly* may be used, as well as **stultī est,** *it is the part of a fool.* So, too, **stultum est,** *it is foolish.* But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.

Some combinations become phraseological, as : **cōnsuētūdinis, mōris est,** *it is the custom.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate (" Vengeance is *mine* ") : **meum est,** *it is my property, business, way.*

**Nōn est mentīrī meum,** TER., *Heaut.,* 549 ; *lying is not my (nature).*

**Hīs tantīs in rēbus est tuum vidēre, quid agātur,** C., *Mur.,* 38, 83 ; *in this important crisis it is your (business) to see what is to be done.*

### Partitive Genitive.

**367.** The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs.

**368.** The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

**Māximus vīnī numerus fuit, permāgnum pondus argentī,** C., *Ph.,* II. 27, 66 ; *there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver.*

**Campānōrum ālam excēdere aciē iubet,** L., X. 29, 2 ; *he orders a squadron of Campanians to leave the line.*

REMARK.—Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

**Medimnus trīticī,** *a medimnus of wheat,* may be *a medimnus of* WHEAT (*Genitīvus Generis*) or a MEDIMNUS *of wheat* (*Partitive*).

**369.** The Partitive Genitive is used with the neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **tantum,** *so much,* | **quantum,** *as (how much),* | **aliquantum,** *somewhat,* |
| **multum,** *much,* | **plūs,** *more,* | **plūrimum,** *most,* |
| **paulum,** *little,* | **minus,** *less,* | **minimum,** *least,* |
| **satis,** *enough,* | **parum,** *too little,* | **nihil,** *nothing,* |
| **hōc,** *this,* | **id, illud, istud,** *that,* | **idem,** *the same,* |

**quod** and **quid,** *which* and *what ?* with their compounds.

**Is locus ab omnī turbā id temporis** (336, R. 5) **vacuus erat,** C., *Fin.,* V. 1, 1 ; *that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd.*

**Satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum,** S., *C.,* 5, 4 ; *enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.*

REMARKS.—1. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen.; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted : **aliquid bonum,** or **bonī,**

*something good ;* **aliquid memorābile,** *something memorable ;* **aliquid bonī et memorābilis,** *something good and memorable* (better **aliquid bonum et memorābile**).

2. A familiar phrase is : **Nihil reliquī facere.** 1. *To leave nothing* (*not a thing*). 2. (Occasionally), *to leave nothing undone.*

**370.** The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both general and special.

*Special :*

**Centum mīlitum,** *a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.*

(**Centum mīlitēs,** *a, the hundred soldiers.*)

**Quīntus rēgum,** *the fifth (of the) king(s).*

(**Quīntus rēx,** *the fifth king.*)

*General :*

**Multī mīlitum,** *many of the soldiers, many soldiers*

(**Multī mīlitēs,** *many soldiers.*)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic :

**Multī cīvium adsunt,** *many* CITIZENS *are present.* **Multī cīvēs adsunt,** MANY *are the citizens present.*

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin :

**Nōs trecentī coniūrāvimus,** L., II. 12, 15 ; *three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.*

**Quī omnēs,** *all of whom.* **Quot estis ?** *how many are (there of) you ?* So always **quot, tot, totidem.**

3. On **mīlle** and **mīlia,** see 293. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, R. 2.

**371.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

**Iī mīlitum,** *those (of the) soldiers.* **Iī mīlitēs,** *those soldiers.*

**Illī Graecōrum,** *those* (of the) *Greeks.*

**Fīdēnātium quī supersunt, ad urbem Fīdēnās tendunt,** L., IV. 33, 16 ; *the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.*

REMARKS.—1. **Uterque,** *either (both),* is commonly used as an adjective with substantives : **uterque cōnsul,** *either consul = both consuls ;* as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used : **uterque hōrum,** *both of these :* but **uterque ille dux,** *both of those leaders.*

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 372, R. 2.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives :

**Prior hōrum in proeliō cecidit,** Nep., xxi. 1, 2 ; *the former of these fell in an engagement.*

**Indus est omnium flūminum māximus,** C., *N.D.,* ii. 52, 130 ; *the Indus is the greatest of all streams.*

Remarks.—(1) 2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with **ex,** *out of*, **dē,** *from*, or the Acc. with **inter,** *among*, **apud : Gallus prōvocat ūnum ex Rōmānīs,** *the Gaul challenges one of the Romans;* **ūnus dē multīs,** *one of the many* (the masses) ; **Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus,** *Croesus, wealthiest of kings.*

With **ūnus, ex** or **dē** is the more common construction, except that when **ūnus** is *first* in a series, the Gen. is common.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, R. 2.

4. The Partitive Genitive with positives belongs especially to poetry.

**Sequimur tē, sāncte deōrum,** V., *A.,* iv. 576 ; *we follow thee, holy deity.*

5. The use of neuter adjectives as substantives with the Genitive is also mainly poetical.

**Ardua dum metuunt, āmittunt vēra viāī** (29, R. 3), Lucr., i. 660 ; *the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.*

So **amāra cūrārum,** H., *O.,* iv. 12, 19 ; *bitter elements of cares, bitter cares;* **strāta viārum,** V., *A.,* i. 422 = **strātae viae,** *the paved streets.*

6. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent, as : **ubi terrārum, gentium ?** *where in the world ?* Observe also its colloquial uses with **hūc, eō,** as **hūc, eō arrogantiae prōcēssit,** *he got to this, that pitch of presumption.*

### Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

**373. Causā, grātiā, ergō,** and **īnstar** are construed with the Genitive.

**Sophistae quaestūs causā philosophābantur,** C., *Ac.,* ii. 23, 72 ; *the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.*

**Amōris magis quam honōris grātiā,** Enn., *F.,* 287 (m.) ; *more for love's* (sake) *than for honor's sake.*

**Virtūtis ergō,** C., *Opt. Gen.,* 7, 19 ; *on account of valor.*

**Īnstar montis equus,** V., *A.,* ii. 15 ; *a horse the bigness of a mountain.*

## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**374.** Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Participation, of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.

**Plēnus rīmārum,** TER., *Eun.*, 105 ; *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel").
**Particeps cōnsiliī,** C., *Sull.*, 4, 12 ; *a sharer in the plan.*
**Mentis compos,** C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97 ; *in possession of* (one's) *mind.*
**Multārum rērum perītus,** C., *Font.*, 11, 25 ; *versed in many things.*
**Cupidus pecūniae,** *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, I. 3, 8 ; *grasping after money.*
**Omnium rērum īnscius,** C., *Br.*, 85, 292 ; *a universal ignoramus.*

**Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihī,** Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10 ; *bring me back* (*word*) *whether she thinks of us or no.*

**Omnēs immemorem beneficiī ōdērunt,** C., *Off.*, II. 18, 63 ; *all hate a man who has no memory for kindness.*

**Bēstiae sunt ratiōnis et ōrātiōnis expertēs,** C., *Off.*, I. 16, 50 ; *beasts are devoid of reason and speech* (*lack discourse of reason*).

**Omnia plēna cōnsiliōrum, inānia verbōrum vidēmus,** C., *Or.*, I. 9, 37 ; *we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence.*

**Gallia frūgum fertilis fuit,** L., V. 34, 2 ; *Gaul was productive of grain.*

REMARK.—The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with **animī** and **ingeniī.** **Aeger animī,** L., I. 58, 9 ; *sick at heart, heartsick.* **Audāx ingeniī,** STAT., *S.*, III. 2, 64 ; *daring of disposition.* The Pl. is **animīs.**

### Genitive with Verbals.

**375.** Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature ; and so occasionally do verbals in **-āx** in poetry and later prose.

**Epamīnōndās erat adeō vēritātis dīligēns ut nē iocō quidem mentīrētur,** NEP., XV. 3, 1 ; *Epaminondas was so careful* (*such a lover*) *of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest.*

**Omnium cōnsēnsū capāx imperiī nisi imperāsset,** TAC., *H.*, I. 49 ; *by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.*

### III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

### Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

**376.** Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

**Tē veteris amīcitiae commonefēcit,** [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 24, 33 ; *he reminded you of your old friendship.*

**Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus,** MART., II. 59 ; *a god himself bids you remember death.*

**Est proprium stultitiae aliōrum vitia cernere, oblīvīscī suōrum,** C., *Tusc.,* III. 30, 73 : *the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with **dē** and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numeral adjective.

**Ōrō ut Terentiam moneātis dē tēstāmentō,** C., *Att.,* XI. 16, 5 ; *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.*

**Discipulōs id ūnum moneō,** QUINT., II. 9, 1; *I give pupils this one* (333, 1) *piece of advice.*

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things :

**Haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit,** V., *A.,* I. 203 ; *to remember these things will one day give us pleasure.*

**Oblīvīscī nihil solēs nisi iniūriās,** C., *Lig.,* 12, 35 ; *you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.*

**Recordor** (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing ; **dē** is found with Persons.

**Et vōcem Anchīsae māgnī voltumque recordor,** V., *A.,* VIII. 156 ; *and I recall* (call to mind) *the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.*

**Meminī,** *I bear in mind,* *I* (am old enough to) *remember,* takes the Accusative :

**Antipatrum tū probē meministī,** C., *Or.,* III. 50, 194 ; *you remember Antipater very well.*

### Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**377. Misereor, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet,** and **pertaesum est** take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing.*

**Miserēminī sociōrum,** C., *Verr.,* I. 28, 72 ; *pity your allies !*

**Suae quemque fortūnae paenitet,** C., *Fam.,* VI. 1, 1; *each man is discontented with his lot.*

**Mē nōn sōlum piget stultitiae meae, sed etiam pudet,** C., *Dom.,* 11, 29 ; *I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it.*

REMARKS.—1. **Pudet** is also used with the Gen. of the Person :

**Pudet deōrum hominumque,** L., III. 19, 7; *it is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*

---

* **miultereor,** *I pity ;* **miseret,** *it moves to pity ;* **paenitet,** *it repents ;* **piget,** *it irks ;* **pudet,** *it makes ashamed ;* **taedet** and **pertaesum est,** *it tires.*

(2) 3. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf.
(422) and **quod** (542).

**Nōn mē vīxisse paenitet,** C., *Cat.M.*, 23, 84 ; *I am not sorry for having lived.*

**Quīntum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit,** *Cf.* C., *Att.*, XI. 13, 2 ; *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*

### Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

**378.** Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.

**Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditiōnis,** NEP., I. 7, 5 ; *Miltiades was accused of treason.*

**Fannius Verrem īnsimulat avāritiae,** C., *Verr.*, I. 49. 128 ; *Fannius charges Verres with avarice.*

**Videō nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis,** C., *Verr.*, I. 28, 72 ; *I see not that you are acquitted of dishonor, but that they are convicted of murder.*

REMARKS.—1. For the Gen. of the Charge may be substituted (*a*) **nōmine** or **crīmine** with the Gen., or (*b*) the Abl. with **dē**: **nōmine** (**crīmine**) **coniūrātiōnis damnāre,** *to find guilty of conspiracy :* **accūsāre dē vī,** *of violence ;* **dē venēficiō,** *of poisoning ;* **dē rēbus repetundīs,** *of extortion.*

2. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge ; the definite Fine is put in the Ablative : the indefinite Fine, **quantī, duplī, quadruplī,** *etc.*, is in the Genitive.

**Accūsāre capitis,** or **capite,** *to bring a capital charge :* **damnāre capitis,** or **capite,** *to condemn to death ;* **damnārī decem mīlibus,** *to be fined ten thousand.*

**Multāre,** *to mulct,* is always construed with the Ablative : **Multāre pecūniā,** *to mulct in (of) money.*

**Manlius virtūtem fīliī morte multāvit,** QUINT., V. 11, 7 ; *Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.*

### Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

**379.** Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost.   (404.)

Verbs of Rating are : **aestimāre, exīstimāre,** *to value :* **putāre,** *to reckon ;* **dūcere,** *to take ;* **habēre,** *to hold ;* **pendere,** *to weigh ;* **facere,** *to make, put ;* **esse,** *to be* (worth); **fierī,** *to be considered.*

Verbs of Buying are : **emere,** *to buy ;* **vēndere,** *to sell ;* **vēnīre,** *to be for sale ;* **stāre** and **cōnstāre,** *to cost, to come to ;* **prōstāre, licēre,** *to be exposed, left (for sale) ;* **condūcere,** *to hire ;* **locāre,** *to let.*

**380.** 1. Verbs of Rating take :

| Māgnī, *much,* | plūris, *more,* | plūrimī, māximī, *most,* |
| Parvī, *little,* | minōris, *less,* | minimī, *least,* |
| Tantī, tantīdem, *so much,* | quantī (and compounds), *how much,* | nihilī, *naught.* |

Dum nē ob malefacta, peream ; parvī exīstumō, PL., *Capt.,* 682 ; *so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die ; little do I care.*

Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit, C., *Fin.,* II. 13, 42 ; *virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses.*

Iūdicēs rem pūblicam floccī nōn faciunt, *Cf.* C., *Att.,* IV. 15, 4 ; *the judges do not care a fig for the State.*

REMARKS.—1. Tantī is often used in the sense of **operae pretium est** = *it is worth while.*

Est mihī tantī hūius invidiae tempestātem subīre, C., *Cat.,* II. 7, 15 ; *it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.*

2. Aestimō is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So aestimāre māgnī and māgnō, *to value highly.*

2. Verbs of Buying take **tantī, quantī, plūris,** and **minōris.** The rest are put in the Ablative.

Vēndō meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cēterī, fortasse etiam minōris, C., *Off.,* III. 12, 51 ; *I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.*

Ēmit Canius hortōs tantī quantī Pȳthius voluit, C., *Off.,* III. 14, 59 ; *Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.*

Ēmit ? periī hercle : quantī ?—Vīgintī minīs, TER., *Eun.,* 984 ; *he bought her ? I'm undone ; for how much ?—Twenty minae.*

Quantī cēnās ? *What do you give for your dinner ?*

Quantī habitās ? *What is the rent of your lodgings ?*

But :

Parvō famēs cōnstat, māgnō fāstīdium, SEN., *E.M.,* 17, 4 ; *hunger costs little, daintiness much.*

REMARK. — Bene emere, *to buy cheap ;* bene vēndere, *to sell dear ;* male emere, *to buy dear ;* male vēndere, *to sell cheap.* So, too, other adverbs : melius, optimē, pēius, pessimē.

### Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

**381.** 1. **Interest** and **Rēfert** take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Interest omnium rēctē facere, C., *Fin.,* II. 22, 72 ; *it is to the interest of all to do right.*

Rēfert compositiōnis quae quibus antepōnās, QUINT., IX. 4, 44 ; *it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

2. Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

**Meā interest, meā rēfert,** *I am concerned.*

**382.** The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

**Id meā minumē rēfert,** Ter., *Ad.,* 881 ; *that makes no difference at all to me.*

**Theodōrī nihil interest,** C., *Tusc.,* i. 43, 102 ; *It is no concern of Theodorus.*

**Māgnī interest meā ūnā nōs esse,** C., *Att.,* xiii. 4 ; *it is of great importance to me that we be together.*

### Occasional Uses.

**383.** The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fulness, but the Ablative is the rule :

**Pīsō multōs cōdicēs implēvit eārum rērum,** C., *Verr.,* i. 46, 119 ; *Piso filled many books full of those things.*

**Virtūs plūrimae commentātiōnis et exercitātiōnis indiget,** *Cf.* C., *Fin.,* iii. 15, 50 ; *virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice.*

## ABLATIVE.

**384.** The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements :

A. Where ? B. Whence ? C. Wherewith ?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions ; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as :

1. The Ablative of Origin. 2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as :

1. The Ablative of Manner. 2. The Ablative of Quality. 3. The Ablative of Means.

To these we add :

D. The Ablative of Cause. E. The Ablative Absolute.

# I. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

## A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

### Ablātīvus Locālis.

**385.** The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition **in**.

**In portū nāvigō**, Ter., *And.*, 480 ; *I am sailing* IN *harbor*.

**Pōns in Hibērō, prope effectus erat**, Caes., *B.C.*, I. 62, 3 ; *the bridge* OVER *the Ebro was nearly finished*.

**Histriō in scaenā est**, Pl., *Poen.*, 20 ; *the actor is* ON *the stage*.

**Haeret in equō senex**, Cf. C., *Dei.*, 10, 28 ; *the old man sticks* TO *his horse*.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with **in**, to designate the result of the motion :

**Platō ratiōnem in capite posuit, īram in pectore locāvit**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 10, 20 ; *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast*.

**Foedus in columnā aēneā incīsum**, C., *Balb.*, 23, 53 ; *a treaty cut upon a brazen column*.

The same observation applies to **sub** :

**Pōne sub currū nimium propinquī sōlis**, H., *O.*, I. 22, 21 ; *put* (me) *under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun*.

2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take **ex, ab**, or **dē**.

**Spēs omnis pendet ex fortūnā**, C., *Par.*, II. 17 ; *all his hopes are suspended on fortune*.

3. The Ablative of Place without **in** is confined to a few words and phrases, except in poetry and later prose. So **terrā**, *on land ;* **marī**, *by sea ;* **terrā marīque**, *on land and sea*. **Locō** and **locīs**, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit **in**. Also **parte** and **partibus ;** so regularly **dextrā** (**parte**), **sinistrā, laevā**, *etc*., *on the right, on the left*.

**386.** Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without **in**.

**Ut Rōmae cōnsulēs sīc Carthāgine quotannīs bīnī rēgēs creābantur**, Nep., XXIII. 7, 4 ; *as at Rome* (two) *consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly*.

**Tālis Rōmae Fabricius, quālis Aristīdēs Athēnīs, fuit**, C., *Off.*, III. 22, 87 ; *Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides was at Athens*.

REMARKS.—1. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with **in**.
**Neāpolī, in celeberrimō oppidō**, C., *Rab. Post.*, 10, 26 ; *at Naples, a popu-
lous town.*

2. *In the neighborhood of, at,* is **ad** with Acc., especially of mili-
tary operations : **pōns ad Genāvam**, CAES., *B. G.*, i. 7 ; *the bridge at
Geneva.*

**387.** In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the
Ablative of the Place Where is used without **in**.

**Librō tertiō**, *third book ;* **versū decimō**, *tenth verse ;* **aliō locō**, *elsewhere.*
But **in** is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book
is meant.

**Agricultūra laudātur in eō librō quī est dē tuendā rē familiārī**, C.,
*Cat. M.*, 17, 59 ; *agriculture is praised in the work on domestic econ-
omy.*

**388.** In designations of Place, with **tōtus, cūnctus**, *whole ;*
**omnis**, *all ;* **medius**, *middle*, the Ablative of the Place Where
is generally used without **in**.

**Menippus, meō iūdiciō, tōtā Asiā disertissimus**, C., *Br.*, 91, 315 ; *Menip-
pus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia* (Minor).

**389.** When Place is looked upon as Cause, Manner, or
Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.

**Ariovistus exercitum castrīs continuit**, CAES., *B. G.*, i. 48, 4 ; *Ariovis-
tus kept his army within the camp.*
**Nēmō īre quemquam pūblicā prohibet viā**, PL., *Curc.*, 35 ; *no man for-
biddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.*
So **recipere aliquem tēctō, oppidō, portū**, *to receive a man into one's
house, town, harbor.*

### B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

#### Ablātīvus Separātīvus.

**390.** 1. The Ablative answers the question Whence ?
and takes as a rule the prepositions **ex**, *out of,* **dē**, *from,*
**ab**, *off*.

**Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete**, PL., *St.*, 355 ; *I will get the cobwebs down
from the wall.*
**Dēcēdit ex Galliā Rōmam Naevius**, C., *Quinct.*, 4, 16 ; *Naevius with-
drew from Gaul to Rome.*

2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding; so regularly with **domō**, *from home*, **rūre**, *from the country*.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly **ab**) must be used.

**Verrēs omnia domō ēius abstulit**, C., *Verr.*, II. 34, 83; *Verres took everything away from his house.*

**Ego, cum Tullius rūre redierit, mittam eum ad tē**, C., *Fam.*, V. 20, 9; *when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you.*

Compare **Aliēnō manum abstineant**, CATO, *Agr.*, 5, 1; *let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property*, with **Alexander vix ā sē manūs abstinuit**, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 37, 79; *Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).*

Compare **Lapidibus optimōs virōs forō pellis**, C., *Har. Res.*, 18, 39; *you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones*, with **Istum aemulum ab eā pellitō**, TER., *Eun.*, 215; *drive that rival from her.*

Compare **Omnium rērum nātūrā cōgnitā līberāmur mortis metū**, C., *Fin.*, I. 19, 63; *by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the fear of death*, with **Tē ab eō līberō**, C., *Q. F.*, III. i. 3, 9; *I rid you of him.*

Compare **Amīcitia nūllō locō exclūditur**, C., *Lael.*, 6, 22; *friendship is shut out from no place*, with **Ab illā exclūdor, hōc conclūdor**, *Cf.* TER., *And.*, 386; *I am shut out from* HER *(and) shut up here (to live with* HER).

REMARKS.—1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. The poets use it more freely.

(3, 4, 5) 6. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: **ā tergō**, *in the rear;* **ex parte dextrā**, *on the right side;* **ab oriente**, *on the east;* **ā tantō spatiō**, *at such a distance;* **ex fugā**, *on the flight;* **ā rē frūmentāriā labōrāre**, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.*

3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

**Animus excelsus omnī est līber cūrā**, C., *Fin.*, I. 15, 49; *a lofty mind is free from all care.*

**Catō omnibus hūmānīs vitiīs immūnis fuit**, VELL., II. 35, 2; *Cato was exempt from all human failings.*

REMARK.—**Procul**, *far from*, regularly takes the preposition **ab**, except in the poets and later prose.

**391.** Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

**Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō,** C., *Tusc.*, v. 37, 109 ; *Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

**Dolābella Dēlō proficīscitur,** C., *Verr.*, I. 18, 46 ; *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions **ab (ā)** and **ex (ē)** are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness.

**Libō discēssit ā Brundisiō,** CAES., *B.C.*, III. 24, 4 ; *Libo departed from Brundisium.*

When the substantives **urbe,** *city,* and **oppidō,** *town,* are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighborhood is intended.

**Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiae,** *from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.*   **Ex oppidō Gergoviā,** CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 4, 2 ; *from the town of Gergovia.*

2. The Place Whence embraces all the places involved.

**Agrigentō ex Aesculāpiī fānō,** whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.*

**Unde domō?** V., *A.*, VIII. 114 ; *from what home ?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

### C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

#### Ablātīvus Sociātīvus.

**392.** The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition **cum,** *with.*

**Cum febrī domum rediit,** C., *Or.*, III. 2, 6 ; *he returned home with a fever.*

**Cum baculō pērāque senex,** MART., IV. 53, 3 ; *an old man with stick and wallet.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without **cum** :

**Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC in castra pervēnit,** CAES., *B.C.*, I. 41, 1 ; *Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.*

**Albānī ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum impetum fēcēre,** L., I. 23, 3 ; *the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

**Nāvibus profectus est,** C., *Fam.*, XV. 3, 2 ; *he set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

**Hasdrubal mediam aciem Hispānīs fīrmat,** L., XXIII. 29, 4 ; *Hasdrubal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops.*

## II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

### Ablative of Time. Ablātīvus Temporis.

**393.** Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

**Quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādem Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēfla-grāvit,** *Cf.* C., *N.D.*, II. 27, 69 ; *on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground.*

**Sāturnī stella trīgintā ferē annīs cursum suum cōnficit,** C., *N.D.*, II. 20, 52 ; *the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

REMARKS.—1. Time Within Which may be expressed by **per** and the Accusative :

**Per eōs ipsōs diēs Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis trānscendit,** L., XXXI. 26, 1 ; *during those very days Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so usually with **tōtus,** *all, whole :*

**Nocte pluit tōtā,** V. (P. L. M., IV. 155 B) ; *all night* (Jupiter) *rains.* So with definite numbers ; but rarely in model prose.

**Apud Pȳthagoram discipulīs quīnque annīs tacendum erat,** SEN., *E.M.*, 52, 10 ; *in Pythagoras' school the disciples had to keep silence five years.*

3. When the notion is negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

**Rōscius Rōmam multīs annīs nōn vēnit,** C., *Rosc. Am.*, 27, 74 ; *Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years.*

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with **hīc,** *this ;* **ille,** *that :*

**Karthāginem hōc bienniō ēvertēs,** C., *Rep.*, VI. 11, 11 ; *Carthage you will overturn in the next two years.*

Transferred to **Ōrātiō Oblīqua,** hīc becomes ille (660, 3) :

**Diodōrus respondit illud argentum sē paucīs illīs diēbus mīsisse Lily-baeum,** C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 ; *Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).*

**394.** The Ablative with the preposition **in** is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

**Bis in diē,** *twice a day ;* **in pueritiā,** *in boyhood ;* **in adulēscentiā,** *in youth.*

**Nūllō modō mihǐ placuit bis in diē saturum fierī,** C., *Tusc.,* V. 35, 100 ; *it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.*

**Fēcī ego istaec itidem in adulēscentiā,** PL., *B.,* 410 ; *I did those things too in my youth.*

REMARK.—The use or omission of **in** sometimes changes the meaning. So **bellō Persicō**, *at the time of the Persian war;* but **in bellō**, *in war times;* **in pāce**, *in peace times.*

B. The Place Whence is transferred :

  1. To Origin.      2. To Respect or Specification.

### 1. Ablative of Origin.

**395.** Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin ; sometimes with the prepositions **ex** and **dē**.

**Amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs**, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 37, 1 : *young men born of a great house.*

**Sate sanguine dīvum!** V., *A.*, VI. 125 ; *seed of blood divine !*

**Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es**, TER., *Heaut.*, 1030 ; *you are his son and mine.*

**Ōdērunt nātōs dē paelice**, JUV., VI. 627 ; *they hate the offspring of the concubine.*

**Ab**, and occasionally **ex**, are employed of remote progenitors :

**Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs**, *Cf.* CAES., *B.G.*, II. 4, 1 ; *Belgians are mostly of German descent.*

**396.** The Ablative of Material takes **ex** in classical Latin.

**Ex animō cōnstāmus et corpore**, *Cf.* C., *Fin.*, IV. 8, 19 ; *we consist of mind and body.*

**Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta,** *a statue made of gold, of bronze.* Often an adjective is used : **aureus**, *golden;* **līgneus**, *wooden.*

REMARKS.—1. With **fierī** the previous state is given also by **dē** :

**Dē templō carcerem fierī!** C., *Ph.*, V. 7, 18 ; *from a temple to become a jail.*

**Ex ōrātōre arātor factus,** C., *Ph.*, III. 9, 22 ; *a pleader turned plowman.*

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late.

**Māvors caelātus ferrō,** V., *A.*, VIII. 700 ; *Mars carven of iron.*

### 2. Ablative of Respect.

**397.** The Ablative of Respect or Specification is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View ? According to What ? By What ? In Respect of What ?

**Dīscrīptus populus cēnsū, ōrdinibus, aetātibus,** C., *Leg.*, III. 19, 44 ; *a people drawn off according to income, rank,* (and) *age.*

**Ennius ingeniō māximus, arte rudis,** Ov., *Tr.*, II. 424 ; *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.*

**Animō ignāvus, procāx ōre**, Tac., *H.*, ii. 23, 18 ; *coward of soul, saucy of tongue.*

Noteworthy are the phrases : **crīne ruber**, *red-haired ;* **captus oculīs** (literally, *caught in the eyes*), *blind ;* **captus mente**, *insane ;* **meā sententiā**, *according to my opinion ;* **iūre**, *by right ;* **lēge**, *by law*, etc. ; and the Supines in **-tū** (436).

Remark.—Prepositions are also used, to show the conception :

**Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitus**, *Cf.* Caes. *B.G.*, vii. 88, 1 ; *the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.*

**Dē gestū intellegō quid respondeās**, C., *Vat.*, 15, 35 ; *I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.*

Similarly **ex lēge**, *according to law ;* **ex pactō**, *according to agreement ;* **ex (dē) mōre**, *according to custom ;* **ex animī sententiā**, *according to (my) heart's desire ;* **ex ūsū**, *useful.*

**398.** The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of **quam**, *than,* with the Nominative or Accusative. (*Ablātīvus Comparātiōnis.*)

**Tunica propior palliōst**, Pl., *Trin.*, 1154 ; *the shirt is nearer than the cloak.*

**Nihil est virtūte amābilius**, C., *Lael.*, 8, 28 ; *nothing is more attractive than virtue.*

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose :

**Lacrimā nihil citius ārēscit**, C., *Inv.*, i. 56, 109 ; *nothing dries more quickly than a tear.*

Remark.—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, r. 2.

**Phīdiae simulācra quibus nihil perfectius vidēmus**, C., *Or.*, 2, 8 ; *the statues of Pheidias, than which we see nothing more perfect.*

### C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

#### Ablātīvus Sociātīvus. Ablative of Attendance.

##### 1. Ablative of Manner.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner answers the question How? and is used with the Preposition **cum** when it has no Adjective ; with or without **cum** when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (*Ablātīvus Modī.*)

**Stellae circulōs suōs orbēsque cōnficiunt celeritāte mīrābilī**, C., *Rep.*, vi. 15, 15 ; *the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness.*

**Beātō vīvere est honestō, id est cum virtūte, vīvere**, C., *Fin.*, iii. 8, 29 ; *to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.*

## 2. Ablative of Quality.

*(Descriptive Ablative.)*

**400.** The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

**Āgēsilāus statūrā fuit humilī,** NEP., XVII. 8, 1 ; *Agesilāus was* (a man) *of low stature.*

**Ista turpiculō puella nāsō,** CAT., 41, 3 ; *that girl of yours with the ugly nose.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative ; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only ; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions **cum** may be used : **āgnus cum suillō capite,** L., XXXI. 12, 7 ; *a lamb with a swine's head.*

### 3. Ablative of Means.

**401.** The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition **ab (ā).** The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with **per.**

**Xerxēs certior factus est,**  
*Xerxes was informed,*
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{1. } \textbf{nūntiō, } by\ a\ message. \\ \text{2. } \textbf{ā nūntiō, } by\ a\ messenger. \\ \text{3. } \textbf{per nūntium, } by\ means\ of\ a\ messenger.\end{array}\right.$

**Virgīs caesī tribūnī ab lēgātō sunt,** L., XXIX. 18, 13 ; *the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

**Dīscite sānārī per quem didicistis amāre,** Ov.. *Rem.Am.,* 43 ; *learn to be healed by means of* (him by) *whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument. the constructions are reversed ; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful ; see 354, and 214, R. 2.

So **iacent suīs tēstibus,** C., *Mil.,* 18, 47 ; *they are cast by their own witnesses;* or, *they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person. So **dēserī ā mente, ā spē.**

**Vōbīs animus ab īgnāviā atque sōcordiā conruptus est,** S., *Iug.,* 31, 2 ; *you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.*

(3) 4. Verbs of *sacrificing* have the Abl. of Means.

**Quīnquāgintā caprīs sacrificāvērunt,** L., XLV. 16, 6 ; *they sacrificed fifty she-goats.*

(5) 6. **Nītor,** *I stay myself;* **fīdō, cōnfīdō,** *I trust, rely on,* have the Abl. **Diffīdō,** *I distrust,* always has the Dat. in model prose. **Contentus,** *satisfied,* and **frētus,** *supported, relying,* have the Ablative.

**Salūs omnium nōn vēritāte sōlum sed etiam fāmā nītitur,** Cf. C., *Q.F.,* I. ii. 1. 2 : *the welfare of all rests not on truth alone, but also on repute.*

**Omnēs mortālēs dīs sunt frētī,** PL., *Cas.,* 348 ; *all mortals rely upon the gods.*

### 4. Ablative of Standard. Ablātīvus Mēnsūrae.

**402.** The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

**Māgnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortūnā,** NEP., XVIII. 1, 1 ; *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

**Sonīs hominēs ut aera tinnītū dīgnōscimus,** QUINT., XI. 3, 31 ; *we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.*

REMARK.—**Ex** with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs ; so regularly with **aestimāre, exīstimāre, spectāre,** in the sense of *judge, value.*

**Sīc est vulgus : ex vēritāte pauca, ex opīniōne multa aestimat,** C., *Rosc.Com.,* 10, 29 ; *this is the way of the rabble : they value few things by* (the standard of) *truth, many by* (the standard of) *opinion.*

**403.** Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

**Sōl multīs partibus māior est quam terra ūniversa,** C., *N.D.,* II. 36, 92 ; *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth.*

**Perfer et obdūrā : multō graviōra tulistī,** Ov., *Tr.,* v. 11, 7 ; *bear to the end and be firm : you have borne much heavier burdens.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with **ante,** *before,* and **post,** *after :*

**Paucīs ante diēbus, paucīs diēbus ante,** *a few days before.*

**Paucīs post diēbus, paucīs diēbus post,** *a few days after, afterward.*

**Duōbus annīs postquam Rōma condita est,** *two years after Rome was founded.*

**Paulō post Trōiam captam,** *a little while after the taking of Troy.*

The Acc. can also be employed : **post paucōs annōs,** *after a few years ;* **ante paucōs annōs,** *a few years before ;* and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when **quam** follows) : *two hundred years after(ward)* may be :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Ducentīs annīs post** | *or* | **Ducentēsimō annō post,** |
| **Post ducentōs annōs** | *or* | **Post ducentēsimum annum.** |

### 5. Ablative of Price.

**404.** Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

**Eriphȳla aurō virī vītam vēndidit,** C., *Inv.*, I. 50, 94 ; *Eriphyle sold her husband's life for gold.*

**Vīgintī talentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem Īsocratēs vēndidit,** PLIN., *N.H.*, VII. 31, 110 ; *Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.*

**Ēmit morte immortālitātem,** QUINT., IX. 3, 71; *he purchased deathlessness with death.*

REMARK.—**Mūtāre,** *to exchange,* is sometimes Give, sometimes Get ; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy ; the latter in poetry and later prose.

**Nēmŏ nisi victor pāce bellum mūtāvit,** S., *C.*, 58, 15 ; *no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace.*

**Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtātur,** *Cf.* TAC., *Ann.*, III. 44, 10 ; *a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.*

### 6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

**405.** Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

**Dēmocritus dīcitur oculīs sē prīvāsse,** C., *Fin.*, V. 29, 87 ; *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.*

**Deus bonīs omnibus explēvit mundum,** *Cf.* C., *Univ.*, 3, 9 ; *God has filled the universe with all blessings.*

**Capua fortissimōrum virōrum multitūdine redundat,** C., *Pis.*, 11, 25 ; *Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen.*

REMARKS.—1. **Egeō** and **indigeō** also take the Genitive :

**Nōn tam artis indigent quam labōris,** C., *Or.*, I. 34, 156 ; *they are not so much in need of skill as of industry.* So **implērī,** V., *A.*, I. 214.

2. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb.

**Asellus onustus aurō,** C., *Att.*, I. 16, 12 ; *a donkey laden with gold.*

**Pollicitīs dīves quīlibet esse potest,** OV., *A.A.*, I. 444 ; *anybody can be rich in promises.*

**406.** **Opus** and **ūsus** take the Dative of the Person and the Ablative of the Thing.

**Opus** may be used as a predicate with the thing wanted as a subject.

**Novō cōnsiliō mihi nunc opus est,** PL., *Ps.*, 601; *a new device is what I'm needing now.*

**Vīgintī iam ūsust fīliō argentī minīs,** PL., *Asin.*, 89 ; *my son has urgent need of twenty silver minae.*

**Nōn opus est verbīs sed fūstibus,** C., *Pis.*, 30, 73 ; *there is need not of words, but of cudgels.*

**Quod nōn opus est asse cārum est,** Cato (Sen., *E.M.*, 94, 27) ; *what you do not want* (have no use for) *is dear at a penny.*

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

**Quod parātō opus est, parā,** Ter., *And.*, 523 ; *what must be got ready, get ready.*

**Vīcīnō conventōst opus,** Pl., *Cas.*, 502 ; *the neighbor must be called on.*

### 7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

**407.** The Deponent Verbs **ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor,** take the Ablative.

**Victōriā ūtī nescīs,** L., xxii. 51, 4 ; *how to make use of victory you know not.*

**Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā,** C., *Cat.*, i. 1, 1; *how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience ?*

**Lūx quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur,** *Cf.* C., *Rosc.Am.*, 45, 131 ; *the light which we enjoy is given to us by God.*

**Funguntur officiō,** C., *Cael.*, 9, 21 ; *they acquit themselves of their duty.*

**Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī,** Caes., *B.G.*, iii. 24, 2 ; *they thought it safer to make themselves masters of (gain) the victory without any wound.*

**Numidae lacte vescēbantur,** S., *Iug.*, 89, 7 ; *the Numidians made their regular food of milk (fed on milk).*

Remarks.—1. **Potior** has occasionally the Genitive.

2. On the Personal Gerundive of these verbs see 427, r. 5.

3. **Ūtor** is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation :

**Ūtī aliquō amīcō,** *to avail one's self of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him) ;* **ūtī cōnsiliō,** *to follow advice ;* **ūtī bonō patre,** *to have the advantage of having a good father ;* **ūtī lēgibus,** *to obey the laws.* See the Lexicons.

### D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

**408.** The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. *Ablātīvus Causae.*

**In culpā sunt quī officia dēserunt mollitiā animī,** C., *Fin.*, i. 10, 33 ; *they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.*

**Ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre,** H., *Ep.*, i. 16, 52 ; *the good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

**Dēlictō dolēre, corrēctiōne gaudēre oportet,** C., *Lael.*, 24, 90 ; *one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement.*

REMARKS.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes : **adductus,** *led ;* **ārdēns,** *fired ;* **commōtus,** *stirred up ;* **incitātus,** *egged on ;* **incēnsus,** *inflamed ;* **impulsus,** *driven on ;* **mōtus,** *moved,* and many others ; **amōre,** *by love ;* **īrā,** *by anger ;* **odiō,** *by hate ;* **metū,** *by fear ;* **spē,** *by hope, etc.* **Metū perterritus,** *sore frightened ;* **verēcundiā dēterritus,** *abashed, etc.*

2. Instead of the simple Abl. prepositions are often used ; especially, **dē** and **ex** with the Abl., or **ob** and **propter** with the Accusative.

3. The preventing cause is expressed by **prae,** *for :* **Prae gaudiō ubi sim nesciō,** TER., *Heaut.*, 308 ; *I know not where I am for joy.*

## E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**409.** The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

**410.** The Ablative Absolute answers to the English so-called Nominative Absolute, but for purposes of style, it is often well to vary the translation.

**Xerxe rēgnante** (= cum **Xerxēs rēgnāret**), *Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe victō** (= cum **Xerxēs victus esset**), *Xerxes defeated, being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.*

**Xerxe rēge** (= cum **Xerxēs rēx esset**), *Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.*

**Patre vīvō,** WHILE *father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).*

**Urbe expūgnātā imperātor rediit :**

PASSIVE FORM : *The city* [being] *taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.*

ACTIVE FORM : *Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.*

ABSTRACT FORM : *After the taking of the city. After taking the city.*

**Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante,** C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117 ; *all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate,* IF (or WHEN) *the pleasure* (of the senses) *is mistress.*

**Rōmānī veterēs rēgnārī omnēs volēbant lībertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā,** L., I. 17, 3 ; *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them* (BECAUSE they had) *not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English :

**Iuvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perūnxērunt,** C., *Tusc.*, I. 47, 113 ; *the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil ;* or, *laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

(2) 3. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace* is to be rendered : **Mānlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.**

This rule is frequently violated, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

**Neque illum mē vīvō corrumpī sinam,** PL., *B.,* 419 ; *nor will I suffer him to de debauched while I am alive.*

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive :

**Iugurtha frātre meō interfectō rēgnum ēius sceleris suī praedam fēcit,** S., *Iug.,* 14, 11 ; *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

## LOCATIVE.

**411.** In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

**Pompēius hiemāre Dȳrrhachiī, Apollōniae omnibusque oppidīs cōnstitu-erat,** CAES., *B.C.,* III. 5, 1 ; *Pompey had determined to winter at Dyr-rhachium, Apollonia, and all the towns.*

**Rhodī ego nōn fuī, sed fuī in Bīthȳniā,** C., *Planc.,* 34, 83 ; *I was not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.*

REMARKS.—1. Other Locative forms are, **domī,** *at home* (61, R. 2), **humī,** *on the ground,* **bellī,** and **mīlitiae,** in the combinations **domī mīli-tiaeque, bellī domīque,** *in peace and in war, at home and in the field ;* **rūrī,** *in the country* (but **rūre meō,** *on my farm*). So perhaps **animī,** *at heart* (374, R.).

**Parvī sunt forīs arma nisi est cōnsilium domī,** C., *Off.,* I. 22, 76 ; *of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

**Iacēre humī,** C., *Cat.,* I. 10, 26 ; *to lie on the ground.*

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with **in,** and regu-larly follow when qualified by an attribute :

**Mīlitēs Albae cōnstitērunt in urbe opportūnā,** C., *Ph.,* IV. 2, 6 ; *the sol-diers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.*

**Archiās Antiochīae nātus est celebrī quondam urbe**, C., *Arch.*, 3, 4 ; *Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.*

When **urbe**, *city*, **oppidō**, *town*, or **īnsulā**, *island*, precedes, the preposition is always employed :

**In urbe Rōmā**, *in the city* (of) *Rome*. **In oppidō Citiō**, *in the town of Citium*. **In īnsulā Samō**, *in the island* (of) *Samos.*

3. **Domī** takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive :

**Domī suae senex est mortuus**, C., *N.D.*, III. 32, 81 ; *the old man died at his own house.*

**Metuis ut meae domī cūrētur dīligenter**, TER., *Hec.*, 257 ; *you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house.*

Also **aliēnae domuī** (61, R. 2), C., *Tusc.*, I. 22, 51 ; *in a strange house ;* **domī illīus**, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 18, 58 ; *in his house.*

But **in domō Periclī** (65), NEP., VII. 2, 1 ; *in the house*(hold) *of Pericles.* **In domō castā**, *in a pure house.* **In domō**, *in the house* (not, *at home*).

## PREPOSITIONS.

**412.** The Prepositions serve to define more narrowly the ideas of place involved in the cases.

The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs.

The cases used with Prepositions are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper Prepositions. The prefixes **amb-** (**am- an-**), **dis** (**dī**), **por-** (**porr-, pol-**), **red-** (**re-**), **sēd-** (**sē-**), and **vē-** are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

**413.** *Position of the Preposition.*—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

REMARKS.—1. **Cum** always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun : **mēcum**, *with me ;* **quōcum** or **cum quō**, *with whom.* **Dē** is not uncommonly placed after **quō** and **quā**, rarely after **quibus**.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often.

**Tenus**, *as far as*, and **versus**, *-ward*, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between : **hanc ob causam** (C., *Br.*, 24, 94), *for this reason.*

In poetry and later prose both Preposition and attribute are sometimes postponed : **metū in māgnō**, L., IX. 37, 11; *in great fear.*

3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by a word or two : **post vērō Sullae victōriam,** *but after Sulla's victory;* **ad beātē vīvendum,** *for living happily.*

**414.** *Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.*—With different words, the Preposition is repeated, **(a)** when the Preposition is emphatic, or (*b*) when the individual words are to be distinguished ; as is the case after **aut—aut, et—et, nec—nec, vel—vel, nōn modo—sed etiam, sed, nisi, quam,** and in comparative clauses with **ut.**

Otherwise it is omitted ; so always with **que.**

**Et ex urbe et ex agrīs,** C., *Cat.,* II. 10, 21; *both from* (the) *city and from* (the) *country.*

**Dē honōre aut dē dīgnitāte contendimus,** C., *Tusc.,* III. 21, 50 ; *we are striving about office, or about position.*

REMARKS.—1. When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

**Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam (in) quam pater suus,** NEP., V. 3, 1 ; *Cimon fell into the same disrepute into which his father had fallen.*

(2, 3) 4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of **is** used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb :

**Prō Scīpiōne et adversus Scīpiōnem,** L., XXIX. 19, 10 ; *for and against Scipio.* **Ante pūgnam et post eam,** *before and after the battle.* **Et in corpore et extrā,** C., *Fin.,* II. 21, 68 ; *both in the body and outside.*

## I. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative.

**416.** The Prepositions construed with the Accusative are :

**Ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, īnfrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, (pōne) post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, suprā, trāns, ūltrā, ūsque, versus.**

1. **Ad.** Of Motion Whither, *to, up to.* Of Direction, *towards.* Of Respect, *for, with regard to.* Of Manner, *after, according to.* Of Place, *at.* Of Time, *at.* With Numerals, *about.* Of Purpose, *for.*

2. **Adversus** (-um), [*i.e., turned to*]. *Towards, over against, against.*

3. **Ante** [*i.e., over against, facing*]. Of Place Where, *before.* Of Time, *before ;* the most frequent use.

4. **Apud** is used chiefly of Persons. *At the house of* (characteristic locality). *In the presence of. In the writings of. In the view of.* Of Place, *at, in* (= **in**). In phrases like **apud sē esse,** *to be in one's senses.*

5. **Circā, circum.** *Around.* **Circum** is exclusively local. **Circā** also means *about,* of Time or Number.

6. **Circiter.** Usually of Time, *about,* especially with numerals.

7. **Cis, citrā,** of Place, *this side, short of.* **Citrā,** of Time, *within, this side of. Without (stopping short of).*

(8) 9. **Contrā.** *Opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.*

10. **Ergā.** *Opposite, towards.* Usually of friendly disposition ; rarely of Place.

11. **Extrā.** *Without, outside of, beside.*

12. **Īnfrā.** *Beneath, lower down;* of Space, Rank, or Grade.

13. **Inter.** *Between;* of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Of Time, *during.*

14. **Intrā.** *Within.* Of Place and Time.

15. **Iūxtā** [*i.e., adjoining*]. *Hard by, near, next to.* Usually of Place.

16. **Ob** [*i.e., over against, opposite to*]. Rarely of Place, *right before.* Usually of Cause, *for.*

17. **Penes.** *With = in the hands of;* usually of Persons.

18. **Per.** Of Space, *through;* of Time, *during;* of Cause, *owing to;* of Instrument, *by* (both persons and things) ; of Manner, *by, in.* It is also used in oaths, *by.*

19. **Pōne.** *Behind,* only of Place, and rare.

20. **Post.** Of Place, *behind;* rare. Of Time, *after.* Of Rank, *subordinate to.*

21. **Praeter.** Of Place, *in front of, on before, past.* Also, *except; contrary to.* Of Rank, *beyond.*

22. **Prope.** Usually of Place, *near.* **Propius** and **proximus** also occur occasionally as prepositions.

23. **Propter.** Of Place, *near.* Of Cause, *on account of.*

24. **Secundum** [*i.e., following*]. Of Time, *immediately after.* Of Series, *next to.* Of Reference, *according to.*

25. **Suprā.** Of Place, *above, beyond.* Of Grade, *above.*

26. **Trāns.** *On the other side, beyond, across;* only of Place.

27. **Ūltrā.** Of Space and Measure, *on that side, beyond.*

(28) 29. **Versus,** *-ward.* Usually with names of Towns, and small Islands ; otherwise with the prepositions **ad** or **in.**

## II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

**417.** Prepositions construed with the Ablative are **ā (ab, abs), cōram, cum, dē, ē (ex), prae, prō, sine, tenus.**

1. **A (ab, abs).** Of Place Whence, *from;* so in phrases, **ā tergō,** *from (on) the rear,* **ā capite,** *etc.* Of Cause, *from.* Of Agent, *by.* Of Remote Origin, *from.* Of Time, *from.*

Note.—The form before vowels and **h** is always **ab**; before consonants usually **ā**, though **ab** is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials **b, f, p, v,** and is frequent before **l, n, r, s,** and **i (j)**; **abs** is found only before **tē**.

(2) 3. **Cōram.** *Face to face with, in the presence of.*

4. **Cum.** *With ;* of Accompaniment in the widest sense.

5. **Dē.** Of Place, *down from,* and then *from ;* especially with compounds of **dē** and **ex.** Of Source, *from.* Of Origin. Of Object, *concerning.* Of the Whole *from* which a part is taken.

6. **Ē (ex).** Of Place, *out of, from.* Of Time, *from.* Of Origin, *from.* Of Reference, *according to.*

Note. –**Ē** is used before consonants only, **ex** before both vowels and consonants.

(7) 8. **Palam,** in the sense of **cōram,** *in the presence of,* is very rare.

9. **Prae.** Of Place, *in front of.* Of the Preventive Cause, *for.* Of Comparison, *in comparison with.*

10. **Prō.** Of Place, *before ;* rare and in phrases. *In behalf of. Instead of. In proportion to.*

(11, 12) 13. **Sine,** *without,* is opposed to **cum.**

14. **Tenus,** *to the extent of.* Of Space (actual and transferred), *as far as.* It is regularly put after its case.

## III. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

**418.** Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are **in, sub, subter, super.**

1. **In.** (*a*) With Accusative : Of Place, *into, into the midst of.* Of Disposition and Direction, *towards.* Of Time, *into, for.* Of Purpose or Destination, *for.* Of Manner, *in, after.* With Distributives, *to, among.*

(*b*) With Ablative : Of Place, *in, on.* Of Time, *within.* Of Reference, *in the case of, in regard to, in the matter of.* Of Condition, *in.*

2. **Sub.** (*a*) With Accusative : Of Place Whither, *under.* Of Time Approaching, *about ;* just Past, *immediately after.* Of Condition, *under.*

(*b*) With Ablative : Of Place Where, *under.* Of Time When, *about.* Of Position, *under.* Of Condition, *under.*

3. **Subter,** *under.* (*a*) With Accusative ; rare, and locally equal to **sub.**

(*b*) With the Ablative ; more rare and almost wholly poetical.

4. **Super.** (*a*) Usually of Place, *over, above.* Post-classical.

(*b*) With the Ablative : Of Space, *above.* Of Time, *during.*

## INFINITIVE.

### The Infinitive as a Substantive.

**419.** The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb. It corresponds to the English Infinitive and to the English verbal substantive in *-ing :*

**Amāre,** *to love ; the loving.*

The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it may take an adverb and has voice and the construction of the verb :

**Amāre,** *to love ;* **valdē amāre,** *to love hugely ;* **amārī,** *to be loved ;* **amāre aliquem,** *to love a man ;* **nocēre alicuī,** *to hurt a man.*

**420.** The Subject of the Infinitive, expressed or unexpressed, is in the Accusative Case, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

**Rēgem esse,** *to be king.*    **Bonum esse,** *to be good.*

**Quid stultius quam aliquem sibī placēre !** SEN., *E.M.*, 74, 17 ; *what is more foolish than for a man to be pleased with himself ?*

So in the paradigm of the verb :

**Amātūrum esse,** *to be about to love.*

**421.** The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. The other cases are supplied by the Gerund and the Supine.

REMARKS.—1. The Inf. is occasionally used to express Design, particularly in the poets, never in good prose.

**Semper in Ōceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās,** PROP., II. 16, 17 ; *she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for pearls.*

2. Similarly after some adjectives of *capability, ability, necessity, etc.,* especially in the poets, where model prose requires Sup. in -tū or a Final clause.

### The Infinitive as a Subject.

**422.** The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

**Incipere multō est quam inpetrāre facilius,** PL., *Poen.*, 974 ; *beginning is much easier (work) than winning.*

**Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est,** OV., *M.*, IX. 6 ; *'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten, as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

## The Infinitive as an Object.

**423.** 1. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Auxiliary Verbs.

2. Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

**Ēmorī cupiō,** TER., *Heaut.*, 971 ; *I want to die.*

**Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser,** OV., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78 ; *but I pray that I may be more safely wretched.*

**Vincere scīs, Hannibal ; victōriā ūtī nescīs,** L., XXII. 51 ; *how to win victory, you know, Hannibal ; how to make use of victory, you know not.*

**Quī mentīrī solet, pēierāre cōnsuēvit,** C., *Rosc. Com.*, 16, 46 ; *he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.*

**Vulnera quae fēcit dēbuit ipse patī,** OV., *Am.*, II. 3, 4 ; *the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.*

**Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,** CAT., VIII. 1 ; *poor, poor Catullus, prithee cease to play the fool.*

So **habeō,** *I have* (it in my power).

**Tantum habeō pollicērī mē tibī cumulātē satisfactūrum,** C., *Fam.*, I. 5ᴀ, 3 ; *so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction.*

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. Notice that **coepī,** *I have begun,* and **dēsinō,** *I cease,* are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives.

**Bellō Athēniēnsēs undique premī sunt coeptī,** NEP., XIII. 3, 1 ; *the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.*

**Veterēs ōrātiōnēs legī sunt dēsitae,** C., *Br.*, 32, 123 ; *the old speeches have ceased to be read.*

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

4. Verbs of Will and Desire take **ut** as well as the Infinitive. So regularly **optō,** *I choose,* in classical prose. See 546.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat take the same tenses as verbs of Saying and Thinking (530).

**Subruptūrum pallam prōmīsit tibī,** PL., *Asin.*, 930 ; *he promised to steal the mantle from you.*

But they are also treated occasionally as in English.

6. **Doceō,** *I teach,* **iubeō,** *I bid,* **vetō,** *I forbid,* **sinō,** *I let,* take the Inf. as a Second Accusative (339) :

**Dionȳsius tondēre fīliās suās docuit,** C., *Tusc.*, v. 20, 58 ; *Dionysius taught his daughters to shave* (taught them shaving).

**Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus,** MART., II. 59 ; *a god himself bids you remember* (376) *death.*

**Vītae summa brevis spem nōs vetat inchoāre longam,** H., *O.*, I. 4, 15 ; *life's brief sun forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.*

13

**Neu sinās Mēdōs** equitāre inultōs, H., *O.*, I. 2, 51 ; *nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.*

### The Infinitive as a Predicate.

**424.** The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula **esse**, *to be*, and the like.

**Doctō hominī et ērudītō vīvere est cōgitāre**, C., *Tusc.*, V. 38, 111 : *to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think, living is thinking.*

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**425.** The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

N.   **Legere difficile est,** *reading (to read) is hard to do.*
G.   **Ars legendī,** *the art of reading.*
      **Puer studiōsus est legendī,** *the boy is zealous of reading.*
D.   **Puer operam dat legendō,** *the boy devotes himself to reading.*
Ac.  **Puer cupit legere,** *the boy is desirous to read.*
      **Puer prōpēnsus est ad legendum,** *the boy has a bent toward reading.*
Ab.  **Puer dīscit legendō,** *the boy learns by reading.*

REMARK.—The Infinitive is sometimes quoted :
**Multum interest inter " dare " et " accipere,"** SEN., *Ben.*, 5, 10 ; *there is a vast difference between " Give " and " Receive."*

**426.** The Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

**Hominēs ad deōs nūllā rē propius accēdunt, quam salūtem hominibus dandō,** C., *Lig.*, 12, 38 ; *men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.*

**427.** *Gerundive for Gerund.*—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

G.   **Plācandī Deī,** *of appeasing God.*
D.   **Plācandō Deō,** *for appeasing God.*
Ab.  **Plācandō Deō,** *by appeasing God.*

In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

**Ad plācandōs Deōs,** *for appeasing the gods* (C., *Cat.*, III. 8, 20).
**In plācandīs Diīs,** *in appeasing the gods.*

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted : **aliquid faciendī ratiō**, C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36 ; *method of doing something*.

But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used : **cupiditās vērī videndī**, C., *Fin.*, II. 14, **46** ; *the desire of seeing the truth*.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Accusative.

**Ad nōn pārendum senātuī**, L., XLII. 9 ; *for not obeying the senate*.

5. Note as an exception to the foregoing rule that the Gerundives from **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor** (407), have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases.

### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**428.** The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement.

**Sapientia ars vīvendī putanda est**, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42 ; *philosophy is to be considered the art of living.*

**Trīste est nōmen ipsum carendī**, C., *Tusc.*, I. 36, 87 ; *dismal is the mere word "* **carēre** *" (go without).*

**Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī**, Ov., *Tr.*, V. 8, 22 ; *I am not without hope of appeasing God.*

**Īgnōrant cupidī maledīcendī plūs invidiam quam convīcium posse**, QUINT., VI. 2, 16 ; *those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.*

**Neuter suī prōtegendī corporis memor (erat)**, L., II. 6, 9 ; *neither thought of shielding his own body.*

REMARKS.—1. As **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** are neuter singulars, from **meum**, *my being,* **tuum,** *thy being,* **suum,** *one's being, etc.,* the Gerundive is put in the same form : **cōnservandī suī,** *of preserving themselves;* **vestrī adhortandī,** *of exhorting you;* and no regard is had to number or gender.

**Cōpia plācandī sit modo parva tuī**, Ov., *Her.* 20, 74 ; *let* (me) *only have a slight chance of trying to appease you* (feminine).

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with **causā**, less often with **grātiā,** and rarely with (antiquated) **ergō,** *on account of,* to express Design : **Dissimulandī causā in senātum vēnit**, S., *C.*, 31, 52 ; *he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation.*

With many substantives and adjectives the Infinitive is also allowable (422). Sometimes there is a difference in meaning ; thus **tempus** with Gerund, *the proper time* (*season*), with Inf. *high time.*

### Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**429.** The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.

The more common construction is **ad** with the Accusative.

**Lignum āridum māteria est idōnea ēliciendīs īgnibus,** *Cf.* SEN., *N.Q.*, II. 22, 1 ; *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).*

So particularly after **esse** : **Solvendō cīvitātēs nōn erant,** *Cf.* C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 2 ; *the communities were not (the people) to pay, (ready to pay, solvent).* **Scit sē esse onerī ferendō,** SEN., *E.M.*, 71, 26 ; *he knows that he is (man enough) to bear the burden.*

Similarly **comitia decemvirīs creandīs,** C., *Leg. Agr.*, 2, 8; *assemblies for creating decemvirs.*

### Accusative of the Gerundive.

**430.** The Accusative of the Gerundive is used after such verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking.

**Dīvitī hominī id aurum servandum dedit,** PL., *B.*, 338 ; *he gave that gold to a rich man to keep.*

**Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat,** NEP., IX. 4, 5 ; *Conon has the walls rebuilt.*

**Patriam dīripiendam relīquimus,** C., *Fam.*, XVI. 12, 1 ; *we have left our country to be plundered.*

**Carvilius aedem faciendam locāvit,** L., X. 46, 14; *Carvilius let the* (contract of) *building the temple.*

The passive form has the Nominative :

**Dēmētrius ad patrem redūcendus lēgātīs datus est,** L., XXXVI. 35, 13 ; *Demetrius was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.*

### Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**431.** The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

**Ūnus homō nōbīs cunctandō restituit rem,** ENNIUS (C., *Cat. M.*, 4, 10) ; *one man by lingering raised our cause again.*

**Plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedērunt,** *Cf.* C., *Att.*, IV. 1, 6 ; *they clapped when my name was read.*

### Prepositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

**432.** The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition **ad,** seldom **ante, circā, ergā, in, inter, ob, propter,** and **super.** See 427.

Nūlla rēs tantum ad dīcendum prōficit quantum scrīptiō, C., *Br.,* 24, 92 ; *nothing is so profitable for speaking as is writing.*

Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspīrāvit, *Cf.* L., II. 20, 9 ; *while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

**433.** The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions **ab, dē, ex,** often **in,** but seldom **cum, prō,** and **super.**

Librī dē contemnendā glōriā, C., *Tusc.,* I. 15, 34 ; *books on the contempt of glory.*

Ex dīscendō capiunt voluptātem, *Cf.* C., *Fin.,* V. 18, 48 ; *they receive pleasure from learning.*

Brūtus in līberandā patriā (= dum līberat) est interfectus, C., *Cat. M.,* 20, 75 ; *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.*

## SUPINE.

**434.** The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

### The Accusative Supine.

**435.** The Supine in -**tum** is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

Galliae lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt, CAES., *B.G.,* I. 30, 1 ; *the commissioners of Gaul waited on Caesar to congratulate him.*

Spectātum veniunt ; veniunt spectentur ut ipsae, OV., *A.A.,* I. 99 ; *they come to see the show ; they come to be themselves a show.*

Gallī cum sōle eunt cubitum, PLIN., *N.H.,* X. 24, 46 ; *cocks go to roost with the sun (at sunset).*

REMARK.—The Fut. Inf. passive is actually made up of the passive Inf. of **īre,** *to go,* **īrī** (*that a movement is made,* from **ītur**; 208, 2), and the Supine :

Rūmor venit datum īrī gladiātōrēs, TER., *Hec.,* 39 ; *the rumor comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.*

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nom. (528).

Reus damnātum īrī vidēbātur, QUINT., IX. 2, 88 ; *the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

### The Ablative Supine.

**436.** The Supine in **-tū** is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of Respect (397). It never takes an object.

**Mīrābile dictū,** *wonderful (in the telling) to tell,* **vīsū,** *to behold.*

**Id dictū quam rē facilius est,** L., xxxi. 38, 4 ; *that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).*

## PARTICIPLE.

**437.** The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its verbal nature.

**Nihil est māgnum somniantī,** C., *Div.,* ii. 68, 141 ; *nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).*

**Rēgia rēs est succurrere lāpsīs,** Ov., *Pont.,* ii. 9, 11 : *it is a kingly thing (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.*

REMARK.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form : **rēctē facta,** *right actions ;* **facētē dictum,** *a witty remark.*

**438.** The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

**Epamīnōndās erat temporibus sapienter ūtēns,** Nep., xv. 3, 1 : *Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities* (= **is quī ūterētur**).

**Senectūs est operōsa et semper agēns aliquid,** *Cf.* C., *Cat.M.,* 8, 26 ; *old age is busy, and always doing something.*

REMARKS.—1. Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive :

**Mūnera nōn ad dēliciās muliebrēs quaesīta nec quibus nova nūpta cōmātur,** Tac., *Germ.,* 18 ; *gifts not sought out for woman's fancies, nor those by which a bride adorns herself.*

2. The Fut. Part. is used after verbs of motion to express Design ; but this is rare in model prose; see 670, 3.

## ADVERB.

**439.** Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, also sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

      **Male vīvit,** *he lives ill ;*         **bene est,** *it is well ;*

| | |
|---|---|
| **ferē omnēs,** *almost all ;* | **admodum adulēscēns,** *a mere youth ;* |
| **nimis saepe,** *too often ;* | **lātē rēx** (V., A., I. 21), *wide-ruling ;* |
| **bis cōnsul,** *twice consul ;* | **duo simul bella,** *two simultaneous wars.* |

**440.** *Position of the Adverb.*—Adverbs are commonly put immediately before the words they qualify.

They occasionally follow the verb.

**Iniūstē facit,** *he acts unjustly.* **Admodum pulcher,** *handsome to a degree, very handsome.* **Valdē dīligenter,** *very carefully.*

REMARK.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry :

**Īram bene Ennius initium dīxit īnsāniae,** C., *Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52 ; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

**Vīxit dum vīxit bene,** TER., *Hec.*, 461 ; *he lived while he lived* (and lived) *well.*

### Negative Adverbs.

**441.** There are two original negatives in Latin, **nē** and **haud (haut, hau).** From **nē** is derived **nōn.**

**442. Nōn** (the absolute *not*) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

**Quem amat, amat ; quem nōn amat, nōn amat,** PETR., 37 ; *whom she likes, she likes ; whom she does not like, she does not like.*

**Nōn ausim,** *I should not venture.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn,** as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, R. 1.)

2. **Nōn** is the rule in antitheses : **Nōn est vīvere sed valēre vīta,** MART., VI. 70, 15 ; *not living, but being well, is life.*

**443. Haud** is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs : **haud quisquam,** *not any ;* **haud māgnus,** *not great ;* **haud male,** *not badly.*

**444.** 1. **Nē** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

**Tū nē cēde malīs,** V., A., VI. 95 ; *yield not thou to misfortunes.*

**Nē trānsierīs Hibērum,** L., XXI. 44, 6 ; *do not cross the Ebro.*

**Nē vīvam, sī sciō,** C., *Att.*, IV. 16, 8 ; *may I cease to live* (strike me dead), *if I know.*

2. **Nē** is continued by **nēve** or **neu.**

Nē illam vēndās, neu mē perdās hominem amantem, PL., *Ps.*, 322 ; *don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.*

**445.** *Subdivision of the Negative.*—A negative may be subdivided by **neque—neque**, as well as by **aut—aut**, or strengthened by **nē—quidem**, *not even.*

Nihil umquam neque īnsolēns neque glōriōsum ex ōre Tīmoleontis prōcēssit, NEP., XX. 4, 2 ; *nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.*

Cōnsciōrum nēmō aut latuit aut fūgit, L., XXIV. 5, 14 ; *of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.*

Numquam Scīpiōnem nē minimā quidem rē offendī, C., *Lael.*, 27, 103 ; *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.*

"I will give *no* thousand crowns, *neither.*"—SHAKS., *As You Like It*, I. I, 78.

**446.** *Negative Combinations.*—In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one ; nothing ever*, or, *never anything ;* in Latin, the former turn is invariably used : **nēmō umquam,** *no one ever.*

Verrēs nihil umquam fēcit sine aliquō quaestū, C., *Verr.*, V. 5, 11 ; *Verres never did anything without some profit or other.*

REMARK.—*No one yet* is **nōndum quisquam ;** *no more, no longer,* is **iam nōn.**

**447.** **Negō** (*I say no. I deny*) is commonly used instead of **dīcō nōn,** *I say—not.*

Vel aī vel negā, ACCIUS, 125 (R.) ; *say yes or say no !*
Assem sēsē datūrum negat, C., *Quinct.*, ; *he says that he will not give a copper.*

**448.** *Position of the Negative.*—The Negative usually stands immediately before the Predicate, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

Nē—quidem, *not even,* bestrides the emphatic word or group.

Potes nōn revertī, SEN., *E. M.*, 49, 10 ; *possibly you may not return* (nōn potes revertī, *you cannot possibly return*).

Saepe virī fallunt ; tenerae nōn saepe puellae, Ov., *A. A.*, III. 31 ; *often do men deceive ; soft-hearted maidens not often.*

Nōn omnis aetās, Lȳde, lūdō convenit, PL., *B.*, 129 ; *not every age,* (good) *Lydus* (Playfair), *sorts with play.*

Nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem redimere potuērunt, *Cf.* CAES., *B. G.*, I. 37, 2 ; *they could not buy back peace, even by giving hostages.*

**449.** Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445 :

**Nōn negō,** *I do not deny (I admit)*.

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn possum nōn,** *I cannot but (I must)* :

**Quī mortem in malīs pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre,** C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29 ; *he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

(2, 3) 4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations :

| *Indefinite Affirmative.* | | *General Affirmative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **nōnnihil,** | *somewhat ;* | **nihil nōn,** | *everything ;* |
| **nōnnēmŏ,** | *some one, some ;* | **nēmŏ nōn,** | *everybody ;* |
| **nōnnūllī,** | *some people ;* | **nūllī nōn,** | *all ;* |
| **nōnnumquam,** | *sometimes ;* | **numquam nōn,** | *always ;* |
| **nōnnūsquam,** | *somewhere ;* | **nūsquam nōn,** | *everywhere.* |

**In ipsā cūriā nōnnēmŏ hostis est,** C., *Mur.*, 39, 84 ; *in the senate-house itself there are enemies* (**nēmŏ nōn hostis est,** *everybody is an enemy*).

**Nōn est plācandī spēs mihi nūlla Deī,** Ov., *Tr.*, v. 8, 22 (428) ; *I have some hope of appeasing God* (**nūlla spēs nōn est,** *I have every hope*).

**Nēmŏ nōn didicisse māvult quam dīscere,** QUINT., III. 1, 6 ; *everybody prefers having learned to learning.*

## INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.
### Interrogative Sentences.

**450.** An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. It is completed by the answer.

**451.** A question may relate :

(*a*) To the verb : Predicate Question :

**Vīvitne pater ?** PL., *Capt.*, 282 ; *is my father alive ?*

(*b*) To some other part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverb : Nominal Question.

**Quis est ?** *Who is it ?* **Quid ais ?** *What do you say ?* **Quī hīc mōs ?** *What sort of way is this ?* **Cūr nōn discēdis ?** *Why do you not depart ?*
For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

**452.** 1. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I ?* (simple) ; *Am I, or am I not ?* (disjunctive).

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I ?* (direct) ; *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

## DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**453.** Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

**Īnfēlīx est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit?** SEN., *Dial.*, I. 3. 6 ; *Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible !)

**Heus, inquit, linguam vīs meam praeclūdere?** PHAEDR., I. 23, 5 ; *Ho ! ho ! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do?* (You shall not.)

**Tuum parasītum nōn nōvistī?** PL., *Men.*, 505 ; *you dont know your own parasite?* (Strange !)

**454.** *Interrogative Particles.*— -**Ne** (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

This emphatic word usually begins the sentence.

**Omnisne pecūnia dissolūta est?** C., *Verr.*, III. 77, 180 ; *is* ALL *the money paid out?* (**Estne omnis pecūnia dissolūta?** IS *all the money paid out?*)

**455. Nōnne** expects the answer *Yes.*

**Nōnne meministī?** C., *Fin.*, II. 3, 10 ; *do you not remember?*
**Nōnne is generōsissimus quī optimus?** QUINT, V. 11, 4 ; *is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?*
So the other negatives with -**ne** : **nēmōne, nihilne,** and the like.

**456. Num** expects the answer *No.*

**Numquis est hīc alius praeter mē atque tē?** **Nēmō est,** PL., *Tr.*, 69 ; *is anybody here besides you and me?* *No.*

**457.** 1. **An** (*or*) belongs properly to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is left out. The second alternative with **an** (*or, then*) serves to indicate Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, or Irony.

**Nōn manum abstinēs?** **An tibi iam māvīs cerebrum dispergam hīc?** TER., *Ad.*, 781; *are you not going to keep your hands off?* *Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now?*

**An nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs?** OV., *Her.*, 16, 166 ; (my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so?) *or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands* (arms).

2. Especially to be noted, in connection with **an**, are the phrases, **nesciŏ an, haud sciŏ an,** *I do not know but;* **dubitŏ an,** *I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think.*

**Haud sciŏ an ita sit,** C., *Tusc.*, II. 17, 41 ; *I do not know but it is so.*

**Dubitŏ an Thrasybūlum prīmum omnium pōnam,** NEP., VIII. 1, 1 ; *I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.*

## DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

**458**. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

| First Clause. | Second and Subsequent Clauses. |
|---|---|
| **utrum,** *whether*, | **an (anne),** *or* |
| **-ne,** | **an,** |
| ——— | **an (anne).** |

**Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderĭs, an prŏ nihilŏ id putās ?** C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3 ; *are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing ?*

**Vōsne Domitium an vŏs Domitius dēseruit ?** CAES., *B.C.*, II. 32, 8 ; *have you deserted Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you ?*

**Ēloquar an sileam ?** V., *A.*, III. 39 ; *shall I speak, or hold my peace ?*

**459.** In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necne**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**.

**Isne est quem quaerō, annōn ?** TER., *Ph.*, 852 ; *is that the man I am looking for, or not ?*

**Sitque memor nostrī necne, referte mihĭ,** Ov., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10 ; *bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us or no.*

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

**460**. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

### 1. Simple Questions.

(*a*) **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*.

**Speculārī iūssērunt num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent,** L., XLII. 19, 8 ; *they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.*

(*b*) **Sī,** *if,* is used for *whether,* chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial.   Compare $\bar{\mathbf{0}}$ **sī** (261).

**Temptāta rēs est sī prīmō impetū capī Ardea posset,** L., I. 57, 2 : *an attempt was made* (in case, in hopes that, to see) *if Ardea could be taken by a dash.*

### 2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with -ne in the second clause only is sometimes found in the Indirect Question.

**Tarquinius Prīscī Tarquiniī rēgis fīlius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet,** L., I. 46, 4 ; *whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of King Tarquin the Elder does not appear.*

## SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

**461.** Direct.

*Is the last syllable short or long ?  Cf.* C., *Or.,* 64, 217.

**Postrēma syllaba**   utrum brevis est an longa ?
                       brevisne est an longa ?

Indirect.

*In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long :*

**In versū nihil rēfert** 
⎧ utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.
⎪ postrēma syllaba brevisne sit an longa.
⎨ postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit (CICERO).
⎩ postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

### 1. In Direct Questions.

**462.** The Mood of the question is determined by the Mood of the answer.

**463.** Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine.*

A. **Quis homŏ est ?** B. **Ego sum,** TER., *And.,* 965 ; *who is that ?  It is I.*
A. **Vīvitne pater ?** B. **Vīvum līquimus,** PL., *Capt.,* 282 ; *is his father living ?   We left him alive.*

**464.** Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is *rhetorical* and no answer is expected.

Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit ? C., *Tusc.*, v. 31, 89 ; *who does not dread poverty ?*

**465.** Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

A. **Abeam ?** B. **Abī,** PL., *Merc.*, 749 ; *shall I go away ?  Go.*
Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crūdēlitātem ? C., *Verr.*, I. 47, 122 ; *shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty ?*

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

**466.** Subjunctive questions anticipate a Potential answer in the negative, when the question is *rhetorical.*

Quis hōc crēdat ? *who would believe this ?*  [No one.]
Quid faceret aliud ? *what else was he to do ?*  [Nothing.]
Quis dubitet quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint ? C., *Parad.*, VI. 2, 48 ; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue ?*  [No one.]

REMARK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

### 2. In Indirect Questions.

**467.** The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

Cōnsīderābimus quid fēcerit (Indic. **fēcit**), quid faciat (Indic. **facit**), quid factūrus sit (Indic. **faciet** or **factūrus est**), Cf. C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36 ; *we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*
Epamīnōndās quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus, C., *Fin.*, II. 30, 97 ; *Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe.*  (**Salvusne est ?**)

The Subjunctive may be original.   See 265.

Ipse docet quid agam ; Ov., *M.*, IV. 428 ; *he himself teaches* (me) *what to do* (**Quid agam** ? *what am I to do ?*)
Quaerō ā tē cūr Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem, C., *Vat.*, 2, 5 ; *I inquire of you why I was not to defend Cornelius.*  (**Cūr nōn dēfenderem ?** *why was I not to defend ?*)

REMARKS.—1. **Nesciŏ quis, nesciŏ quid, nesciŏ quī, nesciŏ quod,** *I know not who, what, which,* may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction.

**Nescio quid māius nāscitur Īliade,** PROP., II. 32, 66 ; *something, I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Iliad.*

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative except in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. ; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences.

*Interrogative :* **dīc quid rogem,** *tell me what it is I am asking.*

*Relative :* **dīc quod rogō,** TER., *And.,* 764 ; *tell me that which I am asking* (the answer to my question).

### Anticipation of the Subject.

**468**. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (**Pro-lēpsis**).

**Nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit,** CAELIUS (C., *Fam.,* VIII. 10, 3) ; *you know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.*

### Yes and No.

(469–70) **471**. (*a*) *Yes* is represented :

1. By **sānē,** (literally) *soundly,* **sānē quidem,** *yes indeed,* **etiam,** *even* (so), **vērō,** *of a truth,* **ita,** *so,* **omnīnō,** *by all means,* **certē,** *surely,* **certō,** *for certain,* **admodum,** *to a degree, etc.*

**Aut etiam aut nōn respondēre potest,** C., *Ac.,* II. 32, 104; *he can answer either yes or no.*

2. By **cēnseō,** *I think so ;* **scīlicet,** *to be sure.*

**Quid sī etiam occentem hymenaeum ?   Cēnseō,** PL., *Cas.,* 806 ; *what if I should also sing a marriage-song ?   I think you had better.*

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, **vērō** (principally with pronouns), **sānē, prōrsus,** *etc.*

**Estisne ?   Sumus,** *are you ?   We are.*

**Dāsne ?   Dō sānē,** C., *Leg.,* I. 7, 21 ; *do you grant ?   I do indeed.*

(*b*) *No* is represented :

1. By **nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ita, minimē,** *by no means,* **nihil,** *nothing,* **minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.**

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :

**Nōn īrāta es ?   Nōn sum īrāta,** PL., *Cas.,* 1007 ; *you are not angry ?   I am not.*

(*c*) YEA or NAY.—Īmmō conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement : *yes indeed, nay rather.*

**Ecquid placeant aedēs mē rogās ? Īmmō perplacent,** PL., *Most.*, 907 ; *do I like the house, you ask me ?   Yes indeed, very much.*

**Causa igitur nōn bona est ? Īmmō optima,** C., *Att.*, IX. 7, 4 ; *the cause, then, is a bad one ?   Nay, it is an excellent one.*

REMARK.— *Yes, for,* and *no, for,* are often expressed simply by **nam** and **enim.**

**Tum Antōnius : Herī enim, inquit, hōc mihĭ prōposueram,** C., *Or.*, II. 10. 40 ; *then quoth Antony : Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.*

## SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

**472**. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once ; one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination (**Parataxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination (**Hypotaxis**) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

*He became poor and we became rich ;* the second clause is a coördinate clause.

*He became poor that we might be rich ;* the second clause is a subordinate clause.

4. The clause which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. " *He became poor* " is the Principal Clause, " *that we might be rich* " is the Subordinate Clause.

### COÖRDINATION.

**473**. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

REMARK.—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*).   Then the connection must determine the character.

## Copulative Sentences.

**474.** The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions : **et, -que, atque (āc), etiam, quoque.**

**475. Et** is simply *and,* the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

**Pānem et aquam nātūra dēsīderat,** Sen., *E.M.,* 25, 4 ; *bread and water* (is what) *nature calls for.*

**Probitās laudātur et alget,** Juv., I. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and— freezes.*

*Both—and* is **et—et : et vīta et fortūna,** C., *Ph.,* x. 1, 3 ; *both life and fortune.*

**476. -Que** (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first.

**Senātus populusque Rōmānus,** C., *Planc.,* 37, 90 ; *the Senate and people of Rome.*

**Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander,** L., xxxvi. 20, 5 ; *there Alexander died and was buried.*

**Que—que ;** *both—and,* is found mainly in poetry and later prose.

**477. Atque** (compounded of **ad** and **-que**) adds a more important to a less important member.

**Āc** (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or **h**) is fainter than **atque,** and almost equivalent to **et.**

**Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs,** S., *C.,* 52, 35 ; *within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.*

A. **Servus ? Ego ?** B. **Atque meus,** Pl., *Cas.,* 735 ; *a slave ? I ? And mine to boot.*

**478. Etiam,** *even* (*now*), *yet, still,* exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

**Nōbīs rēs familiāris etiam ad necessāria dēest,** *Cf.* S., *C.,* 20, 11 ; *we lack means even for the necessaries of life.*

**479. Quoque,** *so also,* complements (compare **que**) and always follows the words to which it belongs.

**Cum patrī Tīmotheī populus statuam posuisset, fīliō quoque dedit,** *Cf.* Nep., xiii. 2, 3 ; *the people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also* (*likewise*).

REMARK.—The difference between **etitam** and **quoque** is not to be insisted on too rigidly :

**Grande et cōnspicuum nostrō quoque tempore mōnstrum,** Juv., IV. 115 ; *a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

**480**. *Copulation by means of the Negative.*—Instead of **et** and the negative, **neque (nec)** and the positive is the rule in Latin.

**Opīniōnibus vulgī rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus,** C., *Leg.*, II.17, 43 ; *by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

REMARKS.—1. **Et—nōn,** *and—not,* is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

| Paradigms : | *And no one,* | **neque quisquam,** | *nor any one.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | *And no,* | **neque ūllus,** | *nor any.* |
| | *And nothing,* | **neque quidquam,** | *nor anything.* |
| | *And never,* | **neque umquam,** | *nor ever.* |

**Iste neque dēsīderāvit quemquam,** C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 109 ; *and he missed no one.*

**481**. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When **multus,** *much, many,* is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles : *many renowned deeds,* **multa et praeclāra facinora** ; *many good qualities,* **multae bonaeque artēs.**

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take **et** throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

**Phrygēs et Pīsidae et Cilicēs,** C., *Div.*, I. 41, 92 ; or, **Phrygēs, Pīsidae, Cilicēs,** *Phrygians, Pisidians,* and *Cilicians.*

3. **Et** is further omitted in *climaxes,* in *antitheses,* in *phrases,* and in *formulæ.*

**Virī nōn est dēbilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere,** C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 95 ; *it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled* (unnerved) *by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.*

**Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es īdem,** MART., XII. 47, 1 ; *crabbed* (and) *kindly, sweet* (and) *sour, you are at once (310).*

**Patrēs Cōnscrīptī,** *Fathers* (and) *Conscript* (Senators).

**Iūppiter Optimus Māximus,** *Father Jove, supremely good* (and) *great.*

14

### Other Particles Employed.

**482.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal : **tum—tum,** *then—then;* **aliās—aliās,** *at one time—at another;* **iam—iam, nunc—nunc, modo—modo,** *now—now;* **simul—simul,** *at the same time.*

**Tum Graecē—tum Latīnē,** *partly in Greek, partly in Latin.*

**Horātius nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnēs,** Cf. L., II. 10, 8 ; *Horatius now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.*

**Modo hūc, modo illūc,** C., *Att.,* XIII. 25, 3 ; *now hither, now thither (hither and thither).*

(2, 3) 4. Comparative : **ut—ita,** *as—so :*

**Dolābellam ut Tarsēnsēs ita Lāodicēnī arcessiērunt,** C., *Fam.,* XII. 13, 4 ; *as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea* (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) *sent for Dolabella.*

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative ; and **ut** may be loosely translated *although, while.*

**Haec omnia ut invītīs ita nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsācta,** L., III. 55, 15 ; *all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing* (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

5. Adversative : **nōn modo, nōn sōlum, nōn tantum,** *not only;* **sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vērum etiam,** *but even, but also :*

**Nōn docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt,** QUINT., IV. 1, 57 ; *they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot.*

In the negative form, **nōn modo nōn,** *not only not;* **sed nĕ—quidem,** *but not even :* **sed vix,** *but hardly.*

**Ego nōn modo tibī nōn īrāscor, sed nĕ reprehendō quidem factum tuum,** C., *Sull.,* 18, 50 ; *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.*

REMARKS.—1. Instead of **nōn modo (sōlum) nōn—sed nĕ—quidem,** the latter **nōn** is generally omitted, *if* the two negative clauses *have a verb in common;* otherwise both negatives are expressed.

**Pīsōne cōnsule senātuī nōn sōlum iuvāre rem pūblicam, sed nĕ lūgēre quidem licēbat,** Cf. C., *Pis.,* 10, 23 ; *when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate* (= the senate was not only not free) *to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn* (for her).

2. Noteworthy is **nēdum,** *not* (to speak of) *yet, much less,* which is used either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive.

**Satrapa numquam sufferre ēius sūmptūs queat, nēdum tū possīs,** TER., *Heaut.,* 454 ; *a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you.*

## Adversative Sentences.

**483.** The Adversative particles are : **autem, sed, vērum, vērō, at, atquī, tamen, cēterum**. Of these only **sed** and **tamen** are really adversative.

**484. Autem** (post-positive) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*.

It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover, furthermore, now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*), and is often used in argument.

**Modo accēdēns, tum autem recēdēns**, C., *N.D.*, II. 40, 102 ; *now approaching, then again receding.*

**Rūmōribus mēcum pūgnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requīrō**, C., *N.D.*, III. 5, 13 ; *you fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.*

**Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est ; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum ; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est**, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 27 ; *everything that is good is praiseworthy ; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous ; therefore, what is good is virtuous.*

REMARK.—**Autem** commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause ; but when an unemphatic **est** or **sunt** occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So **igitur** and **enim**.

**485. Sed** (**set**) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, *to introduce a new thought*, or *to revive an old one.*

**Nōn est vīvere sed valēre vīta**, MART., VI. 70, 15 ; *not living, but being well is life.*

**Domitius nūllā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dīcēbat**, C., *Br.*, 77, 267 ; *Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.*

**486. Vērum,** *it is true, true,* always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to **sed** in its stronger sense.

**Sī certum est facere, faciam ; vērum nē post cōnferās culpam in mē,** TER., *Eun.*, 388 ; *if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it ; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.*

**487. Vērō,** *of a truth,* is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

Platōnem Diōn adeō admīrātus est ut sē tōtum eī trāderet.  Neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne, NEP., x. 2, 3 ; *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him ; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

**488. At,** *but,* introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes,* often by way of quotation.

At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam!  C., *Dom.,* 44, 115 ; *well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity !*

At vōbīs male sit!  CAT., III. 13 ; *and ill luck to you !*

" At multīs malīs affectus ? "  Quis negat ?  C., *Fin.,* v. 30, 92 ; *" but he has suffered much ? "  Who denies it ?*

**489. Atquī,** *but at any rate, but for all that,* is stronger than **at,** and is used chiefly in argument.

Vix crēdibile.  Atquī sīc habet, H., *S.,* I. 9, 52 ; *scarce credible.  But for all that, 'tis so.*

**490. Tamen,** *nevertheless,* is often combined with **at, vērum, sed.**  It commonly stands first in a sentence.

Nātūram expellēs furcā, tamen ūsque recurret, H., *Ep.,* I. 10, 24 ; *you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

REMARK.—**Nihilōminus** (*nothing the less*), *nevertheless,* is used like **tamen,** by which it is occasionally strengthened.

**491. Cēterum** (*for the rest*), *but,* is used by the Historians as an adversative particle.

Duo imperātōrēs, ipsī parēs, cēterum opibus disparibus, S., *Iug.,* 52, 1 ; *two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.*

### Disjunctive Sentences.

**492.** The Disjunctive particles are **aut, vel, -ve, sīve (seu).**

**493.** I. **Aut,** *or,* denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.

Vinceris aut vincis, PROP., II. 8, 8 ; *you are conquered or conquering.*

2. **Aut** is often corrective = *or at least, at most, rather* (**aut saltem, aut potius**).

Cūnctī aut māgna pars fidem mūtāvissent, S., *Iug.*, 56, 5 ; *all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

Duo aut summum trēs iuvenēs, L., XXXIII. 5, 8 ; *two, or at most three, youths.*

3. **Aut—aut,** *either—or.*

Aut dīc aut accipe calcem, Juv., III. 295 ; *either speak or take a kick.*

Quaedam terrae partēs aut frīgore rigent aut ūruntur calōre, *Cf.* C., *Tusc.*, I. 28, 68 ; *some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

**494.** 1. **Vel** (literally, *you may choose*), *or*, gives a choice, often with **etiam,** *even,* **potius,** *rather.*

Ego vel Cluviēnus, Juv., I. 80 ; *I, or, if you choose, Cluvienus.*

Satis vel etiam nimium multa, C., *Fam.*, IV. 14, 3 ; *enough, or even too much.*

Epicūrus homŏ minimē malus vel potius vir optimus, C., *Tusc.*, II. 19, 44 ; *Epicurus* (was) *a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.*

2. **Vel—vel,** *either—or* (whether—or).

Miltiadēs dīxit rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucīs diēbus interitūrum, Nep., I. 3, 4 ; *Miltiades said that the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

**495.** **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of **vel.**

Cūr timeam dubitemve locum dēfendere ? Juv., I. 103 ; *why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position ?*

Aliquid faciendī nōn faciendīve ratiō, C., *Inv.*, II. 9, 31; *the method of doing something or not doing it.*

**-Ve** is often used with numerals in the sense *at most.*

Bis terve, C., *Fam.*, II. 1, 1; *twice or at most thrice* (bis terque, *twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more*).

**496.** 1. **Sīve (seu),** *if you choose,* gives a choice between two designations of the same object.

Urbem mātrī seu novercae relinquit, L., I. 3, 3 ; *he leaves the city to his mother or* (*if it seems more likely*) *to his step-mother.*

2. **Sīve—sīve (seu—seu),** *whether—or* (indifference).

**Sīve** medicum adhibuerĭs **sīve** nōn adhibuerĭs nōn convalēscēs, C., *Fat.*, 12, 29 ; *whether you employ a physician, or do not employ* (one), *you will not get well.*

## Causal and Illative Sentences.

(497) **498.** A. The Causal particles are **nam, enim, namque,** and **etenim,** *for.*

**Nam** is put at the beginning of a sentence ; **enim** is post-positive : **namque** and **etenim** are not common, and usually occur in the first place.

**Sēnsūs** mīrificē conlocātī sunt ; **nam** oculī tamquam speculātōrēs altissimum locum obtinent, C., *N.D.,* II. 56, 140 ; *the senses are admirably situated ; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post.*

**Piscēs** ōva relinquunt, facile **enim** illa aquā sustinentur, C., *N.D.,* II. 51, 129 ; *fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.*

**499.** B. Illative particles are **itaque, igitur, ergō ; eō, hinc, inde, ideō, idcircō, quōcircā, proptereā, quāpropter, proin, proinde.**

**500. Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore,* is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement ; it is usually put at the beginning of the sentence.

**Nēmŏ** ausus est Phōciōnem līber sepelīre ; **itaque** ā servīs sepultus est, *Cf.* Nep., XIX. 4, 4 ; *no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

**501. Igitur,** *therefore,* is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement ; it may precede or follow the first word.

**Mihĭ** nōn satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiae ; fallī **igitur** possumus, C., *Fin.,* I. 5, 15 ; ME *it does not satisfy. But many men, many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

**502** (503). **Ergō** denotes *necessary consequence,* and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than **igitur.**

**Negat** haec fīliam mē suam esse ; nōn **ergō** haec māter mea est, Pl., *Ep.,* 590 ; *she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

## SUBORDINATION.

## Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

(504–7) **508**. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.

2. **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

**Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied; in it the Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

> Sŏcratēs dīcere solēbat :
> **Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs.**
>> *Socrates used to say :* " *All men* ARE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTAND."
> **Ō. O. Omnēs in eo quod scīrent satis esse ēloquentēs**, C., *Or.*, I. 14, 63.
>> *Socrates used to say that all men* WERE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTOOD.

3. The oblique relation may be confined to one clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity*. See 541, 628.

> **Ō. R. Nova nūpta dīcit : Fleō quod īre necesse est.**
>> *The bride says : I weep because I must needs go.*
> **Ō. O. Nova nūpta dīcit sē flēre quod īre necesse sit.**
>> *The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*
> **Ō. R. Nova nūpta flet quod īre necesse est**, *Cf.* CAT., LXI. 81.
>> *The bride weeps because she must go.*
> **P. O. Nova nūpta flet quod īre necesse sit.**
>> *The bride is weeping because* " *she must go* " (quoth she).

4. Akin to **Ō. O.** is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (629.)

> **Nōn dubitō quīn nova nūpta fleat quod īre necesse sit.** *I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go* (sit is attracted from est).

## Sequence of Tenses.

**509.** 1. In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive,

Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses; Historical, by Historical.

2. This rule is subject to several modifications :

1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that

(*a*) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense as Past or according to its tense as Present. (229.)

(*b*) The Pure Perfect may be felt as giving the past starting-point (Past), or the present completion (Present). (235.)

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (513).

3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a varying Sequence (511, R. 2).

4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (265) often does not change, especially in the Indirect Question.

### 510.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses) | are followed by | the Present Subjunctive (for continued action) ; the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action). |
| All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses) | are followed by | the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action) ; the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action). |

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the Impf. Indic. (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

### 511.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PR. (PURE OR HIST.), | cōgnōscō, | *I am finding out,* | **quid faciās,** *what you are doing ;* |
| FUT., | cōgnōscam, | *I shall* (try to) *find out,* | **quid fēcerĭs,** *what you have done,* |
| PURE PF., | cōgnōvī, | *I have found out* (*I know*), | *what you have been doing* (*what you did*), |
| FUT. PF., | cōgnōverō, | *I shall have found out* (*shall know*), | *what you were doing* (*before*). |

| Hist. Pr., | cōgnōscō, | *I am (was) finding out,* | ⎧ | **quid facerēs,** *what you were doing ;* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Impf., | cōgnōscēbam, | *I was finding out,* | | **quid fēcissēs,** |
| Hist. Pf., | cōgnōvī, | *I found out,* | | *what you had done, what you had been doing,* |
| Plupf., | cōgnōveram, | *I had found out (I knew),* | ⎩ | *what you were doing (before).* |

When the Subjunctive is original, we have :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cōgnōscō, *etc.,* | *I am finding out,* | ⎰ **quid faciās,** | *what you are to do.* |
| | | ⎱ **quid facerēs,** | *what you were to do.* |
| cōgnōvī, *etc.,* | *I knew,* | **quid facerēs,** | *what you were to do.* |

### Principal Tenses.

**Nihil** r ē f e r t **postrēma syllaba brevis an longa** s i t, *Cf.* C., *Or.*, 64, 217 (461).

**Ubiī Caesarem** ō r a n t (historical), **ut sibĭ** p a r c a t, Caes., *B. G.*, vi. 9, 7 (546, 1).

**Nēmŏ adeō ferus** e s t **ut nōn mītēscere** p o s s i t, II., *Ep.*, i. 1, 39 (552).

**Nec mea quī digitīs lūmina** c o n d a t e r i t, Ov., *Her.*, 10, 120 (631, 2).

**Rūsticus** e x s p e c t a t **dum dēfluat amnis,** II., *Ep.*, i. 2, 42 (572).

**Ā** r d e a t **ipsa licet, tormentīs** g a u d e t **amantis,** Juv., vi. 209 (607).

**Utrum** n e s c ī s **quam altē** a s c e n d e r ĭ s **an prō nihilō id putās?** C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3 (458).

L a u d a t **Āfricānum Panaetius quod** f u e r i t **abstinēns,** C., *Off.*, ii. 22, 76 (542).

**Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine** r e v o c ā r i t, C., *Cat.*, i. 9, 22 (552).

### Historical Tenses.

**Epamīnōndās** q u a e s ī v i t **salvusne** e s s e t **clipeus,** C., *Fin.*, ii. 30, 97 (467).

**Noctū** a m b u l ā b a t **in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn** p o s s e t, C., *Tusc.*, iv. 19, 44 (541).

A t h ē n i ē n s ē s c r e a n t **decem praetōrēs quī exercituī** p r a e e s s e n t, Nep., i. 4, 4 (545).

A c c i d i t **ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae** d ē i c e r e n t u r, Nep., vii. 3, 2 (513, R.).

**Hannibal omnia priusquam** e x c ē d e r e t **pūgnā** e r a t **expertus,** L., xxx. 35, 4 (577).

**Tanta opibus Etrūria** e r a t **ut iam terrās fāmā nōminis suī** i m p l ē s-s e t, L., i. 2, 5 (521, R. 1).

**Cum Caesar Ancōnam** o c c u p ā v i s s e t, **urbem** r e l ī q u i m u s, C., *Fam.*, xvi. 12, 2 (585).

### Original Subjunctive Retained.

**Ipse d o c e t quid a g a m** (original, **agam**) ; **fās est et ab hoste docērī,**
Ov., *M.*, IV. 428 (219).

**Q u a e r ō ā tē cūr ego Cornēlium nōn d ē f e n d e r e m** (original, **dē-
fenderem**), C., *Vat.*, 2, 5 (467).

**M ī s ē r u n t Delphōs cōnsultum quid f a c e r e n t** (original, **faciāmus**),
NEP., II. 2, 6 (518).

REMARKS.—1. The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense
(Past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent
clause precedes.    But there are many exceptions.

**Agunt grātiās quod sibī pepercissent ; quod arma cum hominibus cōn-
sanguineīs contulerint queruntur,** CAES., *B.C.*, I. 74, 2 ; *they return
thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had
crossed swords with kinsmen.*

(2) 3. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of
sequence :

**Quae subsidia habērēs et habēre possēs, exposuī,** Q. CICERO, 4, 13 ; *what
supports you have or can have, I have set forth.*

**512.** *Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.*—Sen-
tences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Im-
perfect Subjunctive.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PR., | edunt, | *they are eating,* | |
| PURE PF., | ēdērunt, | *they have eaten,* | **ut vīvant,** |
| FUT., | edent, | *they will eat,* | *that they may live* (to |
| FUT. PF., | ēderint, | *they will have eaten,* | live). |
| IMPF., | edēbant, | *they were eating,* | **ut vīverent,** |
| PLUPF., | ēderant, | *they had eaten,* | *that they might live* (to |
| HIST. PF., | ēdērunt, | *they ate,* | live). |

**Spectātum veniunt, v e n i u n t s p e c t e n t u r ut ipsae,** Ov., *A.A.*, I. 99
(435).

**Gallīnae pennīs f o v e n t pullōs nē frīgore l a e d a n t u r,** Cf. C., *N.D.*,
II. 52, 129 (545).

**Lēgem brevem esse o p o r t e t quō facilius ab imperītīs t e n e ā t u r,**
SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 (545).

**Mē p r a e m ī s i t domum haec ut n ū n t i e m uxōrī suae,** PL., *Am.*,
195 ; *he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.*

**Laelius v e n i ē b a t ad cēnam ut s a t i ā r e t dēsīderia nātūrae,** C., *Fin.*,
II. 8, 25 (545).

**Phaëthōn o p t ā v i t ut in currum patris t o l l e r ē t u r,** C., *Off.*, III.
25, 94 (546, 1).

Remark.—Parenthetical final sentences like **ut ita dīcam, nē errētis,** are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

**Nē longior sim, valē,** C., *Fam.*, xv. 19 : *not to be tedious, farewell!*

**Nē īgnōrēs, virtūte Nerōnis Armenius cecidit,** II., *Ep.*, i. 12, 25 ; *that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valor of Nero that the Armenian fell.*

**513.** *Exceptional Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Result.*—In sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative :

Present Tense :

**Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexāvit ut ea restituī in antīquum statum nūllō modō possit,** C., *Verr.*, 1. 4, 12 ; *Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.*

. Perfect Tense (Pure) :

**Mūrēna Asiam sīc obiit ut in eā neque avāritiae neque lūxuriae vēstīgium relīquerit,** C., *Mur.*, 9, 20 : *Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery* (there is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist) :

**Equitēs hostium ācriter cum equitātū nostrō cōnflīxērunt tamen ut nostrī eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint,** Caes., *B.G.*, v. 15, 1 ; *the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet* (the upshot was that) *our men forced them into the woods and hills.*

Remark.—After **accidit, contigit,** and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indic. form.

**Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur,** Nep., vii. 3, 2 ; *it happened that in one night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

### Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

**514.** The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, and these relations are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation ; as follows :

Rule I.—(*a*) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the *Future Perfect* is represented by the *Perfect* Subjunctive ; but the *Future* is represented by the *Present* Subjunctive, *only* when the action occurs *at the same time* as that of the leading verb.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Cōgnōscam,** | quid faciās, *what you are doing* |
| *I shall* (try to) *find out,* | (will be doing). |
| **Cōgnōverō,** | quid fēcerĭs, *what you have done* |
| *I shall have found out* (shall know), | (will have done). |

(*b*) But whenever the dependent Future occurs *after* the leading Future, the *Periphrastic* Tense must be employed.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Cōgnōscam,** | |
| *I shall* (try to) *find out,* | **quid factūrus sīs,** |
| **Cōgnōverō,** | *what you are going to do* (what |
| *I shall have found out* (shall know), | you will do). |

[**Cōnsīderābimus**], [*we shall consider*].

A. **Quid fēcerit aut quid ipsī acciderit aut quid dīxerit,** *what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. **Aut quid faciat, quid ipsī accidat, quid dīcat,** *or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. **Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsī cāsūrum sit, quā sit ūsūrus ōrātiōne,** C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36 ; *or what he is going to do* (will do), *what is going to* (will) *happen to him, what plea he is going to employ* (will employ).

**515**. Rule II.—After the other Tenses, the *Future* relation is expressed by the Active *Periphrastic* Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Cōgnōscō,** | |
| *I am finding out,* | quid factūrus sīs (*what you are going to* |
| **Cōgnōvī,** | do), *what you will do.* |
| *I have found out* (know), | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Cōgnōscēbam,** | |
| *I was trying to find out,* | quid factūrus essēs (*what you were going to* |
| **Cōgnōveram,** | do), *what you would do.* |
| *I had found out,* | |

**Tam ea rēs est facilis ut innumerābilīs nātūra mundōs effectūra sit, efficiat, effēcerit,** *Cf.* C., *N.D.*, I. 21, 53 : *the thing is so easy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.*

Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vīta futūra sit, C., *Verr.*, I. 58, 153 ; *it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be* (will be).

Anteā dubitābam ventūraene essent legiōnēs ; nunc mihǐ nōn est dubium quīn ventūrae nōn sint, C., *Fam.*, II. 17, 5; *before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come* (or no) ; *now I have no doubt that they will not come.*

REMARK.—(1, 2) 3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, etc.), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant ; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant, CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 85, 3 ; *the Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through* (shall *have broken through*) *the fortifications ; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own* (shall *have held*).

**516.** *Sequence of Tenses in* Ōrātiō Oblīqua : In Ōrātiō Oblī-qua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In clāvā erat scrīptum nisi domum reverterētur sē capitis eum damnā-tūrōs, NEP., IV. 3, 4 ; *it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death.* (Ōrātiō Rēcta : nisi domum revertēris, tē capitis damnābimus, *unless you* (shall) *return home, we will condemn you to death*).

Pȳthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibǐ imperātōrem sūmerent ; id sī fēcissent (Ō. R., fēcerǐtis) incepta prōspera futūra (Ō. R., erunt), NEP., I. 1, 3 ; *the Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general ; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.*

Lacedaemoniī, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnārentur (Ō. R., cōnābiminī) prohibitūrum, quaesīvērunt num sē esset etiam morī prohibitūrus (Ō. R., prohibēbis), C., *Tusc.*, V. 14, 42 ; *the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook* (should *undertake*), *asked whether he was going to* (would) *prevent them from dying too.*

**517.** *Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.*—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

Nē compōne comās quia sīs ventūrus ad illam, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 679 ; *do not arrange* (your) *locks because* (forsooth) *you are going to see her.*

Excellentibus ingeniīs citius dēfuerit ars quā cīvem regant quam quā hostem superent, L., II. 43, 10 ; *great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.*

Quid mē prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, sī probārem quae ille dīceret ? C., *Fin.*, I. 8, 27 ; *what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said* (says) ?

Quae vīta fuisset Priamō sī ab adulēscentiā scīsset quōs ēventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus ? C., *Div.*, II. 9. 22 ; *what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age ?*

REMARKS.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjv. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence :

Māgna culpa Pelopis quī nōn docuerit fīlium quātenus esset quidque cūrandum, C., *Tusc.*, I. 44, 107 : *greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.*

**518.** *Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.* —When a clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the sequence is Historical, if either the Finite verb is Past or the dependent verb represents a Past ; otherwise the sequence is that of the Primary tenses.

| Dīcit sē interrogāre (original interrogō), *He says that he is asking,* | quid agās, quid ēgerĭs, quid āctūrus sīs, | *what you are doing.* *what you have done.* *what you are going to do* (will do). |
|---|---|---|
| Dīcit sē interrogāsse (original interrogāvī), *He says that he asked,* Dīxit sē interrogāre (original interrogō), *He said that he was asking,* | quid agerēs, quid ēgissēs, quid āctūrus essēs, | *what you were doing.* *what you had done.* *what you were going to do* (would do). |
| Mihĭ interrogantĭ, *when I ask him,* (literally : *to me asking*), | quid agat, *what he is doing,* quid ēgerit, *what he has done,* quid āctūrus sit, *what he is going to do* (will do), | nōn respondet, *he gives no answer.* |
| Mihĭ interrogantĭ, *when I asked him,* (literally : *to me asking*), | quid ageret, *what he was doing,* quid ēgisset, *what he had done,* quid āctūrus esset, *what he was going to do,* | nōn respondit, *he gave no answer.* |

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs a i t bēstiolās quāsdam n ā s c ī quae ūnum diem v ī v a n t, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94 (650).

Satis mihĭ multa verba f ē c i s s e videor quārē e s s e t hōc bellum necessārium, C., *Imp.*, 10, 27 ; *I think I have said enough* (to show) *why this war* is *necessary.*

Apellēs pictōrēs eōs peccāre dīcēbat quī nōn s e n t ī r e n t quid esset satis, C., *Or.*, 22, 73 ; *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was* (is) *enough.*

M ī s ē r u n t Delphōs cōnsultum quid f a c e r e n t, Nep., II. 2, 6 ; *they sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do.*   See 265.

**519.** *Original Subjunctives in Dependence.*—The Potential of the Present or Future after a Past tense goes into the Past ; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465). On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be retained even after a Present tense (467). See also 597, R. 4.

V ī d e ō causās esse permultās quae Titum Rōscium i m p e l l e r e n t, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 33, 92 ; *I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius.*

Q u a e r ō ā tē cūr Cornēlium nōn d ē f e n d e r e m, C., *Vat.*, 2, 5 ; *I inquire of you, why I was not to defend Cornelius!*

## USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**520.** In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause ; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

**521.** The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject ; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation.

Sentit animus sē vī suā, nōn aliēnā movērī, C., *Tusc.*, I. 23, 55 ; *the mind feels that it moves by its own force,* (and) *not by that of another.*

Pompēius ā mē petīvit ut sēcum et apud sē essem cottīdiē, *Cf.* C., *Att.*, v. 6, 1 ; *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.*

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus relīquisset mihĭ dōnāvit, C., *Att.*, II. I, 12 ; *Paetus presented to me all the books* (as he said) *that his brother had left* (quōs frāter ēius relīquerat, would be the narrator's statement).

REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of **is**, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb ; otherwise the Reflexive :

**Tarquinius sīc Servium dīligēbat ut is ēius vulgō habērētur fīlius,** C., *Rep.*, II. 21, 38 ; *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

But **Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam terrās fāmā nōminis suī implēsset,** L., I. 2, 5 ; *so great in means* (= *so powerful*) *was Etruria that she had already filled the land with the reputation of her name.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause.    (309, 2.)

**Ā Caesare invītor sibī ut sim lēgātus,** C., *Att.*, II. 18, 3 ; *I am invited by Caesar* (= Caesar invites me) *to be lieutenant to him.*

Note the freer use of **suus** (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulæ (309, 3), as **sē recipere,** *to withdraw, etc.*

**Rōmānī suī colligendī hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt,** CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's self, etc.* (309, 1) : **Dēfōrme est dē sē ipsum praedicāre,** C., *Off.*, I. 38, 137 ; *it is unseemly to be bragging about one's self.*

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions, **is** is the rule.

**Sōcratēs inhonestam sibī crēdidit ōrātiōnem quam eī Lȳsiās reō composuerat,** QUINT., II. 15, 30 ; *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

### Ēius and Suī.

**522.** Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1 ; *Alexander,* [when] *dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

**Perdiccās accēperat ēius ānulum,** *Perdiccas had received his ring.*

**Quārē Alexander dēclārāverat sē rēgnum eī commendāsse,** *thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō Perdiccās coniēcerat eum rēgnum sibī commendāsse,** *from this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Ex quō omnēs coniēcerant eum rēgnum eī commendāsse,** *from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

**Perdiccās pōstulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent cum Alexander ānulum sibī dedisset,** *Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

**Amīcī pōstulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent cum Alexander ānulum eī dedisset,** (his) *friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.* (Lattmann and Müller.)

**Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī rēgnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur,** *Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.*

## OBJECT SENTENCES.

**523**. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

### I. Object Sentences introduced by QUOD.

(524) **525**. 1. **Quod**, *the fact that, the circumstance that, in that*, introduces explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

**Adde hūc quod perferrī litterae nūllā condiciōne potuērunt**, POLLIO (C., *Fam.*, X. 31, 4) ; *add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through.*

**Praetereō quod eam sibī domum dēlēgit**, C., *Cluent.*, 66, 188 ; *I pass over the fact that she chose that house for herself.*

**Bene facis quod mē adiuvās**, C., *Fin.*, III. 4, 16 ; *you do well* (in) *that you help me.*

**Accidit perincommodē quod eum nūsquam vīdistī**, C., *Att.*, I. 17, 2 ; *it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere.*

REMARK.—With several of the above-mentioned verbs **ut** can be employed, as well as **quod** (**ut**, of the tendency—**quod**, of the fact) :

**Ad Appī Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat ut etiam caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 ; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind*, or, **quod caecus erat.**

**Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amō**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 7 ; *besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

2. **Quod**, *in that, as to the fact that, whereas*, introduces explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb.

**Mihī quidem videntur hominēs hāc rē māximē bēstiīs praestāre, quod loquī possunt**, C., *Inv.*, I. 4 ; *to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech.*

**Nīl habet īnfēlīx paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod** (= id quod) **rīdiculōs hominēs facit**, JUV., III. 152 ; *unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder* (to bear) *than that it makes people ridiculous.*

3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** (508, 3).

**Hōc tē superiōrem esse putābas quam Laelium quod tē cīvitās Pergamēna laudāret**, C., *Flac.*, 30, 74 ; *in this you thought that you were superior to Laelius, that the state of Pergamum praised you.*

15

REMARK.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, *etc.*, take **quod** with the Indic. or Subjunctive.  See Causal Sentences, **539.**

## II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

(526) **527.** Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (**verba sentiendī et dēclārandī**), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive :

**Thalēs aquam dīxit esse initium rērum,** C., *N.D.*, I. 10, 25 ; *Thales said that water was the first principle of things.*

**Medicī causā morbī inventā cūrātiōnēm esse inventam putant,** C., *Tusc.*, III. 10, 23 ; *physicians think that,* (when) *the cause of disease* (is) *discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.*

**Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et cōnstruere nīdōs,** C., *Or.*, II. 6, 23 ; *we see that birds fashion and build nests.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ō. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Infinitive.

**Refrāctūrōs carcerem minābantur,** L., VI. 17, 6 ; *they threatened to break open the jail.*

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive.  This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising.

**Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum esse,** *I hope to* (*that I shall*) *obtain this.*

**Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse,** *he promised to* (*that he would*) *come.*

5. In some authors Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object perceived or represented (536).

**Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit,** C., *Tusc.*, V. 39, 115 ; *Homer represents Polyphemus* (as) *talking with the ram.*

But the Inf. is the rule for the language, and must of course be used, when the Participle is lacking.

**Octāvium dolōre cōnficī vīdī,** C., *Fin.*, II. 28, 93 ; *I have seen Octavius* (when he was) *wearing out with anguish.*

### Nominative with Infinitive.

**528.** Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving may be construed either personally or impersonally :

1. In the Simple tenses personal construction is preferred ; except **crēditur,** *it is believed.*

2. In the Compound tenses the impersonal construction is preferred.

Thus, instead of

**Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse,** *they say that Homer was blind,*

we should have,

**Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse,** *Homer is said to have been blind,*
or,

**Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse,** C., *Tusc.,* v. 39, 114 ; *there is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

**Aristaeus inventor oleī esse dīcitur,** C., *Verr.,* IV. 57, 128 ; *Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil.*

**Terentī fābellae putābantur ā Laeliō serībī,** C., *Att.,* VII. 3, 10 ; *Terence's plays were thought to be written by Laelius.*

But :

**Venerem Adōnidī nūpsisse prōditum est,** C., *N. D.,* III. 23, 59 ; *it is recorded that Venus married Adonis.*

**Philōnem exīstimandum est disertum fuisse,** C., *Or.,* I. 14, 62 ; *we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.*

### Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sentiendī et Dēclārandī.

(529) **530.** After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Impf. Indic. (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb. See 510, R.

☞ In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

**531.** *Contemporaneous Action.*

| ACTIVE. | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|
| P. T. **Dīcit : tē errāre,** | **tē dēcipī,** |
| *He says, that you are going wrong,* | *that you are (being) deceived* (226, R.). |
| H. T. **Dīcēbat : tē errāre,** | **tē dēcipī,** |
| *He was saying, that you were going wrong,* | *that you were (being) deceived.* |

*Prior Action.*

P. T. **Dīcit : tē errāsse,**
    *He says, that you have gone wrong,*
        *that you went wrong,*
        *that you have been going*
            *wrong,*

**tē dēceptum esse,**
    *that you have been (are) deceived,*
        *that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.),*
        *(that people have been deceiving you).*

H. T. **Dīcēbat : tē errāsse,**
    *He was saying, that you had gone*
            *wrong,*
        *that you went wrong,*
        *that you had been*
            *going wrong,*

**tē dēceptum esse,**
    *that you had been deceived,*

    *that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.),*
    *(that people had been deceiving you).*

*Subsequent Action.*

P. T. **Dīcit : tē errātūrum esse,**
    *He says, that you (are about to go*
        *wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,*

**tē dēceptum īrī,**
    *that you (are going to) will be de-*
        *ceived.*

H. T. **Dīcēbat : tē errātūrum esse,**
    *He was saying, that you were about*
        *to (would) go wrong,*

**tē dēceptum īrī,**
    *that you were going to (would) be*
        *deceived.*

*Periphrastic Future.*

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the passive than the Fut. Inf. pass. of the paradigms.

P. T. **Dīcit : fore (futūrum esse) ut er-**
        **rēs (metuās),**
    **fore (futūrum esse) ut errā-**
        **verīs** (rare),

**fore ut dēcipiāris (metuāris),**

**fore ut dēceptus sīs** (rare), usually
    **dēceptum fore** (not **futūrum**
    **esse).**

H. T. **Dīcēbat : fore (futūrum esse) ut**
        **errārēs (metuerēs),**
        **errāssēs** (rare),

**fore ut dēciperēris (metuerēris),**
    **dēceptum fore** (rarely : **fore ut dē-**
        **ceptus essēs).**

## Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.

**532.** Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

**Sī vīs mē flēre, dolendum est prīmum ipsī tibī,** H., *A.P.,* 102 ; *if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.*

**Utrum Milōnis corporis an Pȳthagorae tibī mālīs vīrēs ingeniī darī ?** C., *Cat. M.,* 10, 33 ; *which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind ?*

Remarks.—(1) 2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed :

**Et iam māllet equōs numquam tetigisse paternōs**, Ov., *M.*, II. 182 ; *and now he could have wished rather never to have (that he had never) touched his father's horses.*

3. On the construction of this class of verbs with **ut**, *etc.*, see 546.

### Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**533**. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

**Salvom tē advēnisse gaudeō**, Ter., *Ph.*, 286 ; *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe).* But **quod salvus advēnistī**, *that you have arrived safe ;* **quod salvus advēnerīs**, *that* (as you say) *you have arrived safe.*

**Īnferiōrēs nōn dolēre dēbent sē ā suīs dīgnitāte superārī**, C., *Lael.*, 20, 71 ; *inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends).*

### Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

**534**. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

**Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sīc vexārī**, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 2, 2 ; *ah, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear.*

**Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loquī ?** Plin., *Ep.*, IV. 3, 5 ; *a Roman speak such good Greek ?* (*To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek.*)

Remarks.—1. Different is **quod**, which gives the ground.

**Ei mihi quod nūllīs amor est sānābilis herbīs**, Ov., *M.*, I. 523 ; *woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.*

2. On **ut**, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558.

### Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

**535**. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

**Est inūsitātum rēgem reum capitis esse**, C., *Dei.*, I. 1 ; *it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.*

**Facinus est vincīre cīvem Rōmānum,** C., *Verr.,* v. 66, 170 ; *it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains.*

**Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperītīs teneātur,** SEN., *E. M.,* 94, 38 ; *it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief ), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

REMARKS.—(1) 2. **Oportet,** *it is proper,* is always, and **necesse est,** *must needs,* is usually followed by the Subjunctive. So, also, many other phrases with **ut.** (See 553, 4; 557.)

**Necesse** also takes the Dat. of the Person :

**Ut culpent aliī, tibi mē laudāre necesse est,** Ov., *Her.,* 12, 131 ; *let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is usually put in the same case as the indirect object : in standard prose chiefly with **licet,** *it is left ( free), permitted.*

**Licuit esse ōtiōsō Themistoclī,** C., *Tusc.,* i. 15, 33 ; *Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.*

The Acc. is the rule if the Dat. is not expressed.

**Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum,** PROP., ii. 9, 46 ; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine.*

### Object Sentences Represented by the Participle.

**536.** The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

**Catōnem vīdī in bibliothēcā sedentem multīs circumfūsum librīs,** C., *Fin.,* iii. 2, 7 ; *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him.*

**Prōdiga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmina cēnsum,** JUV., vi. 362 ; *the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.*

**Saepe illam audīvī fūrtīvā vōce loquentem,** CAT., LXVII. 41 ; *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone.*

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired.

**Sī quī voluptātibus dūcuntur missōs faciant honōrēs,** C., *Sest.,* 66, 138 ; *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honors (at once and forever).*

**Huic mandēs sī quid rēctē cūrātum velīs,** TER., *Ad.,* 372 ; *you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.*

# CAUSAL SENTENCES.

## Causal Sentences with QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, and QUANDŎ.

(538–9) **540.** Causal sentences with **quod, quia,** *because*, **quoniam, quandŏ,** *since*, take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

Torquātus fīlium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat necārī iūssit, S., *C.*, 52, 30 ; *Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order*(s) [**quod pūgnāsset** = because, as Torquatus said or thought].

Quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest idcircō vērae amīcitiae sempiternae sunt, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32 ; *because nature cannot change, therefore true friend-ships are everlasting.*

Sōlus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum, PROP., II. 9, 46 ; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine.*

Voluptās sēmovenda est quandŏ ad māiōra quaedam nātī sumus, *Cf.* C., *Fin.*, V. 8, 21 ; *pleasure is to be put aside because we are born for greater things.*

Sequitur ut līberātōrēs sint, quandŏquidem tertium nihil potest esse, C., *Ph.*, II. 13, 31 ; *it follows that they are liberators, since there can be no third alternative.*

**541.** Causal sentences with **quod, quia, quoniam,** and **quandŏ** take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn pos-set, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 19, 44 ; *Themistocles used to walk about in public at night because* (as he said) *he could not get to sleep.*

Nē compōne comās quia sīs ventūrus ad illam, OV., *Rem. Am.*, 679 ; *do not arrange (your) locks, because "you are going to see her."*

Quoniam ipse prō sē dīcere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter ēius Stēsa-gorās, NEP., I. 7, 5 ; *"as* [Miltiades] *could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech.* (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

REMARK.—A rejected reason (if not a fact) is introduced by **nōn quod** (rarely **quia**) with the Subjv. (as being the false suggestion of another person). But when it is itself a fact the Indicative may be used. The corresponding affirmative is given by **sed quia** (less often **quod**) with the Indicative. **Nōn quīn** sometimes occurs for **nōn quod nōn**.

Subjunctive :

Pugilēs in iactandīs caestibus ingemīscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior, C., *Tusc.*, II. 23, 56 ; *boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that* (as you might suppose) *they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blow comes with a greater rush.*

Māiōrēs nostrī in dominum dē servō quaerī nōluērunt; nōn quīn posset vērum invenīrī, sed quia vidēbātur indīgnum esse, C., *Mil.*, 22, 59 ; *our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because* (not as though they thought) *the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.*

Indicative :

Sum nōn dīcam miser, sed certē exercitus, nōn quia multīs dēbeō sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquōrum bene dē mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentiōnēs, C., *Planc.*, 32, 78 ; *I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many* (though this is true), *but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict.*

### QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

**542. Quod** is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already : 540, 541.

Indicative :

Gaudē quod spectant oculī tē mīlle loquentem, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 19 ; *rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you* (while you are) *speaking.*

Dolet mihī quod tū nunc stomachāris, C., *ad Br.*, I. 17, 6 ; *it pains me that you are angry now.*

Tibī grātiās agō, quod mē omnī molestiā līberāstī, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 62 ; *I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.*

Subjunctive :

Gaudet mīles quod vīcerit hostem, Ov., *Tr.*, II. 49 ; *the soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.*

Laudat Āfricānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns, C., *Off.*, II. 22, 76 ; *Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent.*

Nēmō est ōrātōrem quod Latīnē loquerētur admīrātus, C., *Or.*, III. 14, 52 ; *no one* (ever) *admired an orator for speaking* (good) *Latin.*

Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet iuventūtem, QUINT., IV. 4, 5 ; *Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.*

REMARK.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Infinitive ; see 533. But in expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, **quod** is more common.

Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 9, 54 ; *I congratulate* (you) *that your genius has not lain hidden.*

Īsocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus darī, (QUINT., III. 8, 9 ; *Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.*

## SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

**543**. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim ; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle **ut** (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative.

| *Final :* | *Consecutive :* |
|---|---|
| **nē (ut nē),** | **ut nōn,** *that not.* |
| **nē quis,** | **ut nēmŏ,** *that no one.* |
| **nē ūllus,** | **ut nūllus,** *that no.* |
| **nē umquam, (nē quandŏ,)** | **ut numquam,** *that never.* |
| **nē ūsquam, (nēcubi,)** | **ut nūsquam,** *that nowhere.* |
| **nē aut—aut, (ut nēve—nēve,)** | **ut neque—neque,** *that neither—nor.* |

### FINAL SENTENCES.

**544**. Final sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle ; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

This form may be translated by (*in order*) *to ;* sometimes by *that may, that might, that*, with the Subjunctive and the like.

**Oportet ĕsse, ut vīvās, nōn vīvere ut edās,** [C.], *ad Her.*, IV. 28, 39 ; *you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (**verba studiī et voluntātis,** verbs of Will and Desire); Complementary Final Sentences.

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

**Volō utī mihī respondeās,** C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 ; *I wish you to answer me.*

Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are :

Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are :

## III. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARK.—The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed :

(1) By the Relative **quī** with the Subjunctive. (630.)

(2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) **causā** or **grātiā**. (428, R. 2.)

(3) By **ad** with Gerund and Gerundive. (432.)

(4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429.)

(5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, *etc.* (430.)

(6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)

(7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (438, R. 2.)

(8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, R. 1.)

### I. Pure Final Sentences.

**545.** Pure Final Sentences are introduced by :

1. **Ut** (**utī**), (*how*) *that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.)   Negative : **ut nē**.

2. **Quō** = ut eō, *that thereby ;* with comparatives, *that the . . . — :*

3. **Nē**, *that not, lest,* continued by **nēve, neu.** (444.)

**Ut amēris, amābilis estō,** Ov., *A.A.,* II. 107 ; *that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.*

**Athēniēnsēs creant decem praetōrēs quī exercituī praeessent,** NEP., I. 4, 4 ; *the Athenians make ten generals to command their army.*

**Laelius veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret dēsīderia nātūrae,** C., *Fin.,* II. 8, 25 ; *Laelius used to go to table to satisfy the cravings of nature.*

**Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperītīs teneātur,** SEN., *E.M.,* 94, 38 ; *a law ought to be brief that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

**Gallīnae pennīs fovent pullōs, nē frīgore laedantur,** *Cf.* C., *N.D.,* II. 52, 129 ; *hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold.*

**Dionȳsius, nē collum tōnsōrī committeret, tondēre fīliās suās docuit,** C., *Tusc.,* V. 20, 58 ; *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave.*

Remarks.—(1) 2. **Nōn** is used after ut when a particular word is negatived :

**Cōnfer tē ad Mānlium, ut nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs sed invītātus ad tuōs īsse videāris**, C., *Cat.*, i. 9, 23 : *betake yourself to Manlius, that you may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited guest to your own* (friends).

## II. Complementary Final Sentences.

### A. *Verbs of Will and Desire.*

**546**. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring (**verba studiī et voluntātis**).

1. Positive : **ut.**

**Volō utī mihī respondeās**, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 ; *I wish you to answer me.*

**Phaëthōn optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur**, C., *Off.*, iii. 25, 94 ; *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.*

**Ubiī Caesarem ōrant, ut sibī parcat**, Caes., *B.G.*, vi. 9, 7 ; *the Ubii beg Cæsar to spare them.*

**Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat**, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 7 ; *you exact that Priam sport at* (his) *sons' funeral.*

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding.

**Pȳthia respondit ut moenibus līgneīs sē mūnīrent**, Nep., ii. 2, 6 : *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

2. Negative : **nē, ut nē**; continued by **nēve (neu)**, *and not.*

**Caesar suīs imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent**, Caes., *B.G.*, i. 46, 2 ; *Caesar gave orders to his* (men) *not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy.*

**Pompēius suīs praedīxerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent**, Caes., *B.C.*, iii. 92. 1 : *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.*

Remarks.—1. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indic. : **volō**, *I will have it* (maintain), **moneō**, *I remark*, **persuādeō**, *I convince*, **dēcernō**, *I decide*, **cōgō**, *I conclude.*

**Moneō artem sine adsiduitāte dīcendī nōn multum iuvāre**, Cf. [C.], *ad Her.*, i. 1, 1 ; *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.*

**Vix cuīquam persuādēbātur Graeciā omnī cēssūrōs Rōmānōs**, L., XXXIII. 32, 3 ; *scarce any one could be persuaded (made to believe) that the Romans would retire from all Greece.*

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without **ut**, is employed.

**Mālō tē sapiēns hostis metuat quam stultī cīvēs laudent**, L., XXII. 39. 20 ; *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.*

**Vellem mē ad cēnam invītāssēs**, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 ; *would that you had invited* ME *to your dinner-party !*

3. Some of these verbs have also the Infinitive ; so regularly **iubeō**, *I bid*, and **vetō**, *I forbid* (423, R. 6).

### B.　Verbs of Hindering.

(547) **548.** Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take **nē** with the Subjunctive, if they are not negatived.

**Impedior nē plūra dīcam**, C., *Sull.*, 33, 92 ; *I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).*

"Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth ?" GAL., V. 7.

**Servitūs mea mihi interdīxit nē quid mīrer meum malum**, PL., *Pers.*, 621 ; *my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine.*

**Histiaeus nē rēs cōnficerētur obstitit**, NEP., I. 3, 5 ; *Histiaeus opposed the thing's being done.*

**Rēgulus sententiam nē dīceret recūsāvit**, C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100 ; *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.*

REMARK.—**Cavēre**, followed by **ut**, means *to be sure to ;* by **nē** or **ut nē**, *to see to it that not ;* by **nē**, *to take precautions against.* When **nē** is omitted, **cavĕ**, **cavētō**, with the Subjv. form circumlocutions for the negative Imperative (271, 2). So with **vidē ut**, **nē**.

**Vidē nē** (**nē nōn**), *see to it lest*, is often used as a polite formula for **dubitō an** (457, 2), *I am inclined to think.* **Crēdere omnia vidē nē nōn sit necesse**, C., *Div.*, II. 13, 31.

**549.** Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take **quōminus** (= **ut eō minus**), *that thereby the less*, with the Subjunctive.

**Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus**, C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 60 ; *age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.*

**Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus ?** C., *N. D.*, I. 34, 95 ; *what is in the way of God's being happy ?*

**Caesar cōgnōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dīmicārētur**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 41, 3 ; *Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight* (**stat**, *there is a stand-still*).

### III. Verbs of Fearing.

**550.** 1. Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

2. With verbs of Fearing :

**Nē**, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared ;

**Ut** (nē nōn) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared :

**Nē nōn** is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

> **Vereor nē hostis veniat,** *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come.* (*I wish he may not come.*)
>
> **Vereor nē hostis vēnerit,** *I fear lest the enemy have come, that* (*it will turn out that*) *he has come.*
>
> **Vereor ut amīcus veniat,** *I fear* (*how my friend can come*) *lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.* (*I wish he may come.*)
>
> **Vereor ut amīcus vēnerit,** *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*
>
> **Nōn vereor nē amīcus nōn veniat,** *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*
>
> **Nōn vereor nē amīcus nōn vēnerit,** *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

**Timeō nē tibĭ nihil praeter lacrimās queam reddere,** C., *Planc.*, 42, 101 ; *I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears.*

**Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs,** C., *Fam.*, xiv. 2, 3 ; *I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.*

**Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opīniōnī hominum nōn respondeat,** *Cf.* C., *Fam.*, ii. 5, 2 ; *I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to* (come up to) *public expectation.*

**Metuō nē id cōnsiliī cēperĭmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus,** C., *Fam.*, xiv. 12 ; *I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain.*

## CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

*Sentences of Tendency and Result.*

**551.** 1. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions.

2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle : Pure Consecutive Sentences.

II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb : (*a*) after verbs of Effecting ; (*b*) after negative verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty ; (*c*) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

### I. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

**552.** Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by

1. **Ut** (**utī**), *that, so that,* and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).

2. **Ut—nōn,** *that, so that, as—not,* continued by **neque, nec** (543, 4).

3. **Quīn = ut nōn,** after a negative sentence (555).

Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, C., *Cat.,* I. 9, 22 ; *you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you* (= *ever to have been recalled by shame*) *from baseness.*

Tanta vīs probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam dīligāmus, C., *Lael.,* 9, 29 ; *so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.*

Nēmŏ adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit, H., *Ep.,* I. 1, 39 ; *no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.*

Nīl tām difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstīgārī possit, Ter., *Heaut.,* 675 ; *naught is so hard but it can* (= *that it cannot*) *be tracked out by search.*

Remarks. 1. Notice especially the impersonal **tantum abest, āfuit** (rarely **aberat**)—**ut—ut.**

Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil **bonum aliud,** C., *Tusc.,* I. 31, 76 ; *so far is it from death* ( = *so far is death from*) *being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.*

The personal construction is extremely rare.

Āgēsilāus tantum āfuit ab īnsolentiā glōriae ut commiserātus sit fortū-nam Graeciae, Nep., XVII. 5, 2 ; *Agesilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece.*

The second **ut** may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow independently ; **Tantum aberat ut bīnōs librōs scrīberent : vix singulōs cōnfēcērunt**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 5 ; *so far were they from writing two copies of each book, they with difficulty finished up one.*

2. **Dīgnus**, *worthy*, **indīgnus**, *unworthy*, **aptus**, **idōneus**, *fit*, take a consecutive sentence with **quī**. Occasionally **dīgnus** and **indīgnus** take **ut**.

**Quī modestē pāret, vidētur quī aliquandō imperet dīgnus esse**, C., *Leg.*, III. 2, 5 ; *he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day.*

3. **Ita** (and **sīc**) are sometimes used to give a restriction or a condition ( = *provided, on condition*) ; in this case the negative is **nē**.

**Ita probanda est mānsuētūdō ut adhibeātur reī pūblicae causā sevēritās**, C., *Off.*, I. 25, 88 ; *mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.*

**Ita tū istaec tua mīscētō nē mē admīsceās**, TER., *Heaut.*, 783 ; *mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.*

4. **Ut nōn** is often = *without*, and the English verbal in *-ing* :

**Mālet exīstimārī bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur**, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 71 ; *he will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).*

## II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

### A. *Verbs of Effecting.*

**553**. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is **nōn** or **nē** ; the sequence varies between final and consecutive.

Such verbs are :

1. Verbs of Causation : **facere, efficere, perficere,** *I make, effect, achieve* ; **assequī, cōnsequī,** *I attain, accomplish,* and many others. (Sequence Final.)

**Efficiam ut intellegātis**, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7 ; *I will cause you to understand.*

**Sed perfice, ut Crassus haec quae coartāvit nōbīs explicet**, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 163 ; *but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed.*

Negatives :

**Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ut nōn moriar nōn potestis**, PLIN., *Ep.*, III. 16, 11 ; *you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.*

**Efficiam posthāc nē quemquam vōce lacessās**, V., *Ec.*, 3, 51 ; *I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song.*

**Facere ut** is often little more than a periphrasis ; especially in the forms **fac ut** and **faxō, faxit** (both peculiar to Comedy).

**Fortūna vestra facit ut īrae meae temperem**, L., XXXVI. 35, 3 ; *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).*

**Invītus** (325, R. 6) **faciō ut recorder ruīnās reī pūblicae**, C., *Vat.*, 9, 21 ; (it is) *against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting (Sequence Final):

**Tenēmus memoriā Catulum esse coāctum ut vītā sē ipse prīvāret**, C., *Or.*, III. 3, 9 ; *we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life.*

**Illud nātūra nōn patitur, ut aliōrum spoliīs nostrās cōpiās augeāmus**, C., *Off.*, III. 5, 22 ; *nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.*

3. Passive verbs of Effecting, and their equivalents, namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following (Sequence Consecutive, but see 513, R.).

Such verbs are **cōnficitur, efficitur, fit, accidit, contingit, ēvenit,** *it happens,* **ūsū venit,** *it occurs,* **sequitur,** *it follows,* and many others. So also **est,** *it is the case.*

**Ex quō efficitur, nōn ut voluptās nē** (the design of the arguer) **sit voluptās, sed ut voluptās nōn** (the result of the argument) **sit summum bonum**, C., *Fin.*, II. 8, 24 ; *from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good.*

**Potest fierī ut is unde tē audīsse dīcis īrātus dīxerit**, C., *Or.*, II. 70, 285 ; (it) *may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.*

**Persaepe ēvenit ut ūtilitās cum honestāte certet**, C., *Part. Or.*, 25, 89 ; *it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.*

4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with **est**, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned (Sequence Consecutive).

The Infinitive is much more common after neuter adjectives.

**Ad Appī Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16 ; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.*

**Eī ne integrum quidem erat ut ad iūstitiam remigrāret**, C., *Tusc.*, V. 21, 62 ; *for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice.*

REMARK.—**Necesse est,** *it is necessary,* generally, and **oportet,** *it behooves,* always omit **ut** :

**Leuctrica pūgna immortālis sit necesse est**, NEP., XV. 10, 2 ; *the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.*

**Mēcum moriāris oportet**, PROP., II. 8, 25 ; *you must die with me.*

### B.  *Verbs of Hindering.*

**(554) 555. Quīn** is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negatived or questioned.

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence Final).

**Vix nunc obsistitur illīs quīn lanient mundum,** Ov., *M.*, 1. 58 ; *they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.*

**Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quīn contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet,** C., *Ac.*, 11. 4, 12 ; *Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.*

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

**Nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit fīlius,** Ter., *And.*, 172 ; *there is no doubt that* (my) *son does not want a wife.*

**Quis dubitet (=nēmō dubitet) quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint?** C., *Parad.*, vi. 2, 48 ; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue?*

**Nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae,** C., *Br.*, 18, 71 ; *it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.*

Remarks.—1. Of course **dubitō** and **nōn dubitō** may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467).   On **dubitō an**, see 457, 2.

2. **Nōn dubitō**, with the Inf., usually means *I do not hesitate to :*

**Nōn dubitem dīcere omnēs sapientēs semper esse beātōs,** C., *Fin.*, v. 32, 95 ; *I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.*

**556. Quīn,** equivalent to **ut nōn,** may be used after any negative sentence (Sequence Consecutive).

Here it may often be translated "*without.*"

**Nīl tam difficile est  quīn quaerendō invēstīgārī possit,** Ter., *Heaut.*, 675 ; *naught is so hard but it can be tracked out by search.*

**Nūllum adhūc intermīsī diem quīn aliquid ad tē litterārum darem,** C., *Att.*, vii. 15, 1 ; *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

Remark.—Note the combination (**facere**) **nōn possum quīn,** *I cannot but,* and similar combinations, such as **nōn abest quīn,** *etc.*

**Nōn possum quīn exclāmem,** Pl., *Trin.*, 705 ; *I cannot but (I must) cry out.*

**Paulum āfuit quīn Fabius Vārum interficeret,** Caes., *B.C.*, 11. 35, 2 ; *there was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).*

16

### Explanatory Ut.

**557.** A Consecutive Sentence with **ut** is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun.

**An quoiquamst ūsus hominī sē ut cruciet ?** TER., *Heaut.*, 81 ; *of what good is it to any man to torture himself ?*

**Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque invideant bonīs,** PL., *Capt.*, 583 ; *the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.*

**Nec meum ad tē ut mittam grātiīs,** PL., *Asin.*, 190 ; *nor is it my style to let her go to you as a gracious gift.*

**Id est proprium cīvitātis ut sit lībera,** C., *Off.*, II. 22, 78 ; *it is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free.*

**Tōtum in eō est, ut tibĭ imperēs,** C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 53 ; *all depends upon this* (one thing), *your self-command.*

### Exclamatory Questions.

**558. Ut** with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions, usually with the insertion of **-ne.**

**Egone ut tē interpellem ?** C., *Tusc.*, II. 18, 42 ; *I interrupt you ?*

**Dī māgnī, ut quī cīvem Rōmānum occīdisset, impūnitātem acciperet,** SEN., *Ben.*, V. 16, 3 ; *Great Gods ! that one who had slain a Roman citizen, should escape unpunished !*

## TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

**559.** The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations :

I. It may be *antecedent.*

CONJUNCTIONS : **Postquam (Posteā quam),** *after that, after ;* **ut,** *as ;* **ubi,** *when* (literally, *where*) ; **simulāc,** *as soon as ;* **ut prīmum, cum prīmum,** *the first moment that.*

II. It may be *contemporaneous.*

CONJUNCTIONS : **Dum dōnec,** *while, until ;* **quoad,** *up to* (the time) *that ;* **quamdiŭ,** *as long as ;* **cum,** *when.*

III. It may be *subsequent.*

CONJUNCTIONS : **Antequam, priusquam,** *before that, before.*
A special chapter is required by

IV. **Cum (quom),** *when.*

## I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

(560) **561. Ut, ut prīmum, ubi, ubi prīmum, cum, cum prīmum, simul āc, simul atque,** and **postquam (posteāquam),** in the sense of *after, as soon as,* take the (Historical) Perfect, rarely the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

**Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs popōscit,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 27, 3 ; *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

**Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excēssit,** CAES., *B.C.,* III. 94, 5 : *as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.*

**Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit, simul āc cōnspexit hostem, cōnflīgere** (555 2, R. 2), NEP., XVI. 5, 3 ; *as soon as he* (had) *caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage him.*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua.**

**Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās vīcerit (Ō. R. vīcit), superbē imperāre,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 31, 12 ; "*that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.*"

**562.** The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

**Ubi nēmō obvius ībat, ad castra hostium tendunt,** L., IX. 45, 14 ; *when* (they saw that) *no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua.**

**Scrīpsistī eum posteāquam nōn audēret (Ō. R. nōn audēbat) reprehendere, laudāre coepisse,** C., *Att.,* I. 13, 4 ; *you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.*

**563.** 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause ; often of the Resulting Condition.

**Posteāquam multitūdinem collēgerat emblēmatum, īnstituit officīnam,** C., *Verr.,* IV. 24, 54 ; *after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.*

2. The Pluperfect is used with **postquam** when a definite interval is mentioned.

**Post** and **quam** are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, **post** may be omitted. Notice **posterō diē quam,** *the day after.*

**Post diem tertium gesta rēs est quam dīxerat,** C., *Mil.,* 16, 44 ; *the matter was accomplished three days after he said it would be.*

Hamilcar nōnŏ annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat occīsus est, Nep., xxii. 4, 2 ; *Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.*

### Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

Scrīptum ā Posīdōniō est trīgintā annīs vīxisse Panaetium posteāquam librōs dē officiīs ēdidisset, C., *Off.*, iii. 2, 8 ; *it is recorded by Posidonius that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.*

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

**564. Postquam** and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causal signification (compare **quoniam,** *now that = since*).

Cūria minor mihĭ vidētur posteāquam est māior, C., *Fin.*, v. 1, 2 ; *the senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is* (really) *greater.*

### Iterative Action.

(565) **566.** Rule I.—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

Humilēs labōrant ubi potentēs dissident, Phaed., i. 30, 1 ; *the lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.*

Ubi frūmentō opus erat, cohortēs praesidium agitābant, S., *Iug.*, 55, 4 ; *when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.*

### The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

Bonus sēgnior fit ubi neglegās, S., *Iug.*, 31, 28 ; *a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.*

**567.** Rule II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect ; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, r. 2.

Quotiēns cecidit,      surgit,      *As often as he falls, he rises.*
Quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat, *As often as he fell, he rose.*
Quotiēns ceciderit, surget,    *As often as he falls* (shall have fallen), *he will rise.*

Simul īnflāvit tībīcen ā perītō carmen āgnōscitur, C., *Ac.*, ii. 27, 86 ; *as soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.*

Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūruērunt, Quint., i. 12, 9 ; *minds are more teachable before they* (have) *become hardened.*

Cum pālam ēius ānulī ad palmam converterat Gygēs ā nūllō vidēbātur, C., *Off.*, iii. 9, 38 ; *when*(ever) *Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm* (of his hand), *he was to be seen by no one.*

**Sī pēs condoluit, sī dēns, ferre nōn possumus,** C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 52 ; *if a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.*

**Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dīxeram,** C., *N.D.*, I. 33, 93 ; *the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.*

## The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

**Ubi cōnsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est,** S., *C.*, I, 6 ; *when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.*

## The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Catō mīrārī sē āiēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex haruspicem cum vīdisset,** C., *Div.*, II. 24, 51 ; *Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw* (another) *haruspex.*  (**Nōn rīdet cum vīdit.**)

## The Subjunctive by Attraction.

**Quārē fīēbat, ut omnium oculōs, quotiēscunque in pūblicum prōdīsset, ad sē converteret,** NEP., VII. 3, 5 ; *whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public* (**quotiēscunque prōdierat, convertēbat**).

REMARK.—The Subjunctive in Iterative sentences instead of the Indicative becomes increasingly common from LIVY on.

## II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

**568**. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are :

**Dum, dōnec,** *while, so long as, until :* **quoad,** *up to* (the time) *that ;* **quamdiū,** *as long as ;* **cum,** *when.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—*so long as, while.*

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—*until.*

### 1. Contemporaneous in Extent.

*(So long as, while.)*

**569**. *Complete Coextension.*—**Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū,** *so long as, while,* take the Indicative of all the tenses.

**Vīta dum superest, bene est,** MAECENAS (SEN., *E.M.*, 101, 11) ; *while* (*so long as*) *life remains, 'tis well.*

**Tiberius Gracchus tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit,** C., *Off.*, II. 12, 43 ; *Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains* (*shall remain*).

**Fuit haec gēns fortis dum Lycūrgī lēgēs vigēbant,** C., *Tusc.*, I. 42, 101 ;
*this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.*

**Dōnec grātus eram tibī, Persārum viguī rēge beātior,** H., *O.*, III. 9, 1 ;
*while I was pleasing in your sight, I thrive more blessed than Persia's
king.*

**Quoad potuit, restitit,** CAES., *B. G.*, IV. 12, 5 ; *as long as he could, he
withstood.*

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Rēgulus dīxit quam diū iūre iūrandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē
senātōrem,** C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100 ; *Regulus said that as long as he was
bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator.* (**Quamdiū teneor
nōn sum senātor.**)

## Subjunctive by Attraction.

**Faciam ut meī meminerīs dum vītam vīvās,** PL., *Pers.*, 494 ; *I'll make
you think of me the longest day you live.*

**570.** *Partial Coextension.*—**Dum,** *while, while yet, dur-
ing,* commonly takes the Present Indicative after all
Tenses : so especially in narrative.

**Cape hunc equum, dum tibī vīrium aliquid superest,** L., XXII. 49, 7 ;
*take this horse, while you have yet some strength left.*

**Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, cōnsulēs ambō in Liguribus gerēbant bellum,**
L., XXXIX. 1, 1 ; *while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls
were carrying on war in Liguria.*

### 2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

#### (*Until.*)

**571.** **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** *up to* (the time) *that, until,* have
the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and
Future Perfect Indicative.

**Tītyre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pāsce capellās,** V., *Ec.*, 9, 23 ; *Tity-
rus, while I am returning* (—till I return)—*the way is short—feed my
kids.*

**Exspectābō dum venit,** TER., *Eun.*, 206 ; *I will wait until he comes.*

**Epamīnōndās ferrum in corpore ūsque eō retinuit, quoad renūntiātum est
vīcisse Boeōtiōs,** *Cf.* NEP., XV. 9, 3 ; *Epaminondas retained the iron in
his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had con-
quered.*

**Haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcerō hōc,** TER., *Ph.*, 420 ; *I will not cease
until I have* (shall have) *accomplished it.*

## Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Scīpiōnī Silānōque dōnec revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātum imperium est**, L., XXVII. 7. 17 ; *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

**572. Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** *until,* take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.

**Vergīnius dum collēgam cōnsuleret morātus est**, L., IV. 21, 10 ; *Verginius delayed until he could* (long enough to) *consult his colleague.*

**At tantī tibi sit nōn indulgēre theātrīs, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor**, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 751 ; *but let it be worth the cost to you* (= deem it worth the cost) *not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from* (your) *untenanted bosom.*

Often with **verba exspectandī**, especially **exspectō**, *I wait.*

**Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis**, H., *Ep.*, I. 2, 42 ; *the clown waits for the river to run off* (dry).

REMARK.—**Verba exspectandī** have also other constructions, as **ut, sī, quīn,** but not the Infinitive.

**573. Dum, modō,** and **dummodō,** *if only, provided only, only,* are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes. The other tenses are very rare.

The negative is **nē** (**dum nē = nē interim**).

**Ōderint dum metuant**, ACCIUS (C., *Off.*, I. 28, 97) ; *let them hate so long as they fear* (provided that, if they will only fear).

**Quō lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nē fīat comes**, PL., *Aul.*, 491; *let them marry where* (= whom) *they please, if but the dowry do not go with them.*

**Dummodō mōrāta rēctē veniat, dōtāta est satis**, PL., *Aul.*, 239; *provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed* (= her dowry is) *enough.*

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

#### Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

**574. Antequam** and **priusquam,** *before,* take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

REMARK.—The elements **ante, anteā, prius,** and **quam** are often separated.

**575**. The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

**Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam**, C., *Cat.*, IV. 10, 20 ; *before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

**Omnia experīrī certum est prius quam pereō**, TER., *And.*, 311 ; *I am determined to try everything before I perish.* (**Prius quam peream** = *sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.*)

**576**. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

Observe that **nōn priusquam** = **nōn dum**.

**Hēracliō, aliquantō ante quam est mortuus, omnia trādiderat**, C., *Verr.*, II. 18, 46 ; *some time before he died he had handed over everything to Heraclius.*

**Lēgātī nōn ante profectī quam impositōs in nāvēs mīlitēs vīdērunt**, L., XXXIV. 12, 8 ; *the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.*

### Subjunctive in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.

**Themistoclēs suīs praedīxit, ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus**, NEP., II. 7, 3 ; *Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he had been sent back.* (**Nōn prius dīmittētis quam ego erō remissus.**)

### Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

**577**. **Antequam** and **priusquam** are used with the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or deprecated.

The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in -*ing ;* the limit in these sentences is said to be ideal.

**Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus**, SEN., *N.Q.*, II. 12, 6 ; *we see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound* (we may never hear it).

**In omnibus negōtiīs prius quam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparātiō dīligēns**, C., *Off.*, I. 21, 73; *in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation* (Ideal Second Person).

**Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversāriīs sentiātur commūnit**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 54, 4 ; *he speedily fortified the hill before he was* (too soon to be) *perceived by the enemy* (**prius quam** = **prius quam ut**).

**Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pūgnā erat expertus**, L., XXX. 35, 4 ; *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight* ( = *to avoid withdrawing from the fight*).

## IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM).

(578) **579.** There are two great uses of **cum**:

I. Temporal **cum** (*when*, *then*), with the Indicative, to give the *date*.

II. Circumstantial **cum** (*as, whereas*), with the Subjunctive, to give the *situation*.

Of the latter there are three varieties:

(*a*) Historical **cum**, *as*, giving the circumstances under which an action took place.

(*b*) Causal **cum**, *as, whereas, since*, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.

(*c*) Concessive **cum**, *whereas, although*, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.

I. **Cum vēr appetit, mīlitēs ex hībernīs movent,** *when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. (*a*) **Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hībernīs mōvit,** *as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

(*b*) **Cum vēr appetat, ex hībernīs movendum est,** *as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

(*c*) **Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hībernīs nōn mōvērunt,** *whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

### 1. Temporal Cum.

**580. Cum,** *when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

**Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret,** C., *Cat. M.*, 22, 80; *the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.*

**Sex librōs dē rē pūblicā tum scrīpsimus cum gubernācula reī pūblicae tenēbāmus,** C., *Div.*, II. 1, 3; *I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.*

**Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat in lectō,** C., *Ph.*, II. 18, 45; *remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.*

**Iam dīlūcēscēbat cum sīgnum cōnsul dedit,** L., XXXVI. 24, 6; *by this time day was beginning to dawn, when* (581) *the consul gave the signal.*

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:

**Īnfāmia etiam tum vīvit quom esse crēdās mortuam,** PL., *Pers.*, 355; *ill-fame lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

REMARKS.—1. **Fuit cum** commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (631), and takes usually the Subjunctive :

**Fuit tempus cum** (= fuit cum) **rūra colerent hominēs,** VARRO, *R.R.*, III. I, 1 ; *there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen.*

2. **Meminī cum,** *I remember the time when,* takes the Indic., but **audīre cum** takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle :

**Meminī cum mihi dēsipere vidēbāre,** C., *Fam.,* VII. 28 ; 1 ; *I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste.*

**Audīvī Mētrodōrum cum dē iīs ipsīs rēbus disputāret,** C., *Or.,* II. 90, 365 ; *I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of **cum** with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative :

**Multī annī sunt cum** (= multōs annōs) **in aere meō est,** C., *Fam.,* XV. 14, 1 ; *(it is) many years (that) he has been* (230) *in my debt.*

**Nōndum centum et decem annī sunt cum** (= ex quō = abhinc annōs) **dē pecūniīs repetundīs lāta lēx est,** C., *Off.,* II. 21, 75 ; *it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.*

**581. Cum** *Inversum.* When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

**Iam dīlūcēscēbat cum sīgnum cōnsul dedit,** L., XXXVI. 24, 6 ; *by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.*

(582–3) **584.** *Iterative* **cum.**—**Cum** in the sense of **quotiēns,** *as often as,* takes the Tenses of Iterative Action. See 566.

**Solet cum sē pūrgat in mē cōnferre omnem culpam,** C., *Att.,* IX. 2 A, 1 ; *he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.*

### 2. Circumstantial Cum.

**585.** *Historical* **cum.**—**Cum,** *when, as,* is used in narrative with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances of a past action.

The Imperfect is used if the action of the **cum**-clause occurs at the same time as that of the leading verb ; the Pluperfect if it precedes it.

**Āgēsilāus cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcēssit,** NEP., XVII. 8, 6 ; *Agesilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.*

**Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs essem audiēbam frequenter,** C., *N.D.,* I. 21, 59 ; *when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.*

**Cum Caesar Ancōnam occupāvisset, urbem relīquimus,** C., *Fam.,* XVI. 12, 2 ; *when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona* (Caesar having occupied Ancona), *I left the city.*

**Attalus moritur alterō et septuāgēsimō annō, cum quattuor et quadrāgintā annōs rēgnāsset,** L., XXXIII. 21, 1 ; *Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

**586.** *Causal* **cum.**—**Cum,** *when, whereas, since, seeing that,* is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to denote the reason of an action.

**Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe nōn sit,** C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29 ; *since these things are so, it is made out* (proved) *that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.*

**Dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs,** NEP., XXIII. 10, 4 ; *he had to fight by stratagem, as he* (seeing that he) *was not a match in arms.*

**587.** *Concessive* and *Adversative* **cum.**—**Cum,** *whereas, although,* is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to express concession or opposition.

**Nihil mē adiūvit, cum posset,** C., *Att.,* IX. 13, 3 ; *he gave me no assistance, although* (at a time when) *he had it in his power.*

**Perīre artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, sī appāret,** QUINT., IV. 2, 127 ; *we think that* (our) *art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

**588. Cum—tum.** When **cum,** *when,* **tum,** *then,* have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. **Cum—tum** then has the force of *both—and especially.*

**Pausaniās cōnsilia cum patriae tum sibī inimīca capiēbat,** NEP., IV. 3, 3 ; *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

REMARK.—When they have different verbs, the verb with **cum** *may* be in the Subjunctive, especially if there is an idea of concession.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**589.** In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Protasis,** that which contains the consequence is called the **Apodosis.**

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss ;* and **Apodosis,** *Conclusion.*

Grammatically, the **Apodosis** is the *Principal,* the **Protasis** the *Dependent,* clause.

**590.** *Sign of the Conditional.*—The common conditional particle is **sī,** *if.*

**591.** *Negative of* **sī.**—The negative of **sī** is **sī nōn** or **nisi.**

(*a*) **Sī nōn** means *if not,* and is the rule:

1. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

**Sī fēcerĭs, māgnam habēbō grātiam; sī nōn fēcerĭs, īgnōscam,** C., *Fam.,* v. 19 ; *if you do it, I will be very grateful to you ; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

2. When the Condition is concessive ; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

**Sī mihĭ bonā rē pūblicā fruī nōn licuerit, at carēbō malā,** C., *Mil.,* 34, 93 ; *if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

(*b*) **Nisi** means *unless,* and is used when an exception or restriction is made to the leading statement. Compare the general use of **nisi,** *except* (R.).

**Nisi molestumst, paucīs percontārier** (130, 6) **volō ego ex tē,** PL., *Rud.,* 120 ; *if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.*

So especially after negatives.

**Nōn possem vivere nisi in litterĭs vīverem,** C., *Fam.,* IX. 26, 1 : *I could not live unless I lived in study.*

**Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās,** C., *Cat. M.,* 7, 21 : *memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it.* (**Sī nōn exerceās,** *in case you fail to exercise it.*)

REMARK.—**Nisi,** after negative sentences or equivalents, has often the signification of *but, except, besides, only :*

**Nihil hīc nisi trīste vidēbis,** Ov., *Tr.,* III. 1, 9 : *you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.*

**Falsus honor iuvat et mendāx īnfāmia terret, quem nisi mendōsum et medicandum ?** H., *Ep.,* I. 16, 39 : "*false honor charms and lying slander scares,*" *whom but the faulty and the fit for physic ?*

**592.** *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, **sī** is used for the first ; **sīn,** *if not (but if ),* for the second.

**Sīn** is further strengthened by **autem, vērō** (rare), *but ;* **minus,** *less (not) :* **secus** (rare), *otherwise :* **aliter,** *else.*

**Mercātūra, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est ; sīn māgna et cōpiōsa, nōn est vituperanda,** C., *Off.,* I. 42, 151 ; *mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty* (work) ; *if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with.*

REMARK.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, **sī minus,** *if less (not),* **sīn minus, sīn aliter,** *if otherwise,* are commonly used, rarely **sī nōn** :

**Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs,** C., *Cat.,* I. 5, 10 ; *take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.*

**Ōderō sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō,** Ov., *Am.,* III. 11, 35 ; *I will hate if I can, if not I shall love against my will.*

**593.** *Other Forms of the Protasis.*—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

**Quī vidēret, urbem captam dīceret,** C., *Verr.,* IV. 23, 52 ; *whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.*

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

**Sī latet ars, prōdest; affert dēprēnsa pudōrem,** Ov., *A.A.,* II. 313 ; *art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

**Fēcērunt id servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tālī rē facere voluisset,** C., *Mil.,* 10, 29 ; *the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case* (**sī quid tāle accidisset**).

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

**Immūtā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs,** C., *Or.,* 70, 232 ; *(if you) change the order of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

## Classification of Conditional Sentences.

**594.** Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis :

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: **sī,** with the Indicative.

II. Ideal Conditional Sentences : **sī,** chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.

III. Unreal Conditional Sentences : **sī,** with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

### I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**595.** The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the matter, according to the formula : if this is so, then that is so ; if this is not so, then that is not so.

The Protasis is in the Indicative : the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used :

| PROTASIS. | APODOSIS. |
|---|---|
| **Sī id crēdis,** | **errās,** |
| *If you believe that,* | *you are going wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdēbās,** | **errābās,** |
| *If you believed that,* | *you were going wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdidistī,** | **errāstī,** |
| *If you* (have) *believed that,* | *you went* (have gone) *wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdēs,** | **errābis,** |
| *If you* (shall) *believe that,* | *you will* (be) *go*(ing) *wrong* (242). |
| **Sī id crēdiderīs,** | **errāverīs,** |
| *If you* (shall have) *believe*(d) *that,* | *you will have gone* (will go) *wrong.* |
| **Sī quid crēdidistī,** | **errās,** |
| *If you have believed anything* | |
| (= when you believe anything), | *you go wrong.*   Comp. 569. |
| **Sī quid crēdiderās,** | **errābās,** |
| *If you had believed anything* | |
| (= when you believed anything), | *you went wrong.* |

**Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit,** C., *Inv.*, 1. 46, 86 ; *if he is drawing* (his) *breath* (breathing) *he is living.*

**Sī occīdī, rēctē fēcī ; sed nōn occīdī,** QUINT., IV. 5, 13 ; *if I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.*

**Nātūram sī sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus,** C., *Off.*, I. 28, 100 ; *if we* (shall) *follow nature* (as our) *guide, we shall never go astray.*

**Flectere sī nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō,** V., *A.*, VII. 312 ; *if I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse* (all) *hell below.*

**Dēsinēs timēre, sī spērāre dēsierīs,** SEN., *E. M.*, I. 5, 7 ; *you will cease to fear, if you* (shall have) *cease*(d) *to hope.*

**Pereām male, sī nōn optimum erat,** H., *S.*, II. 1, 6 ; *may I die the death if it was not best.*

REMARKS.—1. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (**Ōrātiō Oblīqua**), the Protasis must be put in the Subjv., according to the rule.

| (**Sī id crēdis, errās.**) | **Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdās, errāre.** |
|---|---|
| | **Dīxī, tē, sī id crēderēs, errāre.** |
| (**Sī id crēdēs, errābis.**) | **Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.** |
| | **Dīxī, tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.** |
| (**Sī id crēdidistī, errāstī.**) | **Dīcō, tē, sī id crēdiderīs, errāsse.** |
| | **Dīxī, tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errāsse.** |

For examples, see **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction :

**Arāneolae rēte texunt ut sī quid inhaeserit cōnficiant,** C., *N. D.*, II. 48, 123 ; *spiders weave webs* (567) *to despatch anything that gets caught.* (**Sī quid inhaesit cōnficiunt.**)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present :

**Senectūs plēna est voluptātis sī illā sciās ūtī,** SEN., *E. M.*, 12, 4 ; *old age is full of pleasure if you know* (if one knows) *how to enjoy it.*

4. **Sīve—sīve** (seu—seu) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.)

Seu vīcit, ferōciter īnstat victīs ; seu victus est, īnstaurat cum victōribus certāmen, L., XXVII. 14, 1 ; *if he vanquishes* (567), *he presses the vanquished furiously ; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

## II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**596.** The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense, according to the formula : if this should be so, then that would be so.

Nothing is indicated as to the reality of the actions. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, R. 3).

| PROTASIS. | APODOSIS. |
|---|---|
| Sī id crēdās, | errēs, |
| *If you should* (were to) *believe that,* | *you would be going wrong.* |
| Sī id crēdās, | errāverīs, |
| *If you should* (were to) *believe that,* | *you would go wrong.* |
| Sī id crēdiderīs, | errēs, |
| 1. *If you should* (prove to) *have believed that* (Perfect ; Action Past or Future),| *you would be going wrong.* |
| 2. *If you should* (come to) *believe that* (Aor.; Action Future), | *you would be going wrong.* |
| Sī id crēdiderīs, | errāverīs (rare), |
| *If you* (should have) *believe*(d) *that,* | *you would* (have) *go*(ne) *wrong.* |

Hanc viam sī asperam esse negem, mentiar, C., *Sest.*, 46, 100 ; *if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie.*

Sī gladium quis apud tē sānā mente dēposuerit, repetat īnsāniēns, reddere peccātum sit, officium nōn reddere, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 95 ; *if a man in sound mind were to deposit* (*to have deposited*) *a sword with you,* (and) *reclaim it* (*when*) *mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.*

Sī valeant hominēs, ars tua, **Phoebe**, iacet, Ov., *Tr.*, IV., 3, 78 ; *should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.*

Nūlla est excūsātiō peccātī, sī amīcī causā peccāverīs, C., *Lael.*, 11, 37 ; *it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*

2. The Point of View is occasionally the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms.

**Sī Alfēnus tum iūdicium accipere vellēt, quid agerēs?** C., *Quinct.*, 26, 83 ; *in case Alfenus was willing then to undertake the trial, what were you to do ?* (Present : **sī nunc velit . . . agās ?**)

REMARK.—The lively fancy of the Roman sometimes employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. This is more common in early Latin.

**Tū sī hīc sīs, aliter sentiās,** TER., *And.*, 310 ; *if you were I* (put yourself in my place), *you would think differently.*

## III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**597.** The Unreal Conditional Sentence is used of that which is not or was not true, according to the formula : if this were so, then that would be so ; if this had been so, then that would have been so.

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present ; the Pluperfect Subjunctive, to express completed action—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

| PROTASIS. | APODOSIS. |
|---|---|
| **Sī id crēderēs,** | **errārēs,** |
| *If you believed* (were believing) *that*, [you do not,] | *you would be going wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdidissēs,** | **errāvissēs,** |
| *If you had believed that,* [you did not,] | *you would have gone wrong.* |

**Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret,** C., *Fin.*, 1. 13. 42; *wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.*

**Caederem tē, nisi īrāscerer,** SEN., *Ira.*, 1. 15. 3 ; *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.*

**Sī ibi tē esse scīssem, ad tē ipse vēnissem,** C., *Fin.*, 1. 8 ; *if I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.*

**Ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppūgnārētur ; nisi fīlium habērem, lībera in līberā patriā mortua essem,** L., 11. 40. 8 ; *had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged ; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

REMARKS.—(1) 2. After a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic. when the action is represented as interrupted (233).

**Lābēbar longius, nisi mē retinuissem,** C., *Leg.*, 1. 19. 52 ; *I was letting* (*should have let*) *myself go on too far, had I not checked myself.*

3. The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—**vix, paene,** *scarcely, hardly,* and the like.

**Cōnsul esse quī potuī, nisi eum vītae cursum tenuissem?** C., *Rep.,* I. 6, 10 ; *how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life ?*

**Ēmendātūrus, sī licuisset, eram,** Ov., *Tr.,* I. 7, 40 ; *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free* (to do it).

4. In **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** the Protasis is unchanged ; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, **futūrum (fore) ut, futūrum fuisse ut** for passive and Supineless verbs.

A. **Dīcō (dīxī), tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.**

B. **Dīcō (dīxī), tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse.**

*A.* **Dīcō (dīxī), sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperēris.**

*B.* **Dīcō (dīxī), sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris.**

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv. ; the Impf. form is unchanged.

The passive form is unchanged.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Nōn dubitō,** | **quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs,** |
| *I do not doubt,* | *that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.* |
| **Nōn dubitābam,** | **quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, erratūrus fuerīs,** |
| *I did not doubt,* | *that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.* |

**Honestum tāle est ut, vel sī īgnōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile,** *Cf.* C., *Fin.,* II. 15, 49 ; *virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.*

**Dīc quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs?** L., IX. 33, 7 ; *tell* (me) *what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time ?*

Similarly **potuī** (R. 3) becomes **potuerim,** and **fuī** with the Periphrastic passive in **-dus** becomes **fuerim** after all tenses.

## INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**598.** *Omission of the Conditional Sign.*—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

**Pōscit, dandum est ; vocat, veniendum est,** C., *Parad.,* 5, 2 ; *she asks, he must give ; she calls, he must come.*

**Ūnum cōgnōrīs, omnīs nōrīs,** TER., *Ph.,* 265 ; *you know one, you know all.*

17

**599.** *Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.*—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

Sī quisquam ( = sī quisquam fuit), Catō sapiēns fuit, *Cf.* C., *Lael.*, 2, 9 ; *if any one was wise, Cato was.*

Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10 ; *take out with you all your* (followers) ; *if not (take out) as many as possible.*

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

(600–1) **602. Ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut,** and **velut sī,** meaning *as if,* take the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary course of the conditional.

Nōlī timēre quasi [ = quam timeās sī] assem elephantō dēs, QUINT., VI. 3, 59 : *don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.*

Mē iuvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac perīculī fuerim, ad fīnem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse, L.. XXXI. 1 ; *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).*

Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sī iam ad portās hostis esset, L., XXI. 16, 2 ; *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.*

REMARKS.—1. **Quasi** is used to soften or apologize for a single word ( = ut ita dīcam).

Mors est quaedam quasi migrātiō commūtātiōque vītae, *Cf.* C., *Tusc.,* I. 12, 27 ; *death is as it were a shifting of life's quarters.*

2. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a participle :

Tamquam occīsus relictus est, *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, V. 11, 28 ; *he was left for* (as if) *slain* (dead).

### CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

(603) **604. Etsī, etiamsī,** and **tametsī,** *even if, although,* take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of **sī,** *if.* The Indicative is more common, especially with **etsī.**

Dē futūrīs rēbus etsī semper difficile est dīcere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possīs accēdere, C., *Fam.,* VI. 4, 1 ; *although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.*

**Inops ille etiamsī referre grātiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest,** C., *Off.*, II. 20, 69 ; *the needy man (spoken of ), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.*

**605. Quamquam** (*to what extent soever*), *although,* is a generic relative (254, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

**Medicī quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegrīs dīcunt, illō morbō eōs esse moritūrōs,** C., *Div.*, II. 25, 54 ; *although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that* (particular) *disease.*

REMARK.—The Potential Subjv. (257) is sometimes found with quamquam.

**Quamquam exercitum quī in Volscīs erat māllet, nihil recūsāvit,** L., VI. 9, 6 ; *although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.*

So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

**606. Quamvīs** (*as much as you will*), *although,* is construed with the Subjunctive.

**Quamvīs sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledīcere temptant,** Ov., *M.*, VI. 376 ; *although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.*

**Quamvīs ille niger, quamvīs tū candidus essēs,** V., *Ec.*, II. 16 ; *although he was black, although you were fair.*

REMARK.—**Quamvīs** is sometimes found with the Indicative in the poets and later prose.

**607. Licet** (*it is permitted*) retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive :

**Licet irrīdeat sī quī vult,** C., *Parad.*, I. 1, 8 ; *let any one laugh who will.*

**Ārdeat ipsa licet, tormentīs gaudet amantis,** Juv., VI. 209 ; *though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.*

**608. Ut,** *granted that,* and **nē,** *granted that* (*not*), are also used concessively for the sake of argument.

**Ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudandᴀ voluntās,** Ov., *Pont.*, III. 4, 79 ; *granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.*

**Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est,** C., *Tusc.*, II. 5, 14 ; *granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

**609.** *Other forms of the Concessive Sentence.*—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

Multōrum tē oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem cūstōdient, C., *Cat.*, I. 2, 6 ; *the eyes and ears of many will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not* (WITHOUT *your perceiving it*).

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**610.** The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English : so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

REMARKS.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract substantive :

Quae cum ita sint, *now since these things are so* (Ciceronian formula).

Futūra modo exspectant; quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōnficiuntur et angōre et metū, C., *Fin.*, I. 18, 60 ; *they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.*

Epicūrus nōn satis polītus iīs artibus quās quī tenent, ērudītī appellantur, C., *Fin.*, I. 7, 26 ; *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated.*

2. Notice especially **quod** in combination with **sī, nisi,** and **nī,** with **ubi, quia, quoniam,** and the like, in which **quod** means *and as for that,* and is sometimes translated by *and, but, therefore, whereas,* sometimes not at all. At the beginning of a sentence it is often convenient to translate **quod** "*as for the fact that.*" See 525, 2.

Quod nī fuissem incōgitāns ita eum exspectārem ut pār fuit, TER., *Ph.*, 155 ; *whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in proper mood.*

Quod māgnum dolōrem brevem esse dīcitis, id nōn intellegō, quāle sit, C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 94; *as for your saying that great grief is short, I do not understand what that means.*

(611) **612.** *Position of Relatives.*—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).

**613.** *Antecedent.*—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

## CONCORD.

**614.** The Relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

**Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō,** PL., *Merc.,* 812 ; *a wife who is good is contented with one husband.*

**Hōc illīs nārrō quī mē nōn intellegunt,** PHAEDR., 3, 128 ; *I tell this tale for those who understand me not.*

**Ego quī tē cōnfīrmō, ipse mē nōn possum,** C., *Fam.,* XIV. 4, 5 ; *I who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes ; exceptions are very rare :

**Tū es is, quī mē summīs laudibus ad caelum extulistī,** C., *Fam.,* XV. 4, 11 ; *you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.*

(2) 3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined :

(*a*) By the sense, and not by the form ;

**Caesa sunt ad sex mīlia quī Pydnam perfūgerant,** L., XLIV. 42, 7 ; *there were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna.*

**Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī videant,** CAES., *B. G.,* I. 15 ; *he sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

(*b*) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent ;

**Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae caput est,** L., XLII. 44, 3 ; *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

**Flūmen Scaldis, quod īnfluit in Mosam,** CAES., *B.G.,* VI. 33, 3 ; *the river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.*

(4) 5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 286 :

**Ōtium atque dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant,** S., *C.,* 36, 4 ; *leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred :

**Eae frūgēs atque frūctūs quōs terra gīgnit,** C., *N.D.,* II. 14, 37 ; *those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

**615.** *Repetition of the Antecedent.*—The Antecedent of the Relative may be repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

**Caesar intellēxit diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 16, 5 ; *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which day it behooved to measure corn* (corn was to be measured out) *to the soldiers.*

**616.** *Incorporation of the Antecedent.*—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

In quem prīmum ēgressī sunt locum Trōia vocātur, L., I. 1, 3 ; *the first place they landed at was called Troy.*

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

Amānus Syriam ā Ciliciā dīvidit, quī mōns erat hostium plēnus, C., *Att.*, v. 20, 3 ; *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.*

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

Themistoclēs dē servīs suīs quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem mīsit, NEP., II. 4, 3 ; *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king.*

**617.** *Attraction of the Relative.*—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

Hōc cōnfīrmāmus illō auguriō quō dīximus, C., *Att.*, x. 8, 7 ; *we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

**618.** *Correlative of the Relative.*—The usual Correlative of quī is **is**, more rarely **hīc, ille.**

Is minimō eget mortālis, quī minimum cupit, SYRUS. 286 (Fr.) ; *that mortal lacketh least, who wanteth least.*

Hīc sapiēns, de quō loquor, C., *Ac.*, II. 33, 105 ; *this wise man of whom I am speaking.*

Illa diēs veniet, mea quā lūgubria pōnam, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 2, 73 ; *the day will come when I shall lay aside my mournful strains.*

**619.** *Absorption of the Correlative.*—The Correlative **is** is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative.

Postume, nōn bene olet, quī bene semper olet, MART., II. 12, 4 ; *Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.*

Quem dī dīligunt adulēscēns moritur, PL., *B.*, 816 ; *(he) whom the gods love dies young.*

**620.** *Position of the Correlative clause.*—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes; absorption also is common.

Male sē rēs habet cum quod virtūte efficī dēbet id temptātur pecūniā, C., *Off.*, II. 6, 22 ; *it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.*

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit, SEN., *E.M.*, 59, 18 ; *what fortune has not given* (does not give), *she does not take away.*

**621.** *Indefinite Antecedent.*—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

Ēlige cuī dīcās : tū mihi sōla placēs, Ov., *A.A.*, I. 42 ; *choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me.*

## TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**622.** *Future and Future Perfect.*—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

Sit līber, dominus quī volet esse meus, MART., II. 32, 8 ; *he must be free who wishes* (shall wish) *to be my master.*

Quī prior strinxerit ferrum, ēius victōria erit, L., XXIV. 38, 5 ; *who first draws* (shall have drawn) *the sword, his shall be the victory.*

**623.** *Iterative Action.*—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

I. Contemporaneous action :

Ōre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō, H., *S.*, I. 1, 34 ; *drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure* (heap).

Quācumque incēdēbat āgmen, lēgātī occurrēbant, L., XXXIV. 16, 6 ; *in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

II. Prior action :

Terra numquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit, C., *Cat.M.*, 15, 51 ; *the earth never returns without interest what it has received* (receives).

Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et vīderat Themistoclēs, C., *Ac.*, II. 1, 2 ; *whatever Themistocles heard and saw* (had heard and seen), *remained fixed in his memory.*

Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēnerīs vitia, SEN., *E.M.*, 28, 1 ; *vices will follow you whithersoever you go.*

REMARK.—On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, R.

## MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624.** The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

**Uxor quae bona est**, PL., *Merc.*, 812 ; *a wife who is good (a good wife).*

**625.** *Indefinite and Generic Relatives.*—**Quīcumque, quisquis,** and the like, are Iterative in their nature and take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action ; see 623.

REMARK.—The Subjv. is used :

(1) In **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** (Total or Partial) :

**Mārtī Gallī quae bellō cēperint** (Pf. Subjv.) **dēvovent** (= **sē datūrōs vovent**), *Cf.* CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 17, 3; *the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war* (**Ō. R., Quae cēperĭmus, dabimus**).

(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses) :

**Quis eum dīligat quem metuat ?** C., *Lael.*, 15, 53 ; *who could love a man whom he fears ?*

(3) In the Ideal Second Person :

**Bonus sēgnior fit ubi neglegās,** S., *Iug.*, 31, 28 ; *a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him.*

(626) **627.** The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL: **Habeō quae velim,** C., *Fin.,* I. 8, 28; *I have what I should like.*

OPTATIVE : **Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte,** L., I. 17, 10 : *blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.*

REMARK.—Notice the Subjunctive in restrictive phrases like **quod sciam,** *so far as I know.*

**628.** The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the statement or opinion of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. So especially in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** and Final Sentences.

**Rēctē Graecī praecipiunt, nōn temptanda quae efficī nōn possint,** QUINT., IV. 5, 17 ; *right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished.*

**Senātus cēnsuit utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, Haeduōs dēfenderet,** CAES., *B.G.*, I. 35; *the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haedui.*

REMARK.—Even in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** the Indic. is retained :

(*a*) In explanations of the narrator :

**Nūntiātur Afrāniō māgnōs commeātūs quī iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flūmen cōnstitisse,** CAES., *B.C.*, I. 51, 1 ; *it is* (was) *announced to Afranius that large supplies of provisions* (which were on their way to Caesar) *had halted at the river.*

(*b*) In mere circumlocutions :

**Prōvidendum est nē quae dīcuntur ab eō quī dīcit dissentiant,** QUINT., III. 8, 48 ; *we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.*

**629.** *Attraction of Mood.*—Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form a necessary part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive.

**Pigrī est ingeniī contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa,** QUINT., X. 2, 4 ; *it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others.*

**Sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs ; moriendum est enim omnibus,** C., *Tusc.,* I. 5, 9 ; *if you called only those wretched who had* (have) *to die, you would except none who lived* (live) *; for all have to die.*

REMARK.—The Indic. is used :

(*a*) In mere circumlocutions ; so, often in Consecutive Sentences :

**Efficitur ab ōrātōre, ut iī quī audiunt ita adficiantur ut ōrātor velit,** *Cf.* C., *Br.,* 49, 185 ; *it is brought about by the orator that those who hear him* (= his auditors) *are affected as he wishes* (them to be).

(*b*) Of individual facts :

**Et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās,** CAT., VIII. 2 ; *and what you see* (definite thing, definite person) *is lost for aye, for aye deem lost.* (**Quod videās,** anybody, anything.)

**630.** *Relative Sentences of Design.*—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when **quī = ut is,** *in order that he.*

**Sunt multī quī ēripiunt aliīs quod aliīs largiantur,** C., *Off.,* I. 14, 43 ; *many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.*

**631.** *Relative Sentences of Tendency.*—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when **quī = ut is,** *so that he* (*Subjunctive of Characteristic*).

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation, and we distinguish three varieties :

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasized ; regularly after **idōneus,** *suitable ;* **aptus,** *fit ;*

**dīgnus,** *worthy ;* **indīgnus,** *unworthy ;* after **is, tālis, ēiusmodī, tam, tantus,** and the like ; after **ūnus** and **sōlus.**

**Est innocentia adfectiō tālis animī, quae noceat nēminī,** C., *Tusc.,* III. 8, 16 ; *harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one).*

**Sōlus es, Caesar, cūius in victōriā ceciderit nēmŏ,** C., *Dei.,* 12, 34 ; *thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen.*

2. With indefinite antecedents such as :

**Est quī, sunt quī,** *there is, there are some who ;* **nēmŏ est quī,** *there is none to ;* **nihil est quod,** *there is nothing to ;* **multī, nōnnūllī sunt quī,** *there are many, some, to ;* **habeō quod,** *I have to ;* **reperiuntur quī,** *persons are found who* (to) . . .; **quis est quī ?** *who is there who* (to) . . . ? **est cūr,** *there is reason for, etc.* So, also, **fuit cum,** *there was a time when* (580, R. 1).

**Sunt quī discēssum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem,** C., *Tusc.,* I. 9, 18; *there are some who* (to) *think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.*

**Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam malī,** PL., *Capt.,* 741 ; *after death there is no ill in death for me to dread.*

**Nec mea quī digitīs lūmina condat erit,** Ov., *Her.,* 10, 120 : *and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.*

**Miserrimus est quī quom ēsse cupit quod edat nōn habet,** PL., *Capt.,* 463 ; *he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat* (**nōn habet quid edat** would mean *does not know what to eat*).

REMARK.—The Indicative may be used in affirmative statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics :

| **Multī sunt quī ēripiant,** | **Multī sunt quī ēripiunt,** |
|---|---|
| *There are many to snatch away.* | *Many are they who snatch away.* |

**Sunt-quī** (= **quīdam**) **quod sentiunt nōn audent dīcere,** C., *Off.,* I. 24, 84 ; *some dare not say what they think.*

**Sunt-quibus ingrātē timida indulgentia servit,** Ov., *A.A.,* II. 435 ; *to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.*

3. After comparatives with **quam** as an object clause.

**Māiōra in dēfectiōne dēlīquerant, quam quibus īgnōscī posset,** L., XXVI. 12, 6 ; *(in that revolt) they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness).*

**632. Quīn** *in Sentences of Character.*—After negative clauses, **quīn** is often used (556), for **quī nōn.**

**Sunt certa vitia quae nēmŏ est quīn effugere cupiat,** C., *Or.,* III. 11, 41 ; *there are certain faults which there is no one but* (= everybody) *desires to escape.*

**633.** *Relative in a Causal Sense.*—When **quī = cum is,** *as he,* the Subjunctive is employed.

Canīnius fuit mīrificā vigilantiā quī suō tōtō cōnsulātū somnum nōn vīderit, C., *Fam.*, VII. 30, 1 ; *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen ( = taken a wink of ) sleep in his whole consulship.*

**634.** *Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.*— When **quī = cum is,** *although, whereas he,* the Subjunctive is employed.

Ego quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēnās complūrēs ibi diēs sum commorātus, C., *Or.*, I. 18, 82 ; *although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.*

(635–6) **637.** *Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.* —The Relative sentence may be represented by a Participle.

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidī sunt, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 60 ; *all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.*

## COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

**638.** Comparative Sentences which are introduced in English by *as* or *than*, are introduced in Latin :

(*a*) By correlatives ; (*b*) by **atque** or **āc;** (*c*) by **quam.**

**639.** *Moods in Comparative Sentences.*—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

REMARK.—On potius quam with the Subjv., see below, 644, R. 3.

**640.** The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

Servī mōribus īsdem erant quibus dominus, *Cf.* C., *Verr.*, III. 25, 62 ; *the servants had the same character as the master.*

**641.** When both clauses have the same verb and are both dependent upon a verb of Saying or Thinking, they have the same construction.

Ita sentiō Latīnam linguam locuplētiōrem esse quam Graecam, C., *Fin.*, I. 3, 10 ; *it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.*

**Ego Gāium Caesarem nōn eadem dē rē pūblicā sentīre quae mē sciō,** C., *Pis.*, 32, 79 ; *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political views that I* (have).

## I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

**642.** Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives :

1. Adjective correlatives :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tot, totidem | quot, | (so) *as many* | |
| tantus | quantus, | (so) *as great* | *as.* |
| tālis | quālis, | *such* | |
| īdem | quī, | *the same* | |

2. Adverbial correlatives :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tam | quam, | (so) *as much* | |
| tantopere | quantopere, | (so) *as much* | *as.* |
| totiēns | quotiēns, | *as often* | |
| tamdiū | quamdiū, | *as long* | |
| ita, sīc | ut, utī, sīcut, | | |
| item, itidem | quemadmodum, | | *so* (as) = *as.* |
| | quōmodo, | | |

**Quot hominēs, tot sententiae,** (*as*) *many men,* (*so*) *many minds,* TER., *Ph.*, 454.

**Frūmentum tantī fuit quantī iste aestimāvit,** C., *Verr.*, III. 84, 194 ; *corn was worth as much as he valued it.*

**Plērīque habēre amīcum tālem volunt, quālēs ipsī esse nōn possunt,** C., *Lael.*, 22, 82 ; *most people wish to have a friend of a character such as they themselves cannot possess.*

**Nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās,** C., *Lig.*, 12, 37 ; *nothing is so winning as kindness.*

**Sīc dē ambitiōne quōmodo dē amīcā queruntur,** SEN., *E. M.*, 22, 10 ; *they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.*

**Tamdiū requiēscō quamdiū ad tē scrībō,** C., *Att.*, IX. 4, 1 ; *I rest as long as I am writing to you.*

3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

**Homǒ, nōn quam istī sunt, glōriōsus,** L., XXXV. 49, 7 ; *a man, not* (so) *vainglorious as they are.*

**Discēs quamdiū volēs,** C., *Off.*, I. 1, 2 ; *you shall learn* (as long) *as you wish.*

## II. Comparative Sentences with **ATQUE** (**ĀC**).

**643.** Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** or **āc.**

**Virtūs eadem in homine āc deō est,** C., *Leg.*, I. 8, 25 ; *virtue is the same in man as in god.*

**Dissimulātiō est cum alia dīcuntur āc sentiās,** C., *Or.*, II. 67, 269 ; *dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean* (something is said other than what you mean).

**Nōn dīxī secus āc sentiēbam,** C., *Or.*, II. 6, 24 ; *I did not speak otherwise than I thought.*

### III. Comparative Sentences with **QUAM**.

**644.** Comparative Sentences with **quam** follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences **quam** takes the same case after it as before it.

**Melior est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria,** L., XXX. 30, 19 ; *better is certain peace than hoped-for victory.*

**Potius amīcum quam dictum perdidī,** QUINT., VI. 3, 20 ; *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.*

REMARKS.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb **esse**, unless the oblique case be an Accusative :

**Vīcīnus tuus equum meliōrem habet quam tuus est,** *Cf.* C., *Inv.*, I. 31, 52 ; *your neighbor has a better horse than yours.*

**Ego hominem callidiōrem vīdī nēminem quam Phormiōnem,** TER., *Ph.*, 591 ; *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio* (= **quam Phormiō est**).

2. On **quam prō**, and **quam quī**, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.

3. (*a*) When two clauses are compared by **potius**, *rather*, **prius**, *before*, **citius**, *quicker*, *sooner*, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. (512), with or without **ut**.

**Dēpūgnā potius quam serviās,** C., *Att.*, VII. 7, 7 ; *fight it out rather than be a slave.*

(*b*) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise.

**Sē ab omnibus dēsertōs potius quam abs tē dēfēnsōs esse mālunt,** C., *Div. in Caec.*, 6, 21 ; *they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you.*

## THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

**645**. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

**646**. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Auxiliary Verbs : 423.

Gerund and Gerundive : 425–433.

Supine : 434–436.

Infinitive in Object Sentences : 526–531.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences : 532, 546, R. 3.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences : (635), 655, R. 1.

### HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

**647**. The Present Infinitive is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative ; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

**Verrēs minitāri Diodōrō, vōciferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre,** C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 : *Verres threatened* (was for threatening) *Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

### ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA.

**648**. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—1. Under the general head of **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. **Inquam**, *quoth I*, is used in citing the **Ōrātiō Rēcta** ; **āiō**, *I say*, generally in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.

**Inquam** never precedes the **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, but is always parenthetic ; **āiō** may or may not be parenthetic.

**649.** Ōrātiō Oblīqua differs from Ōrātiō Rēcta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

### Moods in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**650.** In Ōrātiō Oblīqua the *principal* clauses (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the *Infinitive*, the *subordinate* clauses in the *Subjunctive.*

Ōrātiō Rēcta:        Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Ōrātiō Oblīqua :    Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait
Ō. R.:                    bēstiolae quaedam nāscuntur,
Ō. O.:                    bēstiolās quāsdam nāscī,
Ō. R.:                    quae ūnum diem vīvunt,
Ō. O.:                    quae ūnum diem vīvant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94.

Ō. R.—*On the river Bog, says Aristotle,*     } *little creatures are born, that live*
Ō. O.—*Aristotle says that on the river Bog,* }     *(but) one day.*

Sōcratēs dīcere solēbat :
Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs,
Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scīrent satis esse ēloquentēs, C., *Or.*, I. 14, 63.

Ō. R. *Socrates used to say:* " *All men* ARE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDER-STAND.*"

Ō. O. *Socrates used to say that all men* WERE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDER-STOOD.

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656).

Otherwise, Subjv. in Ō. R. continues to be Subjv. in Ō. O.

**651.** Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467 ; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum : quid sibĭ vellet cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44, 7 ; *Ariovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people ; what did he* (Caesar) *mean by coming into his possessions ?* (**Quid tibĭ vīs ?**)

REMARKS.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (464), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of Ō. R. to the Acc. and Inf. of Ō. O. when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

Ō. R. **Num possum ?**      *Can I ?*          [No.] **Ō. O. Num posse ?**
                                                                CAES., *B. G.*, I. 14, *Could he ?*
        **Quid est turpius ?** *What is baser ?* [Nothing.] **Quid esse turpius ?**
                                                                CAES., *B. G.*, V. 28, **6 ;** *What was baser ?*

**Quō sē repulsōs ab Rōmānīs itūrōs?** L., xxxiv. 11, 6 ; *whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans?* (**Quō ībimus?**)

**Cuī nōn appārēre ab eō quī prior arma intulisset iniūriam ortam esse?** L., xxxii. 10, 6 ; *to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war?* (**Cuī nōn appāret?**)

**Sī bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent?** L., xxvii. 34, 13 ; *if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty?* (**Sī bonum dūcitis, quid prō noxiō damnāstis?**)

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. *The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.*

**Quis sibī persuādēret sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse?** Caes., *B.G.*, v. 29, 5 ; *who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without* (having made) *a sure thing* (of it) ? (**Quis sibī persuādeat?**)

**652.** Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, **ut**; the Negative is, of course, **nē** (never **ut nē**).

**Redditur respōnsum : nōndum tempus pūgnae esse ; castrīs sē tenērent,** L., ii. 45, 8 ; *there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (**Ō. R., castrīs vōs tenēte.**)

**Vercingetorīx cohortātus est : nē perturbārentur incommodō,** Caes., *B.G.*, vii. 29, 1 ; *Vercingetorix comforted them* (by saying) *that they must not be disconcerted by the disaster.* (**Ō. R., nōlīte perturbārī.**)

### Tenses in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**653.** The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530) :

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

Remark.—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in **Ō. O.**, and hence loses its idea of continuance.

**654.** The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.*

Point of View of the Reporter:

**Lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit : sibī mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vīcisset, Caesarī negōtiī esset,** Caes., *B.G.*, i. 34, 4 ; *to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him* (he wondered) *what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

---

* This is technically called **repraesentātiō,** *representation.*

Point of View of the Speaker :

**Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum Caesar respondit : cōnsuēsse deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere,** Caes., *B. G.,* i. 14, 5 ; *to the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the Gods were* (are) *wont, that men might* (may) *suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished* (wish) *to punish for their crime.*

Point of View shifted :

**Ad haec Mārcius respondit : Sī quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant,** S., *C.,* 34, 1 ; *thereto Marcius replied : If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

**655.** Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525 ; for Causal, see 541 ; for Temporal, see 561–564, 569–577 ; for Relative, see 628.

Remarks.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive occasionally, especially in Cicero.

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative : (*a*) In mere circumlocutions. (*b*) In explanations of the narrator (628, R.).

3. **Dum**, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution :

**Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentīs, dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur,** C., *Tusc.,* i. 42, 101 ; *tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying* (in obedience to) *our country's hallowed laws.*

**656.** Conditional Sentences in Ōrātiō Oblīqua, Total and Partial.

1. The Protasis follows the rule for subordinate clauses (650).

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with **futūrum fuisse ut** . . . . 248.

Remark.—**Posse** needs no Fut. (248 R.), and **potuisse** no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms.*—In the transfer of Conditions to
Ō. O., the difference between many forms disappears. For
instance,

I. 1. **Sī id crēdis, errābis.**
  2. **Sī id crēdēs, errābis.** } **Dīcō tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.**
  3. **Sī id crēdās, errēs.**

II. 1. **Sī id crēdis, errābis.**
  2. **Sī id crēdēs, ērrābis.** } **Dīxī tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.**
  3. **Sī id crēdās, errēs.**
  4. **Sī id crēderēs, errārēs.**

III. 1. **Sī id crēdiderīs, errābis.**
  2. **Sī id crēdiderīs, errēs.** } **Dīxī tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse.**
  3. **Sī id crēdiderīs, errāverīs.**
  4. **Sī id crēdidissēs, errārēs.**

## 657. Logical Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet
quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō
iūre impedīrī,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 36, 2 ; *to this Ariovistus made answer :
If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right,
he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his
right.* (**Ō. R.: sī ego nōn praescrībō, nōn oportet mē impedīrī.**)

**Sī bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnāssent ? Sī noxium comperis-
sent, quid alterum cōnsulātum crēderent ?** L., XXVII. 34, 13 ; *if they
thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty ; if,
on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they intrust
him with a second consulship ?* (**Ō. R.: sī—dūcitis, quid damnāstis ? sī
—comperistis, quid crēditis ?**)

**Eum omnium labōrum fīnem fore exīstimābant sī hostem Hibērō inter-
clūdere potuissent,** CAES., *B.C.,* I. 68, 3 ; *they thought that would be the
end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro.*
(**Ō. R.: is labōrum fīnis erit** (or **fuerit**) **sī hostem interclūdere potuerīmus.**)

**Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudīta vōx est . . . futūrum esse, nisi
prōvīsum esset, ut Rōma caperētur,** C., *Div.,* I. 45, 101 ; *not long before
the taking of the city, a voice was heard* (saying), *that unless precau-
tions were adopted, Rome would be taken.* (**Ō. R.: nisi prōvīsum erit,
Rōma capiētur.**)

**Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat Caesar sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum ;
quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī
grātum esse factūrum,** CAES., *B.G.,* I. 44, 12 ; *Ariovistus replied, that
unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in
case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest
position among the Roman people.* (**Ō. R.: nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste
habēbō . . . sī tē interfēcerō grātum fēcerō; 244,** R. 4.)

Remark.—**Posse** is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).

**Negārunt dirimī bellum posse nisi Messēniīs Achaeī Pylum redderent,** L., XXVII. 30, 13 ; *they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians.* (**Ō. R.** : **bellum dirimī nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.**)

**Docent, sī turris concidisset, nōn posse mīlitēs continērī quīn spē praedae in urbem irrumperent,** CAES., *B.C.*, II. 12, 4 ; *they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty.* (**Ō. R.** : **sī conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continērī.**)

### 658. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Ait sē sī ūrātur " Quam hōc suāve " dictūrum,** C., *Fin.*, II. 27, 88 ; *he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, " How sweet this is."* (**Ō. R.: sī ūrar, dīcam,** same form as Logical.)

**Voluptātem sī ipsa prō sē loquātur concessūram arbitror Dīgnitātī,** C., *Fin.*, III. 1, 1 ; *I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue.* (**Sī loquātur, concēdat.**)

### 659. Unreal Conditions in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, sī [Caesar] adesset, ad castra ventūrōs nōn esse,** CAES., *B.G.*, V. 29, 2; *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp.* (**Ō. R.: sī Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venīrent.**)

**Appārēbat sī diūtius vīxisset, Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Ītaliae inlātūrōs fuisse,** L., XXI. 2, 2 ; *it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.* (**Ō. R.: sī . . . vīxisset . . . intulissent.**)

**Nisi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victōriā essent allātī exīstimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur,** CAES., *B.C.*, III. 101, 3 ; *had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (**Ō. R.: nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum āmissum esset.**)

### Pronouns in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

**660.** 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.

2. The person addressed is usually **ille** ; less often **is.**

**Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcēdat Caesar sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum : quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum,** CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, 12 (657).

Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. **Hīc** and **iste** are commonly changed into **ille** or **is, nunc** is changed into **tum** and **tunc,** except when already contrasted with **tunc,** when it is retained.

Diodōrus respondit illud argentum sē paucīs illīs diēbus mīsisse Lilybaeum, C., *Verr.*, IV. 18, 39 (393, R. 4).

4. **Nōs** is used when the narrator's party is referred to; compare Caes., *B.G.*, I. 44, below.

**661.** *Specimens of the conversion* of **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** *into* **Ōrātiō Rēcta.**

| Ōrātiō Oblīqua. | Ōrātiō Rēcta. |
| --- | --- |
| 1. *Ariovistus respondit* : | |

Trāns*isse* Rhēnum *sēsē* nōn *suā* sponte sed rogātu*m* et arcessītu*m* ā Gallīs ; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīqu*isse ;* sēdēs habē*re* in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuē*rint.* Nōn *sēsē* Gallīs sed Gallōs *sibī* bellum intul*isse ;* omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad *sē* oppūgnandum vēn*isse* et contrā *sē* castra habuisse ; e*ās* omnēs cōpi*ās* ā *sē* ūnō proeliō puls*ās* āc superāt*ās esse.* Sī iterum experīrī *velint, sē* iterum parātu*m esse* dēcertāre ; sī pāce ūtī *velint,* inīquum *esse* dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pepend*erint.* Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī *sibī* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre idque *sē* eā spē pet*isse.* Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remitt*ātur* et dēditiciī subtrahan*tur,* nōn minus libenter *sēsē* recūsātū*rum* populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appet*ierit.* Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūc*at,* id *sē suī* mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere *;* ēius reī tēstimōniō *esse* quod nisi rogātus nōn vēn*erit* et quod bellum nōn intul*erit* sed dēfend*erit.*

Caes., *B.G.*, I. 44.

Trāns*iī* Rhēnum nōn *meā* sponte sed rogātu*s* et arcessītus ā Gallīs ; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīqu*ī ;* sēdēs habe*ō* in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs ; stīpendium capi*ō* iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuē*runt.* Nōn *ego* Gallīs sed Gallī *mihī* bellum intulē*runt ;* omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad *mē* oppūgnandum vēnē*runt* et contrā *mē* castra habuē*runt ;* eae omnēs cōpi*ae* ā *mē* ūnō proeliō puls*ae* āc superāt*ae sunt.* Sī iterum experīrī *volunt,* iterum parātu*s sum* dēcertāre, sī pāce ūtī *volunt,* inīquum *est* dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hōc tempus pepend*ērunt.* Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī *mihī* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oporte*t* idque eā spē pet*iī.* Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remitt*ētur* et dēditiciī subtrah*entur,* nōn minus libenter recūsā*bō* populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appet*iī.* Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūc*am,*[*] id *meī* mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā faci*ō ;* ēius reī tēstimōniō *est* quod nisi rogātus nōn vēn*ī* et quod bellum nōn intul*ī* sed dēfend*ī.*

[*] Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise **trādūcō.**

## Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

2. *Hīs Caesar ita respondit:*

Eō sibĭ minus dubitātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibī cōnscius fuisset nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse iniūriās admīrārentur eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuesse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibĭ dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.

CAES., *B.G.*, I. 14.

## Ōrātiō Rēcta.

Hōc mihĭ minus dubitātiōnis datur quod eās rēs quās vōs, lēgātī Helvētiī, commemorāstis, memoriā teneō atque hōc gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibī cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāstis, memoriam dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne tulisse iniūriās admīrāminī eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuevērunt enim dī immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihĭ dabuntur, utī ea, quae pollicēminī, factūrōs intellegam et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbīscum pācem faciam.

3. *Sulla rēgī patefēcit:*

Quod pollicēātur, senātum et populum Rōmānum, quoniam amplius armīs valuissent, nōn in grātiam habitūrōs; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur; id ideō in prōmptū esse, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiam habēret, quem sī Rōmānīs trādidisset, fore ut illī plūrimum dēbērētur; amīcitiam, foedus, Numidiae partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultrō adventūram.

S., *Iug.*, 111.

Quod pollicēris, senātus et populus Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātiam habēbunt; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videātur; id ideō in prōmptū est, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiam habēs, quem sī Rōmānīs trādideris, tibĭ plūrimum dēbēbitur; amīcitia, foedus, Numidiae pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultrō adveniet.

## Ōrātiō Oblīqua.

4. *Athēniēnsēs    dēplōrāvērunt
vāstātiōnem populātiōnemque mi-
serābilem agrōrum.* Neque *sē* id
querī quod hostīlia ab hoste passī
*forent; esse* enim quaedam bellī
*iūra* quae ut facere ita patī *sit* fās.
Sata exūrī, dīruī tēcta, praedās
hominum pecorumque agī misera
magis quam indīgna patientī *esse;*
vērum enim vērō id *sē* querī, quod
is, quī Rōmānōs aliēnigenās et bar-
barōs *vocet,* adeō omnia simul dī-
vīna hūmānaque iūra pollu*erit* ut
priōre populātiōne cum īnfernīs
diīs, secundā cum superīs bellum
nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepul-
cra monumentaque dīruta *esse* in
fīnibus *suīs,* omnium nūdāt*ōs*
mānēs, nūllīus ossa terrā teg*ī.*
Quālem terram Atticam fēc*erit,*
exōrnātam quondam opulentam-
que, tālem *eum* sī lice*at* Aetōliam
Graeciamque omnem fact*ūrum.*
Urbis quoque *suae* similem dēfōr-
mit*ātem futūram fuisse,* nisi Rō-
mānī subvēnissent.

## Ōrātiō Rēcta.

‹ Nōn id que*rimur* quod hostīlia
ab hoste passī *sumus. Sunt* enim
quaedam bellī iūra quae ut facere
ita patī *est* fās. Sata exūrī, dīruī
tēcta, praedās hominum pecorum-
que agī misera magis quam indīgna
patientī *sunt;* vērum enim vērō id
que*rimur* quod is, quī Rōmānōs
aliēnigenās et barbarōs voc*at,* adeō
omnia simul dīvīna hūmānaque
iūra pollu*it* ut priōre populātiōne
cum īnfernīs diīs, secundā cum su-
perīs bellum nefārium gesserit.
Omnia sepulcra monumentaque dī-
ruta *sunt* in fīnibus *nostrīs,* omni-
um nūdātī mānēs, nūllīus ossa terrā
teg*untur.* Quālem terram Atticam
fēc*it,* exōrnātam quondam opulen-
tamque, tālem *is,* sī lic*ēbit* (or :
lice*at*) Aetōliam Graeciamque om-
nem faci*et* (or : faci*at*). Urbis
quoque *nostrae* simil*is* dēfōrmit*ās
fuisset,* nisi Rōmānī subvēnissent.

L., XXXI. 30.

# PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

(662–3) **664.** Participles are used in Latin even more ex-
tensively than in English, to express a great variety of sub-
ordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause
and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification
cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial
sentence by a coördinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coör-
dinate, and such clauses are never equivalents.

**Mānlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit,** L., VI. 42, 5 ; *Manlius slew
the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain* (after slaying the Gaul
stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, *etc.*).

**Miltiadēs capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est,** NEP., I. 7, 6 ; *Milti-
ades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of)
money (was acquitted, but mulcted).*

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substan-
tive ; see 325, R. 3.

**Nec terra mūtāta mūtāvit mōrēs,** L., XXXVII. 54, 18 ; *nor hath the
change of land changed the character.*

**Teucer Ulixēn reum facit Āiācis occīsī**, QUINT., IV. 2, 13 ; *Teucer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.*

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 536.

### 665. Participles may represent Time When.

**Alexander moriēns ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae**, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1 ; *Alexander* (when he was) *dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

**Dionӯsius tyrannus Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs docēbat**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 12, 27 ; *Dionysius the tyrant,* (after he had been) *exiled from Syracuse* (after his exile from Syracuse), *taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

### Ablative Absolute.

**Solōn et Pīsistratus Serviō Tulliō rēgnante viguērunt**, C., *Br.*, 10, 39 ; *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king* (in the reign of Servius Tullius).

**Sōle ortō Volscī sē circumvāllātōs vīdērunt**, *Cf.* L., IV. 9, 13 ; *when the sun was risen* (after sunrise) *the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

### 666. Participles may represent Cause Why.

**Arēopagītae damnāvērunt puerum coturnīcum oculōs ēruentem**, *Cf.* QUINT., V. 9, 13 ; *the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out* (because he plucked out) *the eyes of quails.*

**Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persārum capere nōluisse Cȳmēn arguēbant**, *Cf.* NEP., VII. 7, 2 ; *the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme* (because he had been) *bribed by the King of Persia.*

### Ablative Absolute.

**Rōmānī veterēs rēgnārī omnēs volēbant lībertātis dulcēdine nōndum expertā**, L., I. 17, 3 ; *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them* (because they had) *not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

### 667. Participles may represent Condition and Concession.
For Condition, see 593, 2 ; for Concession, 609.

### Ablative Absolute.

**Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante**, C., *Fin.*, II. 35, 117 ; *all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate if pleasure is mistress.*

### 668. Participles may represent Relative Clauses ; see 637.

REMARK.—*So-called,* **quī dīcitur, vocātur, quem vocant** ; *above-mentioned,* **quem anteā, suprā dīximus.**

(669) **670.** In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (438, R. 2) :

1. Time When.

**Tiberius trāiectūrus** (= **cum trāiectūrus esset**) **Rhēnum commeātum nōn trānsmīsit,** SUET., *Tib.,* 18 ; *when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why.

**Dērīdiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum īnfāmiā ūsūrus,** TAC., *Ann.,* III. 57, 3 ; *a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.*

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

**Maroboduus mīsit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia,** TAC., *Ann.,* II. 46; *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.*

4. Condition and Concession.

**Quatiunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur,** TAC., *H.,* III. 19, 3 ; *they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.*

**Librum mīsī exigentī tibī, missūrus etsī nōn exēgissēs,** PLIN., *Ep.,* III. 13, 1 ; *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**671.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement : Grammar and Rhetoric.

**672.** 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness.

2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. Emphasis is usually produced by reversing the ordinary position ; rhythm often governs the order of words at the close of a sentence.

(673) **674.** The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.

2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.

1. **Dīonȳsius tyrannus, Syrācūsīs expulsus,** 2. **Corinthī puerōs docēbat,** C., *Tusc.,* III. 12, 27 ; 1. *Dionysius the tyrant* (after he had been) *exiled from Syracuse,* 2. *taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

Rhetorical position :

**Potentēs sequitur invidia,** QUINT., IV. 1, 14 ; *it's the POWERFUL that envy follows.*

**675.** Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative; subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

**676.** An adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs; see 291.

A dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word; so too does a word in Apposition.

REMARKS.—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede; the possessives regularly follow.

2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.

3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: so titles, proper names, and the like; see 288.

4. The titles **rēx, imperātor,** *etc.*, frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.

**677.** Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb; see 440.

REMARKS.—1. **Ferē, paene, prope,** usually follow.

2. Negatives always precede; see 448.

**678.** Prepositions regularly precede their case (413).

**679.** Particles vary.

**Enim** commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; **nam** and **namque** are regularly prepositive. See 498.

**Ergō** in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; **igitur** is commonly second or third; **itaque** regularly first. See 500, 501.

**Tamen** is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.

**Etiam** usually precedes, **quoque** always follows. See 478, 479.

**Quidem** and **dēmum** (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

(680–7) **688.** Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective, the copula of the predicate, the verb of the adverb.

**Unde domō?** V., *A.*, VIII. 114.

**689.** Brachylogy (**breviloquentia**) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

**Tam fēlīx essēs quam fōrmōsissima** (= es) **vellem,** Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27; *would thou wert fortunate as* (thou art) *fair.*

**690.** Zeugma or Syllēpsis is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

**Manūs āc supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendēns,** Tac., *Ann.*, II. 29, 2 ; *stretching out hands and* (uttering) *suppliant cries to Tiberius.*

**691.** Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian **Quōs ego . . . . . . . . . . . .**

**692.** Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

**693.** Enallagé is a shift from one form to another : **vŏs ō Calliopē precor,** V., *A.*, IX. 525.

Hypallagé is an interchange in the relations of words : **dare clāssibus austrōs,** V., *A.*, III. 61.

**694.** Oxymōron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other : **cum tacent clāmant,** C., *Cat.*, I. 8, 21.

**695.** Synecdoché is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse : **tēctum** for **domum, puppis** for **nāvis, mucrō** for **gladius,** *etc.*

**696.** Hypérbaton, Trajection, is a violent displacement of words. **Lȳdia dīc per omnēs tē deōs ōrō,** H., *O.*, I. 8, 1.

**697.** Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence,* occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**698.** Hendiadys (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

**Vulgus et multitūdō,** *the common herd.* **Via et ratiō** (C., *Verr.*, I. 16, 47), *scientific method.* **Vī et armīs,** *by force of arms.*

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb : **fundī fugārīque,** *to be utterly routed.*

**699.** Cōnstrūctiō Praegnāns. So-called **cōnstrūctiō praegnāns** is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

**Exitium inrītat,** *Cf.* Tac., *Ann.*, XIII. 1, 1 ; *he provokes destruction* (ad exitium inrītat).

**700.** Lītotēs, or Understatement, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

**Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī,** H., *O.*, II. 1, 22.

# PROSODY.

**701.** PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification

## QUANTITY.

**702.** A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong : **ō, vae, lēgēs, saevae.**

REMARKS.—1. (*a*) A vowel before **-gm, -gn, -nf, -ns,** and **i** *consonant* (**j**) is long *by nature ;* (*b*) a vowel before **-nt, -nd** is short *by nature.*

EXCEPTIONS : **Cōntiō** (for **conventiō**), *assembly ;* **nūntius,** *messenger ;* **quīntus,** *fifth ;* also **nūndinae** (**noven-d-**), *market day ;* **nōndum,** *not yet ;* **prēndō,** *I seize ;* **quīndecim,** *fifteen ;* **vēndō,** *I sell ;* **ūndecim,** *eleven ;* **vīn-dēmia,** *vintage,* and some Greek words. Compounds of **-iugum** have preceding vowel short.

2. Inchoative verbs have vowel before **-sc** long *by nature ;* **dīscō,** *I learn.*

3. Noteworthy are the following : **quārtus,** *fourth ;* **quīnque,** *five,* and its derivatives ; **vīgintī,** *twenty ;* **mīlle,** *thousand,* and its derivatives.

**703.** A syllable is said to be long *by position* (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *a*rs, *co*llum, *ca*stra.

**704.** A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by **l** or **r,** is common (13) : **tenĕ-brae,** *darkness.* In early Latin it is regularly short ; so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

REMARK.—The syllable must *end* in a short vowel : **nāvĭ-fragus,** *ship-wrecking ;* **mellĭ-fluus,** *flowing with honey ;* but in **ab-rumpō** the **a** is long by position.

**705.** Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14) : **saevus,** *cruel ;* **conclūdō,** *I shut up* (from **claudō**); **inīquus,** *unfair* (from **aequus**) ; **cōgō,** *I drive together* (from **coigō = con + agō**).

EXCEPTION.—**Prae** in composition is shortened before a vowel ; **prae-ūstus,** *burnt at the point* (V., *A.,* VII. 524).

**706.** One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or h, makes a short syllable : dĕus, *God ;* pŭer, *boy ;* nĭhil, *nothing.*

Exceptions :

1. ā in the old Gen. of the First Declension : aurāī.

2. ē in -ēī of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes : diēī, but fidĕī (63).

3. a and e before i in proper names in -ius : Gāī, Pompēī.

4. i in the Gen. form -ius (76, R. 2). Alterīus is often shortened, perhaps even in prose : ūnīus, ūllīus, nūllīus, tōtīus, are found in poetry. In alīus the i is never shortened.

5. i in fīō is long, except before er : fīō, but fīeret and fīerī.

6. ĕheu, Dĭāna, ŏhē, dĭus (= dīvus).

7. Many Greek words : āēr, Menelāus, mūsēum, Mēdēa.

## Quantity of Final Syllables.

**707.** In Latin words of more than one syllable, final a, e, and y are *short ;* i, o, and u are *long.* Greek words follow usually their original quantity.

1. a is short : except in
    1. The Abl. of the First Declension : terrā.
    (2) 3. The Impv. of First Conjugation : amā.
    4. Most uninflected words : trĭgintā, iūxtā, but ită, quiă, ēiă.

2. e is short : except in
    1. The Abl. of the Fifth Declension : diē.
    2. The Impv. of Second Conjugation : monē.
    3. Most adverbs of Second Declension : rēctē; but benĕ, malĕ.

(3) 4. i is long : except in
    (1, 2) 3. quasĭ, nisĭ, cŭĭ (when a dissyllable).
    4. i is common in mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.
        Observe the compounds : ibĭdem, ibīque, ubīque, ubĭnam, ubīvīs, ubīcunque, nēcubĭ, utĭnam, utīque, sīcutī ; (but utī).

5. o is long : bonō, tūtō; except that it is
    1. Common in many substantives of the Third Declension in ŏ.
    2. Common in the first person Pr. Indic. active of many verbs.
    3. Usually short in modŏ, citŏ, octŏ, egŏ, īlicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, and in many other words in later poetry.

6. u is always long : cornū, frūctū, audītū.

**708.** In Latin all final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than s are short. Greek words have often their original quantity.

Exceptions :

1. āllēc, liēn.

2. The adverbs and oblique cases of illīc, illūc, istīc, istūc.

3. Compounds of pār : dispār, impār.

4. ĭlt, petĭĭt, and their compounds.

**709**. In Latin, of final syllables in **s**: **as, es, os**, are long ; **is, us, ys**, short.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. **-as** is *short* in **anăs, anătis.**

2. **-es** is *short* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has **ĕtis, ĭtis, ĭdis** : **segĕs, mīlĕs, obsĕs** ; but **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.**

**ĕs, *be*** (and its compounds) : **adĕs, potĕs.**

**penĕs** (Preposition).

3. **Os** is *short* in **compŏs, impŏs, exŏs** ; and old Nom. in **os** in the Second Declension.

4. **is** is *long* in Dat. and Abl. Plural : **terrīs, bonīs.**

Also in the Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension : **omnīs = omnēs.**

In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive : **Quirīs, Quirītis.**

In the 2nd Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation : **audīs.**

In the verbal forms **vīs, sīs, fīs,** and **velīs** and their compounds.

In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pf. Subjv., **ĭs** is common : **vīderĭs.**

5. **Us** is *long* in the Gen. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Pl., Fourth Declension : **currūs.**

Also in the Nom. Sing. Third Declension, when the Gen. has **ū** : **virtūs, virtūtis ; incūs, incūdis ; tellūs, tellūris.**

## Quantity of Monosyllables.

**710**. All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long : **ā, dā, mē, dē, hī, sī, ō, dō, tū.**

Except the enclitics : **-quĕ, -vĕ, -nĕ, -cĕ, -tĕ, -psĕ, -ptĕ.**

**711**. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given for final syllables : **dās, flēs, scīs, dăt, flĕt, ĭs, ĭd, quĭs, hīs, quīs, quōs.**

But **hīc**, *this one ;* **dīc** and **dūc** have the quantity of their verbs.

**712**. Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives ending in a consonant are always long : **ōs, mōs, vēr, sōl, fūr, plūs** ; **lār (lăris), pēs (pĕdīs), bōs (bŏvis), pār (păris).**

EXCEPTIONS : **Vir** and **lac, os (ossis), mel** ;
Also **cor, vas (vadis), fel.** Also **quot, tot.**

**713**. Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short : **ăn, cĭs, ĭn, nĕc, pĕr, tĕr.**

Excepting **ēn** and **nōn** and **quīn** ;
And also **crās** and **cūr** and **sīn** ;
Also the Adverbs in **c** : **hīc, hūc, hāc, sīc** ; and **āc (atque).**

## Quantity in Compounds.

(714) **715.** Compounds generally keep the quantity of their con-
stituent parts : (cēdō), ante-cēdō, dē-cēdō, prō-cēdō ; (caedō), occīdō ; (cădō),
occĭdō.

REMARKS.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, **dī, sē,** and **vē** are long,
**rĕ** short : dīdūcō, sēdūcō, vēcors, rĕdūcō ; di, in dĭsertus, is shortened for
dis, and in dirimo, dĭr stands for dis.

2. **Nĕ** is short, except in **nēdum, nēmŏ** (ne-hemŏ), **nēquam, nēquĭquam,
nēquāquam, nēquitia, nēve.**

(3) 4. **Prō** is shortened before vowels, and in many words before
consonants, especially before **f: prŏavos, prŏhibeō, prŏinde, prŏfugiō,
prŏfundus, prŏfiteor, prŏcella, prŏcul, prŏnepōs.** The older language
shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words **pro** ($\pi\rho\acute{o}$)
is generally short : **prŏphēta** ; but **prōlogus.**

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

(716–8) **719.** I. *Elision.*—When one word ends with a vowel and
another begins with a vowel, or **h,** the first vowel is *elided.* Elision is
not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation, similar
to Grace notes in music.

Ō fēlīx ūn(a) ant(e) aliās Priamēïa virgō.—V., *A.,* III. 321.

2. *Ecthlipsis.*—In like manner **m** final (a faint nasal sound) is elided
with its short vowel before a vowel or **h.**

Mōnstr(um), horrend(um), īnfōrm(e) ingēns cuī lūmen adēmptum.—V.,
*A.,* III. 658.

REMARK.—After a vowel or m final, the word **est,** *is,* drops its e and
joins the preceding syllable (*Aphaeresis*).

Sī rixast ubi tū pulsās ego vāpulŏ tantum.—JUV., III. 289.

Aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst.—LUCR., I. 111.

**720.** *Hiatus.*—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate
syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening
(yawning) of the vocal tube. It is found most commonly in the princi-
pal caesura (750) after a monosyllabic interjection, or in a resolved
Thesis where a long vowel is shortened (semihiatus).

Ō pater, ō (*h*) hominum rērumque aeterna potestās.—V., *A.,* X. 18.

Crēdimus ? an quī (*h*) amant ipsī sibi somnia fingunt ?—V., *Ec.,* VIII. 108.

Prōmissam ēripuī generō. (*h*) Arma impia sūmpsī.—V., *A.,* XII. 31.

**721.** *Diastolē.*—Many final syllables, which were originally long,
are restored to their rights by the weight of the Thesis.

Omnia vincit Amōr ; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī.—V., *Ec.,* X. 69.

Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation) ; so particularly que.

Dēsine plūra pu*e*r—et quod nunc īnstat agāmus.—V., *Ec.*, IX. 66.
Terrāsqu*e* tractūsque maris caelumque profundum.—V., *A.*, IV. 222.

**722.** *Systolé.*—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

Obstupuī stet*e*runtque comae vōx faucibus haesit.—V., *A.*, II. 774.
Ē terrā māgn(um) alter*i*us spectāre labōrem.—LUCR., II. 2.

**723.** *Hardening.*—The vowels i and u assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): ab*i*ĕtĕ (ābĭĕtĕ), gen*v*ă (gĕnŭă), ten*v*ĭă (tĕnŭĭă).

Flūv*i*ōrum rēx Ēridanus campōsque per omnēs.—V., *G.*, I. 482.
Quam quae tēn*v*ia sunt hīscendīst nūlla potestās.—LUCR., IV. 66.

**724.** *Dialysis.*—The consonants i and v assert their half-vowel nature : dissōl*ŭ*ō (dissolvō), Gā*ĭ*ŭs (Gāius, from Gāvius).

Adulterētur et columba mīluō.—HOR., *Epod.*, 16, 32.
Stāmina nōn ūllī dissoluenda deō.—TIB., I. 7, 2.

**725.** *Syncopé.*—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose : calfaciō for calefaciō.

Templōrum positor templōrum sāncte repostor.—Ov., *Fast.*, II. 63.
Quiddam māgnum addēns ūnum mē surpite ( = surripite) mortī.—HOR., *S.*, II. 3, 283.

**726.** *Tmēsis.*—Compound words are separated into their parts.
Quae mē cumque ( = quaecumque mē) vocant terrae; sīc fātus amīcum. —V., *A.*, I. 610.

**727.** *Synizēsis.*—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language : dē͡inde, dē͡inceps.

Nec tantum Rhodopē mīrātur et Ismarus Orph͡ea.—V., *Ec.*, VI. 30.
So even when h intervenes, as dehinc:

Eurum ad sē Zephyrumque vocat, deh͡inc tālia fātur.—V., *A.*, I. 131.

REMARK.—Synizēsis (*settling together*) is also called Synaerĕsis (*taking together*), as opposed to Diaeresis (5).

**728.** *Synapheia.*—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, *i. e.*, the two lines are joined together.

Iamque iter ēmēnsī turrīs āc tēcta Latīnōr(um)
Ardua.—V., *A.*, VII. 160.
Lābitur rīpā Iove nōn probante u-
xōrius amnis.—HOR., *O.*, I. 2, 19.

## VERSIFICATION.

**729.** *Rhythm.*—Rhythm means harmonious movement ; and is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*).

The accented part is called the Thesis ; the unaccented, the Arsis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (*blow, beat*).

**730.** *Metre.*—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (*Measure*).

A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

**731.** *Unit of Measure.*—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable, ($\smile$), and is called **Mora, Tempus** (*Time*).

The long ($-$) is the double of the short.

REMARK.—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

**732.** *Resolution and Contraction.*—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, $\smile\smile$ ; Contraction, $\overline{\smile\smile}$

**733** (734). *Feet.*—When Metres are combined to form verses they are called feet.

The feet in most common use are the following :

| Feet of Three Times. | | Feet of Four Times. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Trochee,** | $-\smile$ | **Dactyl,** | $-\smile\smile$ |
| **Iambus,** | $\smile-$ | **Anapaest,** | $\smile\smile-$ |
| **Tribrach,** | $\smile\smile\smile$ | **Spondee,** | $--$ |

REMARK.—In verses beginning with an Arsis, it is often convenient to cut this off and regard the verse as beginning with a Thesis ; the short syllable is then called Anacrūsis (*upward stroke, signal-beat*) and is marked : .

(735-7) **738.** *Rhythmical Series.*—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Dipody | $=$ | two feet. | Pentapody | $=$ | five feet. |
| Tripody | $=$ | three feet. | Hexapody | $=$ | six feet. |
| Tetrapody | $=$ | four feet. | | | |

REMARKS.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, a Hexameter.

(739) **740.** *Equality of the Feet.*—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

  1. Syllaba Anceps.      3. Protraction.
  2. Catalĕxis.        4. Correption.

**741.** *Syllaba Anceps.*—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long: long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

**742.** *Catalĕxis and Pause.*—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic *in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum,* according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

⏤◡◡ | ⏤◡◡ | ⏤   *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in syllabam.*
⏤◡◡ | ⏤◡◡ | ⏤◡   *Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in dissyllabum.*

The time is made up by Pause.

This is marked ∧ if one mora is omitted; ⎯∧ if two.

**743.** *Protraction and Syncopé.*—Protraction (τονή) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more Arses, which omission is called Syncopé.

 ⎵ = 3 = (triseme long); ⎵ = 4 = (tetraseme long).

**744.** *Correption.*—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked >; similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked ◡◡.

2. When a Dactyl is used as a substitute for a Trochee, the approximate value is often $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 3$; which may be indicated by ◡◡ (cyclic Dactyl).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

    *a*    *b*    *c*    *b*    *c*    *b*     *d*   *e*
 ⎯> | ◡◡ | ⎵ ‖ ◡◡ | ⎵ ‖ ◡◡ | ⎯◡ | ⎯∧
**Nūllam** | **Vāre sa-** | **crā** ‖ **vīte pri-** | **us** ‖ **sĕveris** | **arbo** | **-rem.**—HOR., *O.,* I. 18, 1.

 (*a*) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (*b*) Cyclic dactyl. (*c*) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (*d*) Syllaba anceps. (*e*) Catalĕxis.

   19

(745-8) **749.** *Conflict of Ictus and Accent.*—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent ; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

**750.** *Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.*—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked ┼.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse. The most important pause in the verse is called the Great or Principal Caesura.

So in the Heroic Hexameter the Principal Caesura falls *before* the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first Arsis of the second half.

$$\overset{''}{-} \cup \mid \stackrel{.}{-} - \mid \stackrel{.}{-} \dagger - \mid \overset{''}{-} - \mid \stackrel{.}{-} \cup \cup \mid \stackrel{.}{-} -$$

**Ūna salūs victīs ┼ nūllam spērāre    salūtem.**—V., *A.*, II. 353.

It does not occur *at* the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

**751.** *Varieties of Caesura.*—Caesurae have different names to show their position in the verse, as follows :

*Sēmiternāria*, after the third half foot, *i. e.*, in the second foot.
*Sēmiquīnāria*, after the fifth half foot. *i. e.*, in the third foot.
*Sēmiseptēnāria*, after the seventh half foot, *i. e.*, in the fourth foot.
*Sēminovēnāria*, after the ninth half foot, *i. e.*, in the fifth foot.

REMARK.—These Caesurae are frequently called after their Greek names, thus : *trihemimeral, penthemimeral, hepthemimeral, etc.*

**752.** *Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.*—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura ; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

$$\overline{\text{U}}\text{na sa} \mid \text{lūs} \overset{a}{\dagger} \text{vi} \mid \text{ctīs} \overset{b}{\dagger} \text{nūl} \mid \text{lam} \overset{c}{\dagger} \text{spē} \mid \text{rāre} \overset{d}{\dagger} \text{sa} \mid \text{lūtem.}$$

*a, b, c,* are Masculine Caesurae ; *d*, a Feminine Caesura.

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochee.

**753.** *Diaeresis.*—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked ‖.

**Īte domum saturae ┼ venit ‖ Hesperus ‖ īte capellae.**—V., *Ec.*, 10, 77.

REMARK.—Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect.

## Iambic Rhythms.

(754–6) **757.** The Iambic Rhythm is a rhythm in which the Thesis is double of the Arsis. It is represented

By the Iambus : $\cup \perp$ ;                  By the Dactyl : $- \cup \cup$ ;

By the Tribrach : $\cup \cup \cup$ ;            By the Anapaest : $\cup \cup \perp$.

By the Spondee : $- \perp$ ;

REMARK.—The Spondee, Dactyl, Anapaest, and Proceleusmaticus are all irrational, and are consequently marked on the schemes thus: $> -, > \cup \cup, \infty -, \infty \cup \cup$; see 744.

(758–61) **762.** *Iambic Trimeter.*—The most common Iambic measure is the Trimeter (738, R. 1), composed of six feet, the last of which *must always be an Iambus.*

**Suís et ipsa † Rŏma vĭribús ruit.**

—HOR., *Epod.*, XVI. 2.              $\cup \perp \cup - | \cup \perp \cup - | \cup \perp \cup -$

**Heu mĕ per urbem † nám pudet**

    **tantí malī.**—HOR., *Epod.*, XI. 7.   $> \perp \cup - | > \perp \cup - | > \perp \cup -$

**Dĕrĭpere lūnam † vŏcibus possím**

    **meīs.**—HOR., *Epod.*, XVII. 78.    $> \cup \cup \cup - | > \perp \cup - | > \perp \cup -$

**Infămis Helenae † Cástor offēnsus**

    **vicem.**—HOR., *Epod.*, XVII. 42.   $> \perp \cup \cup \cup | > \perp \cup - | > \perp \cup -$

*Anacrustic Scheme :*          $\cup : - \cup | - \overset{>}{\underset{\cup}{}} | - \cup | - \overset{>}{\underset{\cup}{}} | - \cup | - \wedge$

REMARKS.—1. The Iambic Trimeter, when kept pure, has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last, the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character.

2. Diaeresis at the middle of the verse is avoided. The Caesura is usually the *sēmiquīnāria*, but the *sēmiseptēnāria* is found also, but either with the *sēmiquīnāria* or with Diaeresis after the second foot.

## Dactylic Rhythms.

(763–82) **783.** The Dactylic Rhythm is a rhythm in which the Thesis is equal to the Arsis ($2 = 2$).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl : $\perp \cup \cup$.

Often, also, by the Spondee : $\perp -$.

**784.** *Dactylic (Heroic) Hexameter.*—The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two Dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a Spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the Dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called *Spondaic.* The longest Hexameter contains five Dactyls and one Spondee (or Trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables ; the

shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

*Scheme:* $\stackrel{\_}{\underline{\,\shortmid\,}} \cup \cup \mid \underline{\,\shortmid\,} \cup \cup \mid \underline{\,\shortmid\,} \cup \cup \mid \stackrel{\_}{\underline{\,\shortmid\,}} \cup \cup \mid \underline{\,\shortmid\,} \cup \cup \mid \underline{\,\shortmid\,} \,\stackrel{(\_)}{\_}$

**Ut fugiunt aquilās † timidissima ‖ turba columbae,** Ov., *A.A.*, I. 117, 5 Dactyls.

**Cum mediō celerēs † revolant | ex aequore mergī,** V., *G.*, I. 361, 4 Dactyls.

**Nē turbāta volent † rapidīs † lūdibria ventīs,** V., *A.*, VI. 75, 3 Dactyls.

**Versaqu(e) in obnīxōs † urgentur ‖ cornua vāstō,** V., *G.*, III. 222, 2 Dactyls.

**Aut lēvēs ocreās † lentō † dūcunt argentō,** V., *A.*, VII. 634, Spondaic.

REMARKS.—1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them —the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the Thesis.

2. The Principal Caesura is the *sēmiquīnāria* or *penthemimeral, i.e.,* after the Thesis of the third foot, or Masculine Caesura of the third foot ; the next is the *sēmiseptēnāria* or *hepthemimeral,* after the Thesis of the fourth foot.

In verses with several Caesurae, the *sēmiseptēnāria* outranks the *sēmiquīnāria*, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (*i.e.,* formed by tmesis or by elision) ; it also as a masculine Caesura outranks the Third Trochee.

**785** (786–9). *Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).*

The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Penthemimers, *the first of which admits Spondees, the second does not.* There is a fixed Diaeresis in the middle of the verse, as marked below, which is commonly supplemented by the *sēmiternāria* Caesura. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement : $-\cup\cup,-\cup\cup,$ $--,\cup\cup-,\cup\cup-$ ; and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2}$ Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, amatory, epigrammatic poetry.

*Scheme:* $-\stackrel{\_}{\cup}\cup \mid -\stackrel{\_}{\cup}\cup \mid \sqcup \parallel -\cup\cup \mid -\cup\cup \mid --$

Neither Syllaba Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diaeresis, and a syllable long by nature is preferred at that point.

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare) :

      **Pār erat īnferior versus : rīsisse Cupīdō**

        **Dīcitur atque ūnum ‖ surripuisse pedem,** Ov.

      **Cum pulchrē dominae nostrī placuēre libellī,**

        **Quō licuit librīs ‖ nōn licet īre mihī,** Ov., *Am.*, III. 8, 5.

# APPENDICES.

## 1. Roman Calendar.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive **mēnsis**, *month*, may or may not be expressed : **(mēnsis) Iānuārius, Februārius**, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not **Iūlius** and **Augustus**, but **Quīntīlis** and **Sextīlis**.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kalendae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Īdūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives : **Kalendae Iānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Īdūs Mārtiae.** The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus :

> In March, July, October, May,
> The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
> The Nones the seventh ; but all besides
> Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward (" come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides ") the Romans used for " the day before " **prīdiē** with the Acc. : **prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās**, Dec. 31 ; **prīdiē Nōnās Iān.** = Jan. 4; **prīdiē Īdūs Iān.** = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by **ante diem tertium, quārtum,** *etc.*, before the Accusative, so that **ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.** means " two days before the Calends of January ; " **ante diem quārtum**, or **a. d. iv.**, or **iv. Kal. Iān.**, " three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions **ex** and **in** : **ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Iūniās ūsque ad prīdiē Kal. Septembrēs**, *from June 3 to August* 31 ; **differre aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov.**, *to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.*

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between **a. d. vi. Kal. Mārt.** and **a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.** It was called **a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mārt.**, so that **a. d. vii. Kal. Mārt.** corresponded to our February 23, just as in the ordinary year.

### To turn Roman Dates into English.

*For Nones and Ides.*—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

*For Calends.*—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

Examples : a. d. viii. Īd. Iān. (13 + 1 − 8) = Jan. 6 ; a. d. iv. Nōn. Apr. (5 + 1 − 4) = Apr. 2 ; a. d. xiv. Kăl. Oct. (30 + 2 − 14) = Sept. 18.

*Year.*—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, **annō urbis conditae**). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus: *Cicero was born* 648, **a. u. c.** = 106 B.C.

*Augustus died* 767, **a. u. c.** = 14 A.D.

## 2. Roman Long and Square Measure.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **pēs** | = 11.65 Eng. in. |
| 2½ | **pedēs** | = 1 **gradus**. |
| 2 | **gradūs,** ⎫ | = 1 **passus**. |
| 5 | **pedēs** ⎭ | |
| 125 | **passūs** | = 1 **stadium**. |
| 8 | **stadia** | = 1 **mīlle passuum** (mile). |

The **iūgerum** (acre) contains 28,800 sq. ft. Rom. ; Eng. acre = 43,560 sq. ft.

## 3. Roman Money.

The unit was originally the **ās** (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a **sēstertius**, which was nominally 2½ **assēs**.

2½ **assēs** = 1 **sēstertius** (about 4 cts.).    25 **dēnāriī** = 1 **aureus** (**nummus**).

1000 **sēstertiī** = 1 **sēstertium**

4 **sēstertiī** = 1 **dēnārius**.    ($42.94 to Augustus's time).

Observe that **deciēs sēstertium** = 1,000,000 **sestertiī** (96, R. 6).

## 4. Roman Names.

The Roman usually had three names : a **nōmen**, indicating the **gēns**, a **cōgnōmen**, indicating the **familia** in the **gēns**, and the **praenōmen**, indicating the individual in the **familia**.

The **nōmina** all end in ius. The **cōgnōmina** have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example : **Q. Mūcius Scaevola** (from **scaevus**, *left hand*).

The **praenōmina** are as follows, with their abbreviations :

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Aulus,** | A. | **Lūcius,** | L. | **Quīntus,** | Q. |
| **Appius,** | App. | **Mārcus,** | M. | **Servius,** | Ser. |
| **Gāius,** | C. | **Mānius,** | M'. | **Sextus,** | Sex. |
| **Gnaeus,** | Cn. | **Māmercus,** | Mam. | **Spurius,** | Sp. |
| **Decimus,** | D. | **Numerius,** | Num. | **Titus,** | T. |
| **Kaesō,** | K. | **Pūblius,** | P. | **Tiberius,** | Ti., Tib. |

## 5. General Rules for Gender (19, 20).

1. Names of Males are masculine; names of Females feminine.

2. Names of Months and Mountains, Rivers and Winds are masculine.

3. Names of Countries, Islands, Cities, Plants, and Trees are feminine.

4. Indeclinable words are neuter.

## 6. Special Rules for Gender.

5. Substantives of the First Declension are feminine (30);
except **Hadria.**

6. Substantives in **-us** (Second Declension) are masculine (34);
except **alvus, colus, humus, vannus** (fem.) ; **pelagus, vīrus, vulgus** (neut.) ; Substantives in **-um** are neuter.

7. Substantives in **-l** are masculine (39);
except **fel, mel, sīl.**

8. Masculine are nouns in **-ō,**
Save those in **-dō, -gō** and **-iō,**
With **carŏ,** *flesh ;* but **cardŏ, ōrdŏ,**
Are masculine with **ligō, margō ;**
So **harpagō** and in **-iō**
All concrete nouns like **pūgiō** (43).

9. Substantives in **-er** and **-or** are masculine ; those in **-ar** and **-ur** are neuter (46).

Observe : Feminine are **linter, arbor.**
Neuters are : **fār, nectar, marmor,**
**Aequor, iter, acer, piper,**
**Verber, ūber, vēr, cadāver,**
**Ador, tūber** and **papāver.**

10. Substantives in **-is** (-eris) and **-ōs** (-ōris) are masculine ;
except **ōs,** *mouth* (neuter).
Substantives in **-us** (-eris, -oris) and **-ūs** (-ūris) are neuter ;
except **tellūs** (f.) and **lepus** and **mūs** (m.) (49).

11. Substantives in **-s** from mute stems are feminine.

Observe : Masculine : **-unx, -ix,** and **ex,**
Saving **forfex, forpex, nex,**
**Lēx, vībēx, faex,** and forms of [**prex**].
Masculine are :
**Lapis, pariēs, pēs,** and substantives in **-es** (-itis);
except **merges.**
Also : **dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns, rudēns, torrēns.**
Neuters are : **cor, lac, caput.**

12. Vowel stems with nominative in **-s** are feminine, except those
in **-is**, which are partly masculine, partly feminine (58).

Vowel stems with nominative in **-e, -al, -ar**, are neuter.

Observe :

*Masculīnī generis*

Are those words that end in **-is** :

**amnis, axis, būris, collis,**
  **caulis, crīnis, fāscis, follis,**
**fūnis, fūstis, īgnis, torris,**
  **orbis, pānis, postis, ēnsis,**
**vectis, vermis, unguis, mēnsis,**
  —**antēs, cassēs, mānēs** (plural)—
Add to these *the mullet,* **mūgil,**
  also certain animals.

13. Substantives in **-ūs** are feminine.

14. Substantives in **-us** (Fourth Declension) are masculine (62),
Except **acus, domus, manus, īdūs,**
    **penus, porticus,** and **tribus.**

Substantives in **-ū** are neuter.

15. Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine (64),
Except **diēs** (common in Sing.) and **meridiēs.**

## 7.  Irregular Forms.

16.                 Irregular Substantives (71).

**ās, assis.**

**auceps, aucupis.**

**bōs, bovis.**
  Pl. G. **boum,** D. Ab. **būbus, bōbus.**

**caput, capitis.**
  **anceps, ancipitis,**
  **praeceps, praecipitis.**

**carŏ, carnis.**   Pl. G. **carnium.**

**Cerēs, Cereris.**

**fār, fārris.**

**fel, fellis.**

**femur, femoris,** or **feminis.**

**iter, itineris.**

**iecur, iecoris, iecinoris, iecineris, ioci-**
    **neris.**

**Iūppiter, Iovis.**

**mel, mellis.**

**nēmŏ,** G. **nūllīus,** Ab. **nūllō.**

**nix, nivis.**

**os, ossis.**

**ōs, ōris.**

**pollis, pollinis.**

**sanguis, sanguinis.**

**senex, senis.**

**supellēx, supellēctilis.**

**Venus, Veneris.**

### Pronominal Adjectives (76).

17. With Gen. in **-īus,** Dat. in **-ī** :
      **Alius, alter, alteruter ;**
      **uter** and **neuter ;**
      **ūllus** and **nūllus ;**
      **sōlus, tōtus,** and **ūnus.**

## Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (87-90).

18. **Dexter,**     dexterior,     dextimus.
    **vetus,**     veterior, vetustior,     veterrimus.
    ———     citerior,     citimus.
    ———     exterior,     extrēmus, extimus.
    ———     inferior,     īnfimus, īmus.
    ———     interior,     intimus.
    ———     posterior,     postrēmus, postumus.
    ———     prior,     prīmus,
    ———     superior,     suprēmus, summus.

Superlative in **-limus** (87, 3):
    facilis,     similis,     gracilis,
    difficilis,     dissimilis,     humilis.

    [iuvenis]     iūnior,     minimus nātū.
    [senex]     senior,     māximus nātū.

19. **bonus,**     melior,     optimus (90).
    **parvus,**     minor,     minimus.
    **multus,**     plūs,     plūrimus.
    **malus,**     pēior,     pessimus.
    **māgnus,**     māior,     māximus.
    **frūgī,**     frūgālior,     frūgālissimus.

## Irregular Comparison of Adverbs (93).

20. **bene,**    melius,    optimē.      male,    pēius,    pessimē.
    [parvus], minus,    minimē.      [māgnus], māius,    māximē.
    **multum,** plūs,    plūrimum.      satis,     satius.

## INDEX OF VERBS.

cedo, 175, 6.

cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, 144.

cēnseō, ēre, uī, cēnsum, (cēnsītus), 135, I. a.

cernō, ere, crēvī, (crētum), 157.

cieō ) ciēre,
ciō ) cīre, cīvī, cĭtum, 140.

cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, 146.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 138.

circum-sistō, ere, stetī, 148.

circum-stō, stāre, stetī, 138, 2.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, 144.

co-alēscō, ere, -aluī, (-alitum), 157, 158.

co-arguō, ere, uī, 156.

co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -ēm(p)tum, 153.

coepī, coepisse, 175, 5, a.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 157.

cō-gō, ere, co-ēgī, co-āctum, 153.

col-līdō, ere, -līsī, līsum, 144.

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lectum, 153.

col-lūceō, ēre, -lūxī, 141.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, 158.

com-būrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum, 144.

com-edō, ere, -ēdī, -ēsum (ēstum), 172.

comminīscor, ī, commentus sum, 165.

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 143.

cō-mō, ere, cōmpsī, cōmptum, 144.

com-parcō, ere, -parsī, -parsum, 148.

com-pellō, ere, com-pulī, -pulsum, 150.

com-periō, īre, com-perī, com-pertum, 162.

compēscō, ere, uī, 158.

com-pingō, ere, -pēgī, -pāctum, 154.

com-plector, ī, com-plexus, 165.

com-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, 144.

com-pungō, ere, -punxī, -punctum, 150.

con-cīdō, ere, -cidī, 148.

con-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, 148.

con-cinō, ere, -cinuī, 158.

con-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, 144.

con-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, 158.

con-cupīscō, ere, -cupīvī, cupītum, 157.

con-cutiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, 144.

con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, I.

con-dormīscō, -ere, -īvī, ītum, 157.

cōn-ferciō, īre (fersī), fertum, 161.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum, 171.

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 155.

cōn fiteor, ērī, -fessus, 164.

con-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, 144.

cōn-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, 154.

con-gruō, ere, congruī, 156.

cōn-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 155.

con-quīrō, ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, 157.

cōn-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, 158.

cōn-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, 157.

cōn-sīdō, ere, consēdī, -sessum, 153.

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 149.

cōn-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, 144.

cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 147.

cōn-stituō, ere, uī, -stitūtum, 156.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, (constātūrus), 138, 2.

cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, suētum, 157 ; 175, 5.

cōnsulō, ere, cōnsuluī, -sultum, 158.

con-temnō, ere, -tem(p)sī, -tem(p)-tum, 146.

con-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 150.

con-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, 158.

con-tineō, ēre, uī, -tentum, 135, I, a.

con-tingō, ere, contigī, contāctum, 150.

convalēscō, ere, -valuī, -valitum, 158.

coquō, ere, coxī, coctum, 147, 2 ; 144.

cor-ripiō, ere, ripuī, -reptum, 158.

cor-ruō, ere, corruī, 156.

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, I.

crepō, āre, crepuī, crepitum, 137.

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 157.

cubō, āre, cubuī, cubitum, 137.

cūdō, ere, cūdī, cūsum, 153.

cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītum, 157.

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, 148.

Dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 157.

dē-cerpō, ere, sī, tum, 144.

dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 138, I.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum.
pōscō, ere, popōscī, 151.
pos-sideō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, 143.
pos-sum, posse, potuī, 119.
potior, īrī, ītus sum, 166.
pōtō, āre, āvī, pōtum, pōtātum.
prae-cellō, ere, -celluī, 158.
prae-cinō, ere, -cinuī, 158.
prae-currō, ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, 148.
prae-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, 143.
prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.
prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī (-stātūrus), 138, 2.
prandeō, ēre, prandī, prānsum, 143.
prehendō, ere, prehendī, prehēn-sum, 154.
premō, ere, pressī, pressum, 144.
prōd-igō, ere, -ēgī, 153.
prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.
proficīscor, ī, profectus sum, 165.
pro-fiteor, ērī, -fessus sum, 164.
prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum, 144.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, 118.
prō-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, tēnsum, 150.
psallō, ere, ī, 154.
pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est.
pungō, ere, pupugī, punctum, 150.
pūnior, īrī, ītus sum, 166.

Quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 157.
quaesō, 175, 6.
quatiō, ere, (quassī), quassum, 144.
queō, quīre, 170.
queror, querī, questus sum, 167.
quiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, 157.

Rādō, ere, rāsī, rāsum, 144.
rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, 158.
raucio, īre, rausī, rausum, 150, 2.
re-cēnseō (CENSEO), ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum (recēnsitum), 135, 1, a.
re-cidō, ere, reccidī, recāsum, 148.
re-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, 158.
red-arguō, ere, -arguī, 156.
red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.
red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, 153.
red-imō, ēre, 153.
re-fellō, ere, refellī, 150.
re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, 171.
rego, ere, rēxī, rēctum, 144.
re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, 154.

reor, rērī, ratus sum, 164.
re-pellō, ere, reppulī, pulsum, 150.
re-periō, īre, repperī, repertum, 152, 162.
rēpō, ere, rēpsī, rēptum, 144.
re-sipīscō, ere, -sipīvī (sipuī), 157.
re-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, 149.
re-spondeō, ere, -spondī, -spōnsum, 142.
re-stō, stāre, -stitī, 138, 2.
re-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, stinctum, 146.
re-tineō, ere, uī, -tentum, 135, 1, a.
re-vertor, ī, revertī, reversum, 153, 167.
rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, 141.
rōdō, ere, rōsī, rōsum, 147, 2.
rudō, ere, rudīvī, ītum, 157.
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, 154.
ruō, ere, ruī, rutum (ruitūrus), 156.

Saepiō, īre, saepsī, saeptum, 161.
saliō, īre, (saliī), saluī, saltum, 160.
sallō, ere, (sallī), salsum.
salvē, def., 175, 4.
sanciō, īre, sānxī, sānctum, (sancītum), 161.
sapiō, ere (sapīvī), sapuī, 157.
sarciō, īre, sarsī, sartum, 161.
satis-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 138.
scabō, ere, scābī, 153.
scalpō, ere, scalpsī, scalptum, 144.
scandō, ere, scandī, scānsum, 154.
scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, 155.
scīscō, ere, scīvī, scītum, 157.
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 144.
sculpō, ere, sculpsī, sculptum, 144.
secō, āre, secuī, sectum, secātūrus, 137.
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, 143.
sēligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 153.
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 161.
sepeliō, īre, īvī, sepultum, 159.
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, 165.
serō, ere, 158.
serō, ere, sēvī, satum, 157.
serpō, ere, serpsī, serptum, 144.
sīdō, ere, sīdī, 153.
sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, 157.
sistō, ēre, (stitī), statum, 148.
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 167.
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, 153.
sonō, āre, sonuī, sonitum, sonātūrus, 137.
sorbeō, ēre (sorp-sī), sorbuī, 140.

# PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).

2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).

3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).

4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).

5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).

6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (321).

7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (614).

8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with **quam prō, quam ut, quam quī** (298).

9. In comparing two qualities, use either **magis quam** with the positive, or a double comparative (299).

10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantive (291, R. 2).

11. The Genitive forms **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, are used mainly as objective genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum** as partitive (304, 2).

12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).

13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in Ōrātiō Oblīqua (521).

14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).

15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, R. 2).

16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, R. 6).

17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, R. 1).

20

18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (257) ; the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (258).

19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).

20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfilment (268).

21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly **nōlī** with the Infinitive ; sometimes **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, R. 2), or **cavĕ** with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.

22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).

23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, *etc.* (423).

24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (532).

25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (533).

26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (534).

27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).

28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (428).

29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function ; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).

30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, *etc.*, to indicate Design (430).

31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431).

32. The Supine in -**um** is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (435).

33. The Supine in -**ū** is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (436).

34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (282).

35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (438, N.).

36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).

37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired (537).

38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (203).

39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).

40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (528).

41. The Appositional Genitive is used after **vōx, nōmen, verbum, rēs,** *etc.* (361, 1).

42. The Epexegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after **genus, vitium, culpa,** *etc.* (361, 2).

43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).

44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the objective Genitive, of the object of that action (363, 2).

45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.

46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).

47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).

48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in -**āx** (375).

49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting usually take the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, R.).

50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).

51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).

52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.

53. **Interest** and **Rēfert** take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).

54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).

55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).

56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super** may take a Dative ; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347).

57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).

58. The Dative is used with **esse** to denote possession (349).

59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).

60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).

61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).

62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).

63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person to Whom (355).

64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).

65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (330).

66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super,** and **trans,** take the Accusative ; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (331).

67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).

68. The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (334–6).

69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither ; so also **domus** and **rūs** (337). See No. 74 and 92.

70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).

71. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).

72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).

73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (343).

74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **in** (385) ;

Place Whence by the Ablative, usually with **ex**, **dē**, or **ab** (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (386, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with **cum** (392).

76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).

77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without **ex** and **dē** (395).

78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with **ex** (396).

79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).

80. Comparatives without **quam** are followed by the Ablative (398).

81. Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or **cum** (399).

82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400) ; essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.

83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).

84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with **ā** (**ab**) (401).

85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (402).

86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).

87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404) ; General Price in the Genitive (379). See No. 52.

88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).

89. The Ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus** (406).

90. **Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** take the Ablative (407).

91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence : Ablative Absolute (409).

92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.

93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).

94. A question for information merely is introduced by **-ne** (454).

95. A question that expects the answer *yes* is introduced by **nōnne** (455).

96. A question that expects the answer *no* is introduced by **num** (456).

97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (265).

98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).

99. *Sequence of Tenses.* Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).

100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).

101. In Ōrātiō Oblīqua all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).

102. **Quod,** *the fact that, in that,* is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).

103. **Quod, quia, quoniam,** and **quandō** take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).

104. **Quod** is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).

105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** (545).

106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).

107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take **nē** with the Subjunctive (548).

108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take **quōminus** with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.

109. Verbs of Fear are followed by **nē** or **ut** (**nē nōn**) and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).

110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn** (552).

111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with **ut** and **nē**, or **ut nōn** (553).

112. Negatived or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, *etc.*, of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with **quīn** (555). See No. 108.

113. A Consecutive Clause with **ut** is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).

114. **Ut, ut prīmum, cum, cum prīmum, ubi, ubi prīmum, simulāc, simul atque,** and **postquam** take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of *as soon as;* but the Imperfect is used of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).

115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).

116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).

117. **Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū,** *so long as, while,* take the Indicative of all tenses (569).

118. **Dum,** *while, while yet,* takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).

119. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** *until,* take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).

120. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** *until,* take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).

121. **Dum, modŏ,** and **dummodŏ,** *if only, provided only,* take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).

122. **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact ; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).

123. Temporal **cum,** *when,* is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).

124. Historical **cum,** *when,* is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place (585).

125. Causal and Concessive **cum,** *when, whereas, although,* are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).

126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).

127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (595).

128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).

129. **Ut sī, āc sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut,** and **velut sī,** introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).

130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by **etsī, etiamsī, tametsī,** with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604) ; by **quamquam,** with the Indicative (605) ; by **quamvīs,** with the Subjunctive (606).

131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625) ; so explanatory **quī,** when equivalent to **quod** (626).

132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part

of the utterance of another ; so in Ōrātiō Oblīqua and Final Clauses (628).

133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by Attraction (629).

134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when **quī** = **ut** (final) **is** (630).

135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when **quī** = **ut** (consecutive) **is** ; so after **dīgnus, indīgnus, idōneus, aptus,** *etc.;* after an indefinite antecedent ; after comparatives with **quam** (631).

136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeness may be introduced by **atque** or **āc** (643).

137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by **quam** (644).

138. In Ōrātiō Oblīqua, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive ; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).

## DATE DUE

| DATE | ISSUED TO |
|------|-----------|
|      |           |
|      |           |
|      |           |
|      |           |